



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Gift of The People of the United States

Through the Victory Book Campaign

(A. L. A. — A. R. C. — U. S. O.)

the Armed Forces and Merchant Marine

Educ.T 912.58.288

3 2044 097 062 566





PRACTICAL
AND PROGRESSIVE
LATIN GRAMMAR.
ELEMENTARY COURSE.

BY
THOMAS CLARK,
EDITOR OF THE FORMER ASSOCIATION OF THE PHILADELPHIA BOOKSELLERS FOR THE
PUBLICATION OF THE LATIN AND GREEK CLASSICS; ALSO, EDITOR OF SEVERAL
LATIN CLASSICS WITH NOTES; AS, LIKEWISE, OF THE POPULAR
SERIES OF INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS, COMPRISING
HORACE, CAESAR, CICERO, SALLUST, ETC.

PHILADELPHIA:
CHARLES DESILVER,
NO. 714 CHESTNUT STREET, (OPPOSITE MASONIC HALL).
KEEN & LEE,
148 LAKE STREET, CHICAGO.
1858.

Educ. 918.58.283



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1858, by
CHARLES DESILVER,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for
the Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

STEREOTYPED BY J. FAGAN.

PRINTED BY SMITH & PETERS,
Franklin Buildings, Sixth Street, below Arch,
Philadelphia.

PREFACE.



THE object of this GRAMMAR is to obviate the disgust and tediousness which pupils feel in merely learning the grammatical forms of the Latin language, without any practical application of the same while learning them, and also to prevent the loss of time resulting from such method.

The plan here followed is, that, at the same time the pupil commences to learn the declensions, he also commences to translate and to learn words and sentences. This is made easy to him by means of interlinear translations, and references, by means of signs and abbreviations, to the declensions and conjugations he is learning. The attention of the pupil is, at first, only directed to those grammatical forms that he has learned, or is learning, by references to the same: those grammatical forms that he has not learned, his attention is not drawn to, and he only learns the signification of the words and sentences by rote, as respects their grammatical forms; he not being troubled with such forms, till he commences learning them. So that, by the time he has learned his declensions and conjugations, he will have acquired some knowledge of the Latin language; and his studies, instead of being disgusting and tedious, will become attractive and agreeable; and, in less time than other pupils take to learn their declensions and conjugations, he will also have learned them, and, moreover, have obtained such practical knowledge of the language as will make his future progress therein pleasant.

The practical part of this Elementary Course is arranged in one hundred Lessons, or, rather, fifty double Lessons. Each double lesson consists, first, of a lesson in interlinear translation, arranged according to the English order of words; next, of a lesson in the order of the text of the author, without any interlinear translation. To these two lessons there next succeeds exercises on the same:—first, of words to be translated from Latin into English; next, of words to be translated from English into Latin; then of Latin sentences to be translated into English, and, lastly, of English sentences to be translated into Latin. All these words and sentences are taken from the lessons, or slightly altered from them.

These fifty double lessons are dispersed through the Grammar, and illustrate and exemplify the forms of grammar that the pupil is learning, or has learned. In the interlinear lessons, all the forms of declension and conjugation that the pupil is learning, or has learned, are marked by signs and abbreviations, denoting or pointing out the different parts of the declensions and conjugations; so that the pupil, in preparing his lessons, requires no aid from a dictionary; the use of which, in the commencement of his studies, would be extremely vexatious to him, and would scarcely enable him to prepare his lessons, either as respects the signification of the words, or the forms of declensions and conjugations.

In those forms of declension and conjugation that the pupil has learned, he is continually to be exercised in the different lessons, thus impressing such forms more strongly in his memory, by seeing the use and meaning of such forms, than they would be if merely learned by heart, without understanding their application; in addition to this, he would be gradually acquiring a stock of Latin words and sentences, which he would not in the usual method.

This Introductory, or Elementary Latin Grammar, contains all that is necessary to be learned previous to the commencement of the study of the Latin Classics; and, in

schools, is all that is usually taught, or required to be learned, in a first course of grammar, all the rest being left to subsequent study.

Many eminent men have much lamented the great loss of time, and disgust to the pupil, and vexation to the teacher, occasioned by the usual mode of teaching Latin at the commencement of learning the language — especially the great poet and distinguished Latin scholar, Milton, and the eminent metaphysician and writer on education, Locke, who both assert that, in the usual method of teaching Latin, years are lost in imperfectly acquiring that which, by a more perfect method, might be better learned in a year. Both have suggested plans for such improved method, which, in both, is that, as the pupil gradually learns the elementary part of the language, he should, at the same time, be taught the application of such elements, in any easy and practical manner by translations, especially those of an interlinear nature; and thereby not subjecting the pupil to the annoying, and, at the beginning of his studies, nearly, for him, impracticable method of preparing his lessons by the aid of a dictionary.

In this Elementary Practical and Progressive Grammar, the suggestions of these two eminent men, as well as of others, have been fully carried out, and a method of teaching the elements of the Latin language, for beginners, has been formed, that, perhaps, may be considered as even extending and improving their suggestions. For, not only are the words and sentences explained by literal interlinear translations, but constant references are made to the forms of declensions and conjugations, by signs and abbreviations, which, in the commencement, are quite, if not more necessary, than the explanation of words. To this, also, is added the Exercises on the Lessons, often so varied from the text as to be perfectly understood by the student, and thus practically leading him gradually to the formation of sentences in

Latin from English, and to the understanding of sentences in Latin, when somewhat varied from the text.

This method, applied in learning a language, has always resulted in the most decided advantage to the pupil, and his progress has always been more rapid, than if he had been taught on any other plan.

This practical and progressive method might not only be used in schools, for boys commencing the study of the Latin language; but might also be used by ladies desirous to acquire some knowledge of the Latin language in an easy and agreeable manner; as also by those who, not having learned Latin in their youth, yet, either from the nature of their profession, or from other circumstances, feel the want of not being acquainted with Latin.

Even those teachers who are opposed to translations of every kind in learning Latin, could not reasonably object to this practical progressive method, especially in this elementary course, which has only in view the teaching of the first, or necessary principles of the language, previous to the commencement of the study of the classics; for the lessons here given have principally in view the exemplifying of the declensions and conjugations, and, by showing their practical use and application, to impress them more strongly on the mind of the pupil; thus, also, removing the disgust of committing to memory things that he does not understand, or see the use of.

The signs and abbreviations used in the lessons, and explained in different parts of the Grammar, where their use first occurs, have all been collected under one head, for the purpose of easy reference, and will be found in the four following pages.

THOMAS CLARK.

PHILADELPHIA, November, 1857.

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

USED IN THIS GRAMMAR, IN THE INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION.

~~~~~

ENGLISH PART.—The hyphen (-) denotes that several English words are placed under one Latin one to denote its meaning: as,

appellantur.  
are-called.

When two or more English words, denoting one Latin word, have one or more words interposed between them, then the separated words, denoting the one Latin word, are designated by having the hyphen placed perpendicularly before them, or by the figure <sup>1</sup>: as,

egregiâ virtute.  
<sup>1</sup>by (their) <sup>1</sup>excellent courage.

The parentheses ( ) are used when words are added in English, and form part of the sentence: as,

nostrâ Galli.  
in-our (language) Gauls.

When an English word or sentence is enclosed in brackets [ ], it denotes that such word or sentence is used to express the meaning more intelligibly, and is used in place of the word or sentence immediately preceding it, the commencement of which is denoted by a straight line |: as,

linguâ ipsorum.  
| <sup>1</sup>in (the) <sup>1</sup>language of-themselves [in their own language]

When the word or sentence in brackets is not preceded by a straight line, such word or sentence is to be considered as an explanatory note: as,

quôd erant cogniti.  
because <sup>1</sup>they [the Boii] <sup>1</sup>were known.

LATIN PART IN GENERAL.—When a dot is placed above and after a word, it is thereby denoted that such word is separated from another word, to the end of which it is added, and which other word has also a dot after it: as, *que sua* for *suaque*.

**LATIN PARTS OF SPEECH.—NOUNS.—First Declension.**—The simple numbers <sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>, <sup>3</sup>, <sup>4</sup>, <sup>5</sup> or <sup>6</sup>, placed immediately before the words of the first declension, denote the cases that they are in, in the singular: as, <sup>1</sup> denotes the nominative, <sup>2</sup> the genitive, <sup>3</sup> the dative, <sup>4</sup> the accusative, <sup>5</sup> the vocative, and <sup>6</sup> the ablative. When *pl.* is placed before the same numbers, it denotes the same cases in the plural.

**Second Declension.**—*s* placed before the numbers denoting case, both in the singular and plural, indicates the form in *us*; *r* placed before the same numbers, denotes the form when the *e* is retained before the *r* in the genitive and other cases; *er* denotes that the *e* is dropped in the genitive, &c.: as, <sup>1</sup>*ager*, gen. <sup>2</sup>*agri*. The neuter form is denoted by *m* placed before the numbers, both in the singular and plural.

**Third Declension.**—To denote the third declension, the terminating letters of the nominative singular and genitive singular, separated by a hyphen, are placed before the numbers denoting cases: as, *o-onis*.l in *sermo*.

**Fourth Declension.**—The genitive singular, *ūs*, is placed before the numbers of cases for those nouns ending in *us* in the nominative singular; and, in like manner, *u* for those ending in *u*.

**Fifth Declension** is denoted by placing the termination, *ei*, of the genitive singular, before the numbers denoting case.

To denote exceptions in gender, (*m.*) is placed after the noun, in parentheses, for the masculine, (*f.*) for the feminine, and (*n.*) for the neuter.

**ADJECTIVES.**—The declensions of adjectives are indicated in the same manner as those of nouns. The comparative degree is designated by *c.* placed between parentheses after the word: as, *mitior* (*c.*). The superlative is denoted by *s.*, placed in like manner: as, *mitissimus* (*s.*). In some irregular comparatives or superlatives, the positive degree may be placed before the *c.* or *s.*, in parentheses: as, *melior* (*bonus, c.*), or *maximus* (*magnus, s.*).

**PRONOUNS.**—The substantive pronouns are denoted by placing <sup>1</sup> in parentheses after the first person; the second person by, in like manner, placing <sup>2</sup> after the second person; and the third person by placing <sup>3</sup> after it. The case for all three persons is denoted by simply placing the numbers denoting case before the persons: as, <sup>1</sup>*ego*,<sup>(1)</sup> <sup>1</sup>*tu*,<sup>(2)</sup> <sup>4</sup>*se*.<sup>(3)</sup>

**Demonstrative Pronouns.**—To designate the demonstrative pronoun *hic*, *ic* is used for the masculine, *æc* for the feminine, and *oc* for the neuter, placed before the numbers denoting cases. To designate *is*, *is* is used for the masculine, *ea* for the feminine, and *id* for the neuter, placed in like manner. To indicate the demonstrative *ille*, *le* is used for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *lud* for the neuter, placed before the numbers. *Iste* has, in like manner, *te* for the masculine, *ta* for the feminine, and *tud* for the neuter. The emphatic pronoun, *ipse*, has *se* for the masculine, *sa* for the feminine, and *sum* for the neuter.

**Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.**—*Qui* and its compounds, either relative or indefinite, are denoted by *ui* for the masculine, *uæ* for the

feminine, and *od* for the neuter, placed before the numbers denoting cases. *Quis* and its compounds, either interrogative or indefinite, have *uis* for the masculine, *uæ* for the feminine, and *uid* for the neuter, before the numbers.

**VERBS.—Voice.**—*P.* placed before the numbers indicating tense, or before the sign *sb.* of the subjunctive, denotes the passive voice; the active voice requires no sign. When the verb is deponent, *d* is used, in place of *p.*

**Moods.**—The indicative mood requires no sign. The subjunctive mood is denoted by *sb.* placed before the numbers denoting tense. The imperative has *im.* placed in like manner, and the infinitive *in.*

**Tenses.**—Tenses are denoted by numbers placed in parentheses before the verb: as, <sup>(1)</sup> indicates the present tense, <sup>(2)</sup> the imperfect, <sup>(3)</sup> the future, <sup>(4)</sup> the perfect, <sup>(5)</sup> the pluperfect, and <sup>(6)</sup> the future perfect.

**Numbers and Persons.**—Persons are denoted by placing <sup>1</sup> for the first person, <sup>2</sup> for the second person, and <sup>3</sup> for the third person, in brackets <sup>(1)</sup>, after the verb. The plural is indicated by placing *pl.* before these numbers: as, <sup>(1)</sup> *amamus* <sup>[pl. 1]</sup>, *we love*. The singular requires no sign.

**Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.**—Participles are denoted by placing *part.* in brackets, after the verb: as, <sup>(1)</sup> *amans* <sup>[part.]</sup>. The declension of the participle is placed next it after the sign of tense: as, <sup>(1)</sup> *amans* <sup>[part.]</sup>, *loving*. Gerunds are indicated by placing *[ger.]* after the verb. These gerunds have only the signs of cases before them. The supine in *um* is denoted by placing *[um]* in brackets after the verb, and that in *u* by, in like manner, placing *[u]*.

The letters or terminations indicating the three principal tenses, or parts, from which all the other tenses and forms are derived, are placed first before the verb: as, <sup>[ar-avi-atum]</sup> <sup>(1)</sup> *amo* <sup>(1)</sup>, *I love*.

The first conjugation is denoted by *ar-avi-atum*—*ar* denoting either the present indicative active, by dropping *ar* and adding *o*: as, *amo*—*I love*; or the infinitive of the same, by adding *e*: as, *amare*—*to love*. When any irregular form of this conjugation occurs, other letters must be added to all or to some of these three principal tenses or forms: as in *do*—*I give*, *ar-edi-atum*; indicating that these, and the tenses formed from them, are added to the commencing *d* of *do*.

The second conjugation is denoted by *ēr-ūi-atum*, or by *ēr-evi-etum*; the *r* of the first form is dropped, and *o* is added to form the present tense, indicative, and *e* is added to the end of *ēr* for the present infinitive. Besides these, there are irregularities in these principal forms, which will require to be indicated by other or additional letters.

The third conjugation is very irregular, especially in the perfect and supine. The conjugation itself is always denoted by *ēr* for the present and infinitive present—the *ēr* being dropped and *o* added for the indicative present, first person, and an *e* added to *ēr* for the infinitive; but *ēr* would often require more letters before it: as in *rego*—*to rule*, *gēr-xi-ctum*; making *rego*, *regēre*, *rexī*, *rectum*. When the perfect begins with a different letter from the present, it may be necessary to put the entire verb in



italics to express this: as in *ago*—to *act*, *gēr-egi-ctum*; making *ago*, *agēre*, *egi*, *actum*.

The fourth conjugation is denoted by *ir-ivi-ītum*; the *r* of the first form is dropped and *o* added to form the first person present, indicative, and *e* added to the end of *ir* to form the infinitive. The irregular verbs of this conjugation are denoted as above.

When, in any of the four conjugations, a letter or letters, that belong to the first principal part, are dropped in the second or third principal parts, or in both, such dropped letter or letters are placed in parentheses ( ) before the first principal part: as in *jubeo*—*I order*, (b) *ēr-si-ssum*; making *jubeo*, *jubēre*, *jussi*, *jussum*.

A perpendicular line is placed before one of these principal tenses or forms, to denote that the tense or form of the verb is derived from it: as, *ar-|svi-atum*.<sup>(8)</sup> *amaveram* <sup>[1]</sup>, *I had loved*; or *ar-|svi-atum*.<sup>(8)</sup> *amabat* <sup>[3]</sup>, *he loved* or *was loving*.

When the present differs altogether from the infinitive, both are denoted entire in italics, between parentheses: as in *sum*—*I am*, (*sum-esse*).*e-ui*; or in *eo*—*I go*, (*eo-iri*).*ir-ivi-ītum*. When any principal part differs entirely from its regular termination, it will be necessary to substitute the entire verb, in italics, therefor: as in *do*—*I give*, *ar-dedi-datum*; making *do*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*.

In all cases where a number, letter, or abbreviation, is placed after a word, in parentheses ( ), or in brackets [ ], such parentheses or brackets are followed by two dots: as, *virtus*.(f.)<sup>99</sup>. These dots denote that the signs before them belong to the preceding word, and not to the following.

When the future periphrastic conjugation is to be particularly designated, *f.* is placed in the parentheses before the numbers denoting tense: as, (<sup>(f.)</sup> *amaturus sum*).<sup>[1]</sup> When the periphrastic conjugation of necessity is to be denoted, *n.* is placed in like manner in the parentheses: as, (<sup>(n.)</sup> *amandus sum*).<sup>[1]</sup>

Should it be required to denote the adverb in the comparative, or in the superlative degree, it may be done by placing *ad.* before *c.* or *s.* in parentheses, after the adverb: as, *faciliūs* (*ad. c.*), or *doctissimē* (*ad. s.*).

## CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                |                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>LETTERS.....</b>                                                                            | <b>Page 13</b> |
| <b>NOUNS.....</b>                                                                              | <b>13</b>      |
| <b>DECLENSIONS.....</b>                                                                        | <b>13</b>      |
| <b>FIRST DECLENSION.....</b>                                                                   | <b>14</b>      |
| <b>SECOND DECLENSION.....</b>                                                                  | <b>21</b>      |
| Form in <i>us</i> .....                                                                        | 21             |
| Form in <i>um</i> .....                                                                        | 24             |
| Forms in <i>r</i> and <i>er</i> .....                                                          | 26             |
| <b>THIRD DECLENSION.....</b>                                                                   | <b>29</b>      |
| General Form of the Third Declension.....                                                      | 30             |
| Form of the Third Declension, having <i>ium</i> in the Genitive<br>Plural .....                | 33             |
| Form of the Third Declension having <i>em</i> or <i>im</i> in the Accusative<br>Singular ..... | 36             |
| Form of the Third Declension having <i>ia</i> in the Nominative<br>Plural.....                 | 39             |
| <b>FOURTH DECLENSION .....</b>                                                                 | <b>41</b>      |
| Form of the Fourth Declension in <i>us</i> .....                                               | 41             |
| Form of the Fourth Declension in <i>u</i> .....                                                | 44             |
| <b>FIFTH DECLENSION.....</b>                                                                   | <b>47</b>      |
| <b>ADJECTIVES .....</b>                                                                        | <b>50</b>      |
| Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.....                                             | 51             |
| Form of the same in <i>us-a-um</i> .....                                                       | 51             |
| Form of the same in <i>er</i> and <i>r</i> .....                                               | 54             |
| Adjectives of the third Declension .....                                                       | 58             |
| Form of the same in Three Terminations.....                                                    | 59             |
| Form of the same in two terminations.....                                                      | 62             |
| Form of the same in one termination.....                                                       | 66             |
| Comparison of Adjectives .....                                                                 | 69             |
| <b>Numerals .....</b>                                                                          | <b>74</b>      |
| <b>PRONOUNS .....</b>                                                                          | <b>79</b>      |
| Substantive Pronouns.....                                                                      | 80             |
| Adjective Pronouns .....                                                                       | 87             |
| Demonstrative Pronouns.....                                                                    | 87             |

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Relative Pronouns .....                                 | 98  |
| Interrogative Pronouns.....                             | 99  |
| Possessive Pronouns .....                               | 102 |
| Indefinite Pronouns .....                               | 102 |
| VERBS.....                                              | 103 |
| First Conjugation, Active Voice, Indicative Mood.....   | 108 |
| "                    Subjunctive Mood .....             | 115 |
| " <i>Sum</i> , Indicative Mood .....                    | 121 |
| " <i>Sum</i> , Subjunctive Mood.....                    | 127 |
| " <i>Possum</i> .....                                   | 130 |
| "            Passive Voice, Indicative Mood.....        | 136 |
| "                    Subjunctive Mood.....              | 142 |
| Deponent Verbs.....                                     | 145 |
| Second Conjugation, Active Voice, Indicative Mood ..... | 148 |
| "                    Subjunctive Mood .....             | 153 |
| "            Passive Voice, Indicative Mood.....        | 159 |
| "                    Subjunctive Mood.....              | 164 |
| Third Conjugation, Active Voice, Indicative Mood.....   | 170 |
| "                    Subjunctive Mood .....             | 176 |
| "            Passive Voice, Indicative Mood.....        | 183 |
| "                    Subjunctive Mood .....             | 188 |
| Fourth Conjugation, Active Voice, Indicative Mood.....  | 195 |
| "                    Subjunctive Mood.....              | 201 |
| "            Passive Voice, Indicative Mood.....        | 207 |
| "                    Subjunctive Mood.....              | 213 |
| Irregular Verbs.....                                    | 219 |
| <i>Volo</i> — Indicative Mood.....                      | 219 |
| <i>Volo</i> — Subjunctive Mood.....                     | 220 |
| <i>Fero</i> — Indicative Mood .....                     | 224 |
| <i>Fero</i> — Subjunctive Mood.....                     | 225 |
| <i>Fio</i> .....                                        | 226 |
| <i>Edo</i> .....                                        | 228 |
| <i>Es</i> .....                                         | 229 |
| Defective Verbs.....                                    | 231 |
| Periphrastic Conjugations.....                          | 234 |
| Future Periphrastic Conjugation.....                    | 235 |
| Periphrastic Conjugation of Necessity .....             | 237 |
| Impersonal Verbs.....                                   | 239 |
| PARTICLES.....                                          | 242 |
| Adverbs.....                                            | 242 |
| Prepositions .....                                      | 243 |
| Conjunctions .....                                      | 244 |
| Interjections.....                                      | 244 |
| SYNTAX.....                                             | 247 |
| PROBODY.....                                            | 267 |

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

## FIRST, OR ELEMENTARY COURSE.

---

### LETTERS.

THERE are twenty-four letters in the Latin language, or with *k* twenty-five, namely: *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, (k,) l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.*

The exact pronunciation of these letters not being accurately known, the different nations pronounce them, nearly as they do the letters of their own alphabet.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, (y).* These were, in all probability, pronounced as the Italians now pronounce them; that is, *a* like *a* in *far*, *e* like *a* in *fate*, *i* like *e* in *me*, *o* like *o* in *no*, *u* like *u* in *bull*; *y* is not properly a Latin vowel, but is used to express the Greek *υ* in Greek words, and by the Romans was pronounced like their *i*.

Of the diphthongs, it may be observed that *æ* and *œ* are sounded like *e*.

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight, namely: Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection. In Latin there is no Article, either definite, as *the*, or indefinite, as *a*.

## NOUNS.

Nouns have different terminations, which are called

## DECLENSIONS.

The Latin language has five declensions; each declension denotes various modes of changing the termination of nouns; each has also two *numbers*, the *singular* and *plural*, with six *cases* in each *number*. The *cases* denote the particular termination of words, often expressed in English by prepositions: as, 1, the *nominative*, denoting the actor or doer; 2, the *genitive*, as "of a man," or "man's"; 3, the *dative*, as "to a man"; 4, the *objective* or *accusative*, as "man" in the sentence, "I found the man"; 5, the *vocative*, as "O man"; 6, the *ablative*, as "in, with, by, from, &c., a man."

## FIRST DECLENSION.

Latin words of the first declension end in *a* in their nominative singular, and have their genitive singular in *æ*, diphthong.

All nouns, in all the words of the first, as well as in all those of the other declensions, are to be looked for in the dictionary in their nominative singular. The genitive singular determines the first declension, as does the genitive singular, in all the other declensions, indicate the declension; such genitive singular being always placed after the noun, in the dictionaries, to denote the particular declension.

*Form of First Declension.*

| Singular.                                               | Terminations. | Plural.                                                   | Terminations. |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Stellæ; a star,                          | a.            | pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Stellæ; stars,                           | æ.            |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Stellæ; of a star, or star's,            | æ.            | pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Stellarum; of stars,                     | arum.         |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Stellæ; to, or for a star,               | æ.            | pl. 3. <i>D.</i> Stellis; to, or for stars,               | is.           |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Stellam; star, <sup>1</sup>              | am.           | pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Stellas; stars,                          | as.           |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Stella; O star,                          | a.            | pl. 5. <i>V.</i> Stellæ; O stars,                         | æ.            |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Stellâ; in, with, from,<br>or by a star, | â.            | pl. 6. <i>A.</i> Stellis; in, with, from,<br>or by stars, | is.           |

<sup>1</sup> Accusative; as *video*, "I see *stellam*, a star."

Observe, that the nominative, vocative, and ablative singular end in *a*. The ablative has a circumflex over it, as *ā*; but this circumflex is often omitted. The genitive and dative singular, and the nominative and vocative plural, end in *æ*, diphthong. The dative and ablative plural end in *is*; some few words have *abus*, in place of *is*, in the dative and ablative plural. The accusative singular ends in *am*; and the accusative plural in *as*. The genitive plural ends in *arum*.

### Lesson 1.

The Latin words are here arranged in the same order as the English words are, and have a literal English translation under them. The English word, placed under a Latin word, gives the signification of the Latin word placed over it.

Observe, that in the Latin language great freedom is allowed in placing words in a sentence.

The numbers, placed before the Latin words in the lessons, denote the cases of this first declension, in the singular. When *pl.* is placed before the same numbers, the plural of the same cases is denoted: as, 1, *stella*, nominative singular, *pl.* 1, *stellæ*, nominative plural; 2, *stellæ*, genitive singular, *pl.* 2, *stellarum*, genitive plural, &c., as designated in the declension.

The three genders of the Latin language, when it is intended to direct the attention of the learner to them, will be denoted by *m.* for the *masculine*, *f.* for the *feminine*, and *n.* for the *neuter*, placed before the numbers denoting case: as, *f.* 1, *stella*, *f.* *pl.* 1, *stellæ*. As these genders are mostly determined, by the ending of the nominative singular of the noun, they do not always indicate the proper or natural masculine, feminine, or neuter, as in English; but many words that in English would be neuter, would be masculine or feminine in Latin.

The nominative singular, *a*, of this first declension denotes the feminine gender, and will require no sign or letter desig-

nating gender to point its gender out; but as there are some words in this declension with other genders, such exceptions may be denoted by the letters of genders, when required, in parenthesis, as (*m.*) *masculine*, (*f.*) *feminine*, (*n.*) *neuter*, placed after the word to which they belong: as, *poëta, (m.)*\*\* a poet.

When, in any case whatever, a letter, number, &c., as a sign, is placed in parentheses ( ), or brackets [ ], after a word, two dots\*\* follow such parentheses, or brackets, to indicate that the sign belongs to the preceding word, and not to the following one.

It is to be borne in mind, that the adjective agrees with its noun, in number, gender, and case; that is, the adjective is always in the same number, gender, and case, as the noun to which it relates.

When several English words are united together by a hyphen (-), and placed under a Latin word, such united words express the meaning of the one Latin word: as,

*appellantur.*  
are-called.

When two or more English words, denoting one Latin word, have one or more words interposed between them, then the separated words, denoting the one Latin word, are designated by having the hyphen placed perpendicularly before them, or by the figure 1: as,

*egregiâ virtute.*  
by (their) excellent virtue [courage].

When, in Latin, a word is united to another word by being placed either before or after it, and is separated in order to correspond with the English, such separated word is denoted by a dot placed either before or after it, and either before or after the word from which it is separated; the dot being placed after each separated word, when the first, or separated word, is to be added to the end of the following word: as,

que sua for suaque.  
and their their-and.

When an English word, or part of a sentence, is enclosed in parentheses ( ), it denotes that such word, or part of sentence, is added, in order to express the sense of the Latin more distinctly and intelligibly in English, and that it may be considered as a part of the English sentence: as,

\*nostrâ Galli.  
in-our (language) Gauls.

When an English word, or sentence, is enclosed in brackets [ ], it denotes that the word or sentence, thus inclosed, is used to express the meaning of the word or sentence immediately preceding, in better and more intelligible English, and may be used in place of such preceding word or sentence, so that the word or sentence does not constitute a part of the English sentence, but is to be considered as a substitute for a part or whole of the immediate preceding English sentence; the commencement of the English word or sentence, for which the word or sentence included in brackets is substituted, is indicated by a straight line: as,

linguâ ipsorum.  
[ in-(the)-language of-themselves [in their own language].

Here, "in their own language" is used for "in the language of themselves."

The word or sentence included in brackets may also be used as a species of explanatory note, without either constituting a part of the English sentence, or being a substitute for the part immediately preceding; in this case there is no straight line preceding the brackets: as,

quod erant cogniti.  
because they [the Boii] were known.

Here "Boii" is used to explain "they."



Omnis <sup>1</sup>Gallia est divisa in tres partes: <sup>4</sup>unam quarum  
 All Gaul is divided into three parts: one of-which  
<sup>2</sup>Belgæ incolunt; aliam Aquitani;  
 (the) Belgæ inhabit; another (of which) (the) Aquitani (inhabit); (and)  
<sup>3</sup>tertiam, qui <sup>5</sup>linguâ  
 (the) third (of which, those inhabit), who | <sup>1</sup>in (the) <sup>1</sup>language  
 ipsorum appellantur <sup>pl.1</sup>Celtæ,  
 of-themselves [in their own language] are-called Celts, (but)  
 nostrâ Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter se  
 in-our (language) Gauls. All these differ among themselves  
<sup>1</sup>linguâ, institutis, legibus. Flumen <sup>1</sup>Garumna dividit  
 in-language, in-customs, (and) in-laws. (The) river Garonne divides  
 Gallos ab Aquitanis, <sup>1</sup>Matrona et  
 (the) Gauls from (the) Aquitani, (and the rivers) Marn and  
<sup>1</sup>Sequana à <sup>pl.6</sup>Belgis.  
 Seine (divide them) from (the) Belgæ.

The learner should make himself well acquainted with the signification of each Latin word in this first lesson, as also with all the cases of the first declension that occur therein: at the same time he should also begin to commit the form of the first declension to memory.

The learner should also remember, that the English word, placed immediately under a Latin word, denotes the meaning of such Latin word in English; and that, when there are two or more words placed under one Latin word, and united by a hyphen (-), such words, so united, express the meaning of the one Latin word over them. Also, when these two or more English words, denoting one Latin word, are separated from one another by an interposed English word, or words, that the words thus separated have the figure <sup>1</sup> placed before them, as in the above lesson:

Linguâ.  
<sup>1</sup>in (the) <sup>1</sup>language.

Here "in" and "language," which express the Latin word - "linguâ," are separated by the definite article "the," which is not expressed in Latin, as the Latin has no definite article.

The scholar will also remark, that the words included in parentheses ( ), in this lesson, have no corresponding word in Latin over them; and that these words, between parentheses, are merely added to make a more complete and intelligible English sentence, constituting, at the same time, a part of the English sentence, which, without them, would be defective. He will also observe, that in this lesson, the words included in brackets [ ], and following a word, or sentence, that has a straight line before it, does not form a continuous part of the English, but expresses, in intelligible English, a sentence immediately preceding it, that is either uncouth, or unintelligible by the mere translation of the Latin words; as,

|     |                     |                                        |
|-----|---------------------|----------------------------------------|
| qui | linguâ              | ipsorum.                               |
| who | 'in (the) 'language | of themselves [in their own language]. |

Here it will be perceived, that "in their own language" is to be substituted for "in the language of them"; the vertical line | marking the commencement of the sentence in English, for which the words enclosed in brackets are to be substituted.

### Lesson 2.

This lesson is the same as Lesson 1, only that the words are placed in the same order that the Latin author has them. The interlinear translation is here omitted.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum linguâ Celtæ, nostrâ Galli, appellantur. Hi omnes linguâ, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, à Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 1 AND 2.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Partes. Legibus. Appellantur. Tres. Omnis. Est.  
Divisa. Aliam. Differunt. Incolunt. Quarum. Qui.

Nostrā. Unam. Tertiam. Ipsorum. Ab. A. Dividit.  
Se. Inter. Hi. Linguā. Flumen. Institutis.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

All. Three. Is. Inhabit. Divided. Are called. Third.  
Of themselves. Who. Our. Language. In a language.  
Of a language. Languages. To languages. Of languages.  
Divides. Differ. River. Among. Themselves. These.  
From. The Belgæ. From the Belgæ. Of the Belgæ.  
Gaul. Of Gaul. From Gaul. In Gaul. To Gaul.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Tres partes. Gallia est divisa. Omnis Gallia. Linguā  
nostrā. Ipsorum linguā. Celtæ appellantur. Quorum  
Aquitani incolunt aliam. Hi omnes inter se differunt. Le-  
gibus, institutis differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna  
flumen dividit. A Belgis flumen Sequana dividit.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

All Gaul is divided. One of which the Belgæ inhabit.  
Into three parts. The other the Aquitani inhabit. Who,  
in our language, are called Gauls. In their own language  
are called Celts. These differ among themselves. They  
differ in language. The river Seine divides the Gauls from  
the Belgæ. Among themselves.

In these two first lessons it is only the cases of the first  
declension that the pupil is required to point out. He might  
also be exercised in declining the several nouns, in the first  
declension, that occur in these two lessons: as, *lingua*, in  
singular and plural; *Gallia*, in singular; and *Galliæ* and  
*Belgæ*, in plural.

These exercises may be written, and also translated orally  
from the book.

NOTE.—Some few peculiarities and exceptions, in this first

declension, as also those Greek nouns having a peculiar form, will be reserved for the second or full course.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

The Latin words of the second declension end in *us*, *um*, or *r*, in their nominative singular. Those nouns that end in *us* or *r* in the nominative singular, are mostly in the masculine gender, though not all; those ending in *um* are neuter. Those ending in *r*, in the nominative singular, have two forms; in the one, the termination of the cases are placed after the nominative without change: as, Nom. *puer*, Gen. *pueri*; in the other, ending *er*, the *e* before the *r* is dropped in the other cases: as, *ager*, *agri*.

All nouns of the second declension are known by having their genitive singular in *i*. In nouns ending in *us*, or *um*, the *us* or *um* is changed into *i*; in those ending in *r*, the *i* of the genitive is added to *r*; but in the greater part of those ending in *er*, the *e* is dropped before *r* in the genitive and other cases.

*Form of Second Declension in "us": as, "dominus—master."*

| Singular.                                                    | Terminations. | Plural.                                                         | Terminations. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Nom. Dominus; a master, .                                 | us.           | pl. 1. N. Domini; masters, .                                    | i.            |
| 2. Gen. Domini; of a master, or<br>master's, . . . . .       | i.            | pl. 2. G. Dominorum; of mas-<br>ters, . . . . .                 | orum.         |
| 3. Dat. Domino; to a master, .                               | o.            | pl. 3. D. Dominis; to masters, .                                | is.           |
| 4. Acc. Dominum; a master, .                                 | um.           | pl. 4. A. Dominos; masters, .                                   | os.           |
| 5. Voc. Domine; O master, .                                  | e.            | pl. 5. V. Domini; O masters, .                                  | i.            |
| 6. Abl. Domino; in, with, by, or<br>from a master, . . . . . | o.            | pl. 6. Ab. Dominis; in, with, by,<br>or from masters, . . . . . | is.           |

Observe, the nominative singular of this form ends in *us*, the genitive singular, nominative and vocative plural end in *i*; the dative and ablative singular end in *o*, the accusative singular ends in *um*, the vocative singular ends in *e*, the dative and ablative plural end in *is*, the genitive plural ends in *orum*, and the accusative plural in *os*.

To designate the second declension, the terminations of the

nominative, denoting the four different forms of this second declension, are placed before the numbers denoting cases: as, s. 1, *dominus*, r. 1, *puer*; when the *e* before *r*, in the nominative singular, is retained, in the other cases, er. 1, *ager*, Gen. *agri*; when the *e* is dropped before *r*, in all the cases, except the nominative singular, m. 1 denotes the neuter form m: as, m. 1, *regnum*.

### Lesson 3.

<sup>pl.1</sup> Helvetii jam transduxerant <sup>pl.4</sup> suas <sup>pl.4</sup> copias per  
(The) Helvetii 'had now 'led-over their forces through  
<sup>pl.4</sup> angustias, et fines <sup>pl.2</sup> Sequanorum, et pervenerant  
(the) defiles, and borders 'of (the) 'Sequani, and had-come  
in fines <sup>pl.2</sup> Æduorum, que populabantur <sup>er-pl.4</sup> agros  
into (the) borders 'of (the) 'Ædui, and did-lay-waste '(the) fields  
eorum. <sup>pl.1</sup> Ædui quum non possent  
of-them [their fields]. (The) Ædui when they-'were not 'able  
defendere se, que sua ab his,  
to-defend themselves, and their (property) from these (Helvetii),  
mittunt <sup>pl.4</sup> legatos ad Cæsarem rogatum <sup>m.4</sup> auxilium;  
send ambassadors to Cæsar an-asking aid;  
(and to say, that) "se omni tempore,  
"they | in-all time [at all times],  
meritos esse ita de <sup>pl.4</sup> Romano <sup>pl.4</sup> populo,  
| to-have-merited [had deserved] so (well) of (the) Roman people,  
ut <sup>er-pl.1</sup> agri debuerint non vastari, penè  
that (their) fields ought not to-be-ravaged, almost  
conspectu nostri exercitûs, <sup>pl.1</sup> liberi eorum  
'in (the) 'sight of-our army, (the) | children of-them [their children]  
abduci in servitutem <sup>m-pl.1</sup> oppida  
to-be-led-away into slavery (and their) towns  
expugnari."  
to-be-taken-by-storm."

It will be observed in this third lesson, that *que* (and) has a dot after it, which indicates that it is to be united to the end of the word following it, that has also a dot after it. This *que* (and) is never used alone, but is always added to the end of a word.

## Lesson 4.

Helvetii jam per angustias, et fines Sequanorum, suas copias transduxerant, et in Æduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædui, quum se suaque ab his defendere non possent, legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: "ita se, omni tempore, de populo Romano meritos esse, ut penè in conspectu exercitûs nostri, agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint."

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 3 AND 4.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Exercitûs. Angustias. Populus. Fines. Abduci. Suas. Populabantur. Copias. Jam. Mittunt. Quum. Transduxerant. Legatos. Auxilium. Conspectu. Nostri. Defendere. Agri. Oppida. Liberi.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Now. Had. Led. Over. Fields. They arrived. They send. The borders. Laid waste. In the sight. Of our. Assistance. Army. Towns. Ambassadors. Of an ambassador. To an ambassador. From ambassadors. Children. Of children. With children. From the people.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Helvetii suas copias transduxerant. In fines pervenerant. Eorumque agros populabantur. Se defendere non possent. Ad Cæsarem mittunt. Omni tempore. In conspectu exercitûs nostri. Liberi in servitutem abduci. Oppida expugnari non debuerint.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

The Helvetii had led their forces through the defiles. They had come into the borders of the Ædui. They did lay

waste their fields. The Ædui send ambassadors to Cæsar. They could not defend themselves. Nearly in the sight of our army. At all times. To be led into slavery. From the Roman people. Ought not. Their children.

The attention of the pupil is now to be directed to the second declension, as well as to the first declension. He might also be exercised in declining the several words of the first and second declensions, that occur in the third and fourth lessons; but especially the form *us*, of the second declension.

*Neuter form in "um": as, "regnum, a kingdom."*

| Singular.                           | Terminations. | Plural.                                | Terminations. |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Regnum; a kingdom,   | um.           | pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Regna; kingdoms,      | . a.          |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Regni; of a kingdom, | i.            | pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Regnorum; of king-    |               |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Regno; to a kingdom, | o.            | doms, . . . . .                        | orum.         |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Regnum; a kingdom,   | um.           | pl. 3. <i>D.</i> Regnis; to kingdoms,  | is.           |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Regnum; O kingdom,   | um.           | pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Regna; kingdoms,      | . a.          |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Regno; in, with, by, |               | pl. 5. <i>V.</i> Regna; O kingdoms,    | a.            |
| or from a kingdom, . . .            | o.            | pl. 6. <i>Ab.</i> Regnis; in with, by, |               |
|                                     |               | or from kingdoms, . . .                | is.           |

The nominative singular of this form ends in *um*; the accusative singular and vocative singular end also in *um*; the nominative, accusative and vocative plural end in *a*; all the other cases are like those of the form *us*.

### Lesson 5.

|                                                                 |                                                     |                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Jam ubi arbitrati sunt                                          | se                                                  | paratos esse          |
| Now when they-deemed                                            | themselves                                          | to-have-been-prepared |
| ad eam rem,                                                     | incendunt                                           | omnia                 |
| to that thing [for leaving their country],                      | they-set-on-fire                                    | all                   |
| sua <sup>m.pl.4</sup> oppida ad duodecim <sup>a.6</sup> numero, | <sup>a.pl.4</sup> vicos ad                          |                       |
| their <sup>m.pl.4</sup> towns to twelve                         | in-number, (all their)                              | villages to           |
| <sup>a.pl.4</sup> quadringentos,                                | <sup>m.pl.4</sup> reliqua <sup>m.pl.4</sup> privata |                       |
| four-hundred, (in number, and all the)                          | remaining                                           | private               |
| <sup>m.pl.4</sup> œdificia; comburunt omne                      | <sup>m.4</sup> frumentum, præter                    |                       |
| buildings; they-burn all (their)                                | corn,                                               | except                |

quod erant portaturi cum se ;  
 what they-were-about-to-carry with themselves ; (so)  
 ut spe reditionis domum sublatâ, essent  
 that (the) hope of-a-return home being-taken-away, they-might-be  
 paratiores ad omnia <sup>m.pl.4</sup>pericula subeunda :  
 more-ready for all dangers necessary-to-be-undergone :  
 jubent quemque efferre domo <sup>m.pl.4</sup>molita <sup>m.pl.4</sup>cibaria  
 they-order each-one to-bring from-home ground provisions  
 trium mensium sibi.  
 | of-three months. for-himself [enough for three months for himself].

In this fifth lesson the dot placed after *cum* and *se*, denotes that *cum* is to be placed after *se*, so as to form one word, *secum*.

### Lesson 6.

Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt : frumentum omne, præter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt ; ut, domum reditionis, spe sublatâ, paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent ; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent.

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 5 AND 6.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Oppida. Vicos. Duodecim. Ædificia. Jubent. Rem. Incendunt. Frumentum. Præter. Spe. Ad. Domum. Molita. Quadringentos.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Now. To bring from. Their. Private. Towns. In the town. Themselves. In number. Remaining. Of a return. They order. Dangers. In danger. Of danger.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Vicos incendunt. Oppida sua omnia. Numero ad duodecim. Ad eam rem paratos esse. Paratiores ad omnia



essent. Privata sedificia. Frumentum omne comburant.  
Quod secum portaturi erant. Domo effere jubent.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

They set all their towns on fire. To the number of four hundred. They set fire to private buildings. Except what they were about to carry with them. They burn all the corn. Hope being taken away. Dangers necessary to be encountered. They might be more ready. To bring from home.

*Form of Second Declension in "r": as, "puer—a boy."*

| Singular.                                                 | Terminations. | Plural.                                                       | Terminations. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Nom. Puer; a boy, . . . . r.                           |               | pl. 1. N. Pueri; boys, . . . . i.                             |               |
| 2. Gen. Pueri; of a boy, . . . . i.                       |               | pl. 2. G. Puerorum; of boys, orum.                            |               |
| 3. Dat. Puero; to a boy, . . . . a.                       |               | pl. 3. D. Pueris; to boys, . . . . is.                        |               |
| 4. Acc. Puerum; a boy, . . . . um.                        |               | pl. 4. A. Pueros; boys, . . . . os.                           |               |
| 5. Voc. Puer; O boy, . . . . r.                           |               | pl. 5. V. Pueri; boys, . . . . i.                             |               |
| 6. Abl. Puero; in, with, from,<br>or by a boy, . . . . o. |               | pl. 6. Ab. Pueris; in, with, from,<br>or by boys, . . . . is. |               |

*Form of Second Declension in "er": as, "ager—a field."*

| Singular.                                                    | Terminations. | Plural.                                                          | Terminations. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Nom. Ager; a field, . . . . ger.                          |               | pl. 1. N. Agri; fields, . . . . gri.                             |               |
| 2. Gen. Agri; of a field, . . . . gri.                       |               | pl. 2. G. Agrorum; of fields, orum.                              |               |
| 3. Dat. Agro; to a field, . . . . gro.                       |               | pl. 3. D. Agris; to fields, . . . . gris.                        |               |
| 4. Acc. Agrum; field, . . . . grum.                          |               | pl. 4. A. Agros; fields, . . . . gros.                           |               |
| 5. Voc. Ager; O field, . . . . ger.                          |               | pl. 5. V. Agri; O fields, . . . . gri.                           |               |
| 6. Abl. Agro; in, with, from,<br>or by a field, . . . . gro. |               | pl. 6. Ab. Agris; in, with, from,<br>or by fields, . . . . gris. |               |

In the form *r*, of *puer—a boy*, all the cases are the same as in the form *us*, of *dominus—a master*, except the nominative and vocative singular, both of which end, in this declension, in *r*. The terminations of all the other cases, except the vocative singular, which is here like the nominative singular, are added to the nominative singular.

The form *er*, of *ager—a field*, is exactly like the form *r*, of *puer—a boy*, with the exception, that in all the cases, except the nominative and vocative singular, the *e* is dropped before *r*, as *agri* in place of *ageri*.

Lesson 7.

Fecit id maximè eâ ratione, quòd noluit  
 He-did that chiefly with-that reason, because he-wished-not  
 eum <sup>acc.</sup> locum, unde <sup>pl.1</sup> Helvetii discesserant  
 (that) that place, whence (the) Helvetii had-departed  
 vacare, ne propter bonitatem  
 to-be-void (of inhabitants), lest on-account-of (the) goodness  
<sup>acc. pl.2</sup> agrorum <sup>pl.1</sup> Germani, qui incolunt trans  
 'of (the) 'fields (the) Germans, who dwell beyond (the river)  
<sup>acc.</sup> Rhenum transirent à suis finibus in fines  
 Rhine might-pass-over from their borders into (the) territories  
<sup>pl.2</sup> Helvetiorum, et essent <sup>pl.1</sup> finitimi <sup>pl.2</sup> provinciae  
 'of (the) 'Helvetii, and would-be neighbors 'to (our) 'province  
<sup>acc.</sup> Galliae, quæ Allobrogibus. Concessit <sup>pl.3</sup> Aeduis  
 of-Gaul, and 'to (the) 'Allobroges. He-granted 'to (the) 'Aedui  
 petentibus, ut collocarent <sup>pl.4</sup> Boios in suis  
 asking (for it), that they-might-place (the) Boii in their  
 finibus, quòd cogniti erant  
 (own) territories, because 'they [the Boii] 'had-been-known  
<sup>acc.</sup> egregiâ virtute: quibus illi dederunt <sup>pl.4</sup> agros,  
 'by (their) 'excellent courage: to-whom they gave lands,  
 quæ quos postea receperunt, in parem conditionem  
 and whom 'they afterwards 'received, in equal condition  
 juris quæ libertatis, atque ipsi erant.  
 of-right and of-liberty, and (as) they-themselves were [and after-  
 wards they conferred on these Boii, the same rights and privileges that  
 they themselves enjoyed].

In this lesson, [the Boii] between brackets, having no straight line before any of the words preceding it, is to be considered merely as an explanatory note for "they," preceding it, and is not to be substituted for it.

Lesson 8.

Id eâ maximè ratione fecit, quòd noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant vacare; ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, è suis finibus in Hel-

vetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliæ provinciæ, Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Æduis, quod egregiâ virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 7 AND 8.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Locum. Loci. Loco. Quod. Fecit. Unde. Agro.  
Trans. Incolunt. Provincia. Concessit. Virtute. Quos.  
Libertatis. Receperunt. Erant. Postea. Parem. Illi.  
Conditionem. Atque.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

They. Themselves. Territories. Liberty. Beyond.  
Equal. Afterwards. In the fields. Goodness. They had  
departed. In the place. By courage. Gave. They might  
place. That. He granted. In the province. Neighbors.  
Would be.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

In parem conditionem. Quos receperunt. Cogniti erant  
virtute. Id eâ ratione fecit. Propter bonitatem agrorum.  
Noluit eum locum vacare. Qui incolunt. In Helvetiorum  
fines transirent. Finitimi Allobrogibus. Quibus Ædúi de-  
derunt agros. Petentibus Æduis concessit.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

And would be neighbors to the Helvetii. In equal con-  
dition of liberty. He granted to the Ædúi. Whom they  
received. To whom they gave. By their excellent courage.  
That they might place the Boii. In their own territories.  
Lest the Germans might pass over the Rhine. Who dwell  
beyond the Rhine. He did not wish the place to be void

(of inhabitants). On account of the goodness of the fields.  
He did that with that reason.

All further details respecting the second declension will be left for the second, or full course.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

Latin nouns of the third declension have a great variety of terminations in the nominative singular, if the terminating syllable of such nominative is taken into consideration. The terminating single letters in the nominative singular of the third declension are twelve, namely: five vowels, *a, e, i, o, y*, and seven consonants, *c, l, n, r, s, t, x*.

All nouns of the third declension are known by having the genitive singular in *is*. When the genitive singular has a greater number of syllables, or letters, than the nominative singular, such genitive singular is said to increase.

The third declension has all the three genders, denoted by the different terminations of the nominative singular, but such terminations are subject to many exceptions.

Nouns having, in their nominative singular, *o, er, or, os*, and *es*, increasing in the genitive singular, are generally masculine.

Nouns having *as, is, ys, aus, x, s*, preceded by a consonant, and *es*, not increasing in the genitive, are generally feminine.

Nouns terminating, in their nominative singular, in *a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur*, and *us*, are generally neuter.

To distinguish the third declension from all the other declensions, the terminating letter or syllable of the nominative singular is used, followed by the genitive singular in *is*, with such letters before *is* that are changed from the terminating letters or syllables of the nominative singular: as, *s-tis* in *ars*, Gen. *artis*—*art*. Here *tis* is substituted for *s* to form the genitive singular, and *s* is substituted for *tis* to form the nominative singular; the nominative singular being always

the form of the word, to be looked for in the dictionary. So, also, *o-onis* in *sermo*, Gen. *sermonis*—*speech*; *es-itis* in *miles*, Gen. *militis*—*a soldier*; *ter-tris* in *pater*, Gen. *patris*—*a father*; *es-is* in *rupes*, Gen. *rupis*—*rock*; *is-is* in *turris*, Gen. *turris*—*a tower*; and in like manner for others. These terminations are always placed before the figures denoting cases.

*Forms of Third Declension—General Form.*

| Singular.                              | Terminations. | Plural.                                      | Terminations. |
|----------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Sermo; speech, . . .    | o.            | pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Sermones; speeches, ones.   |               |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Sermonis; of speech, .  | onis.         | pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Sermonum; of                |               |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Sermoni; to speech, .   | oni.          | speeches, . . . . .                          | onum.         |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Sermonem; speech, onem. |               | pl. 3. <i>D.</i> Sermonibus; to              |               |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Sermo; O speech, . . .  | o.            | speeches, . . . . .                          | onibus.       |
| 6. <i>Ab.</i> Sermonē; in, with,       |               | pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Sermones; speeches, ones.   |               |
| from, or by speech, . . .              | one.          | pl. 5. <i>V.</i> Sermones; O speeches, ones. |               |
|                                        |               | pl. 6. <i>Ab.</i> Sermonibus; in,            |               |
|                                        |               | with, &c., speeches, .                       | onibus.       |

The nominative and vocative singular are alike in this form, and have different terminations; the genitive singular ends in *is*, the dative singular ends in *i*, the accusative singular in *em*, the ablative singular in *e*; the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural end in *es*, the genitive plural in *um*, the dative and ablative plural in *ibus*.

The dative singular is formed by changing the *is* of the genitive singular into *i*, the accusative singular by changing the same *is* into *em*, and the ablative singular by changing this *is* into *e*; the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, are formed by changing the *is* of the genitive singular into *es*, the genitive plural by changing the same *is* into *um*, and the dative and ablative plural by changing the same *is* into *ibus*.

**Lesson 9.**

|                                                         |                                               |                                            |         |                                            |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------------|------|
| * r- <sup>112</sup> . <sup>1</sup> Arar ( <i>m.</i> )** | est                                           | en- <sup>112</sup> . <sup>1</sup> flumen,  | quod    | influxit                                   | in   |
| (The) Arar                                              | is                                            | (a) river,                                 | which   | flows                                      | into |
| ** Rhodanum                                             | is- <sup>112</sup> . <sup>6</sup> incredibili | as- <sup>112</sup> . <sup>6</sup> lenitate | per     | is- <sup>112</sup> . <sup>pl.4</sup> fines |      |
| (the) Rhone                                             | with-incredible                               | slowness                                   | through | (the) territories                          |      |

<sup>a-pl.2</sup> Æduorum et <sup>a-pl.2</sup> Sequanorum, ita ut, non  
 'of (the) 'Ædui and 'of (the) 'Sequani, so that, it 'is not  
 possit judicari <sup>a-pl.6</sup> oculis in <sup>4</sup>utram <sup>a-tia.4</sup> partem  
 'possible to-judge. by (the) eyes | towards which-of-the-two part(s)  
 fluat;  
 it-flows [in what direction it flows]; <sup>a-pl.1</sup> Helvetii transibant  
 (the) Helvetii did-pass-over  
 id, junctis <sup>is-in.pl.6</sup> ratibus ac  
 that (river), having-joined-together rafts and  
<sup>ter-tria.pl.6</sup> lintribus.(f.)\*\* Ubi <sup>r-ris.1</sup> Cæsar factus  
 boats (to cross over on them). When Cæsar | was  
 est <sup>r-ris.1</sup> certior per <sup>or-oris.pl.4</sup> exploratores,  
 made more-certain [was informed] by by scouts, (that)  
<sup>a-pl.1</sup> Helvetios jam transduxisse id <sup>en-inis.4</sup> flumen tres  
 (the) Helvetii 'had now 'led-over that river three  
<sup>a-tia.4</sup> partes <sup>pl.2</sup> copiarum, verò <sup>4</sup> quartam <sup>a-tia.4</sup> partem  
 parts 'of (their) 'forces, but (that) the fourth part  
 reliquam esse citra <sup>en-inis.4</sup> flumen <sup>r-ris.4</sup> Ararim; de  
 remained on-this-side (of the) river Arar; about  
<sup>6</sup> tertiâ <sup>6</sup> vigiliâ, profectus è <sup>m-pl.6</sup> castris cum tribus  
 (the) third watch, having-set-out from 'from (the) 'camp with three  
<sup>o-onis.pl.6</sup> legionibus.(f.)\*\* pervenit ad eam <sup>a-tia.4</sup> partem,  
 legions, he-arrived at that part  
 quæ nondum transierat <sup>en-inis.4</sup> flumen:  
 (of the Helvetii), which 'had not-yet 'passed-over (the) river:  
 aggressus eos <sup>a-pl.4</sup> impeditos et <sup>a-tia.pl.4</sup> inopinantes concidit  
 having-attacked them embarrassed and unawares he-slew  
<sup>4</sup> magnam <sup>a-tia.4</sup> partem eorum; <sup>m-pl.1</sup> reliqui mandârunt sese  
 (a) great part of-them; (the) rest | committed themselves  
<sup>3</sup> fugæ atque abdiderunt in <sup>pl.4</sup> proximas  
 to-flight [fled] and hid (themselves) in (the) nearest  
<sup>pl.4</sup> silvas.  
 woods.

The learner's attention is now to be directed also to the third declension, as well as to the first and second.

It is only necessary to designate the gender when it is an exception to any of the general rules for forming gender. *Arar* is here noted as an exception to neuter nouns in *ar*; but rivers are, by a general rule, masculine.

## Lesson 10.

Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Æduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit: id Helvetii, ratibus ac lintribus junctis, transibant. Ubi per exploratores Cæsar certior factus est, tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam verò partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse; de tertiâ vigiliâ cum legionibus tribus è castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quæ nondum flumen transierat; eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugæ mandârunt, atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 9 AND 10.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Flumen. Silvas. Castris. Influit. Lenitate. Oculis. Transibant. Tertia. Pars. Legionibus. Vigilia. Copiæ. Exploratores. Tres. Fuga. Ubi. Legio.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

By the eyes. Through. With incredible. A boat. With the scouts. To the river. The forces. A part. In a legion. Of the legion. To the legions. Of the camps. He arrived. He slew. Of them. The rest. The woods. Hid. The nearest.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quod in Rhodanum influit. Arar est flumen incredibili lenitate. Oculis judicari non possit. Id flumen Helvetii transibant. Quartam partem copiarum. Per exploratores certior factus est. De tertiâ vigiliâ è castris profectus. Cum legionibus tribus ad eam partem pervenit. Eos inopinantes aggressus. In proximas silvas abdiderunt sese. Magnam partem concidit. Reliqui sese fugæ mandârunt.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Having set out from the camp. The rest fled. They hid themselves in the nearest woods. In what part it flows. When Cæsar was informed. The Helvetii had led over the river three parts of their forces. On this side of the river. A river, which flows into the Rhone. With incredible slowness. So that it was impossible to be judged.

*Forms of Third Declension—"ium" in Gen. Plural.*

| Singular.                                                       | Terminations. | Plural.                                                                     | Terminations. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Rupes; a rock, . . .                             | es.           | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> Rupes; rocks, . . .                                 | es.           |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Rupis; of a rock, . . .                          | is.           | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> Rupium; of rocks, . . .                             | ium.          |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Rupi; to a rock, . . .                           | i.            | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> Rupibus; to rocks, . . .                            | ibus.         |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Rupem; rock, . . .                               | em.           | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> Rupes; rocks, . . .                                 | es.           |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Rupes; O rock, . . .                             | es.           | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> Rupes; O rocks, . . .                               | es.           |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Rupe; in, with, from,<br>or by a rock, . . . . . | e.            | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> Rupibus; in, with,<br>from, or by rocks, . . . . . | ibus.         |

The terminations of this form follow the general form above exemplified by *sermo*—a speech, except the genitive plural, which ends in *ium*, in place of *um*.

The nouns of the third declension that have *ium*, in place of *um*, in the genitive plural, are those that end in *es* or *is*, in their nominative singular, and do not increase in the genitive; those monosyllables that end in two consonants: as, *ars*, *artium*—art; also nouns of two or more syllables, ending, in their nominative singular, in *ns* or *rs*: as, *cliens*, *clientium*—a client; likewise, nouns which have *i*, or *e*, or *i* only, in their ablative singular, have also *ium* in the genitive plural, besides some few other nouns.

Lesson 11.

<sup>6</sup>Prim<sup>8</sup> <sup>x-clis.6</sup>luce, quum <sup>1</sup>summus  
 | <sup>1</sup>In (the) first <sup>1</sup>light [at dawn of day], when (the) highest  
<sup>2-tis.</sup>mons(m.)<sup>22</sup> teneretur à <sup>6</sup>Tito <sup>6</sup>Labieno, ipse  
 mountain was-held by Titus Labienus, he-himself [Cæsar]



abesset non longius mille et <sup>m.pl.6</sup> quingentis  
 was-distant not farther (than) a thousand and five-hundred  
 passibus ab <sup>m.pl.6</sup> castris <sup>is-is.pl.3</sup> hostium, neque ut postea  
 paces from (the) camp 'of (the) 'enemy, nor as 'he afterwards  
 comperit ex <sup>m.pl.6</sup> captivis, aut adventus ipsius aut  
 'found from (the) captives, either (the) arrival of-himself or  
<sup>m.3</sup> Labieni cognitus esset; <sup>m.1</sup> Considius, <sup>m.6</sup> equo  
 of Labienus had-been-known; Considius, (his) horse  
<sup>m.6</sup> admisso, accurrit ad eum; dicit,  
 being-spurred-on, runs to him [Cæsar]; (and) he says, (that)  
<sup>m.1is.4</sup> montem, (m.)<sup>••</sup> quem voluerit occupari à  
 (the) mountain, which he-wished to-be-occupied by  
<sup>m.6</sup> Labieno, teneri ab <sup>m-is.pl.6</sup> hostibus; se  
 Labienus, was-held by (the) enemy; (and that) he-himself  
 cognovisse id à <sup>m.pl.6</sup> Gallicis <sup>m.pl.6</sup> armis, atque  
 knew that from (the) Gallic arms, and  
<sup>m-is.pl.6</sup> insignibus. <sup>r-is.1</sup> Cæsar subducit suas <sup>m.4</sup> copias in  
 ensigna. Cæsar leads his forces to  
<sup>m.4</sup> proximum <sup>is-is.4</sup> collem; (m.)<sup>••</sup> instruit aciem.  
 (the) nearest hill; (and) draws-up (the) line-of-battle.  
<sup>m.1</sup> Labienus, ut præceptum erat ei à <sup>r-is.6</sup> Cæsare,  
 Labienus, as had-been-directed him by Cæsar, (that)  
 ne committeret <sup>m.4</sup> proelium, nisi <sup>m.1</sup> copias  
 he-'should not 'engage (in) battle, | unless (the) forces  
 ipsius visæ essent prope <sup>m-pl.4</sup> castra  
 of-himself had been seen [unless his forces were seen] near (the) camp  
<sup>is-is.pl.3</sup> hostium, ut impetus fieret in <sup>is-is.pl.4</sup> hostes  
 'of (the) 'enemy, that (the) attack might-be-made against (the) enemy  
 undique, in uno <sup>m-oris.6</sup> tempore,  
 on-every-side, | in one time [at the same time],  
<sup>m-is.6</sup> monte (m.)<sup>••</sup> <sup>m.6</sup> occupato, expectabat  
 (the) mountain being-occupied (by Labienus), he-waited-for  
<sup>m-pl.4</sup> nostros que abstinebat <sup>m.6</sup> proelio.  
 our (men) and he-abstained from-battle.

## Lesson 12.

Primâ luce, quum summus mons à Tito Labieno teneretur,  
 ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus  
 abesset; neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius ad-

ventus, aut Labieni, cognitus esset; Considius, equo admisso, ad eum accurrit; dicit, montem, quem à Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se à Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Cæsar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei præceptum à Cæsare, ne prælium committeret, nisi ipsius copiarum prope hostium castra visæ essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret; monte occupato, nostros exspectabat, prælioque abstinebat.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 11 AND 12.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Lux. Mons. Mille. Luce. Hostium. Captivus. Adventus. Equus. Dicit. Occupari. Hostis. Insigne. Collis. Prælio. Tempus. Monte. Abstinebat.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

The forces. Of the enemy. Of the enemies. The mountain. He awaited. A hill. Ensign. By the enemies. He runs. Horses. Of horses. Arrival. A captive. Five hundred. Was distant. The highest.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English*

Ipsius adventus cognitus esset. Ut ex captivis comperit. Ab hostium castris. Ad eum accurrit. Dicit, montem ab hostibus teneri. Se id insignibus cognovisse. In proximum collem aciem instruit. Ut erat Labieno præceptum. Undique impetus in hostes fieret. Labienus nostros exspectabat. Prælio abstinebat.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

At dawn of day. Either his arrival, or that of Labienus, was known. He was distant not farther than a thousand paces from the camp. He said that the mountain was held by the enemy. He led his forces to the nearest hill. Labi-

enus, as it was commanded him, awaited our men. That, at the same time, an attack might be made on the enemy. Labienus abstained from battle.

*Forms of Third Declension—"em" or "im" in Accusative Singular.*

| Singular.                                                           | Terminations. | Plural.                                                                  | Terminations. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Turris; a tower, . . .                               | is.           | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> Turres; towers, . . .                            | es.           |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Turris; of a tower, . . .                            | is.           | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> Turrium; of towers, ium.                         |               |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Turri; to a tower, . . .                             | i.            | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> Turribus; to towers, ibus.                       |               |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Turrem or Turrim;<br>tower, . . . . .                | em or im.     | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> Turres; towers, . . .                            | es.           |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Turris; O tower, . . .                               | is.           | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> Turres; O towers, . . .                          | es.           |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Turre or Turri; in,<br>with, by, &c., a tower, . . . | e or i.       | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> Turribus; in, with,<br>from, &c., towers, . . . | ibus.         |

This form differs from the general form by having its accusative singular in *em* or *im*, its ablative singular in *e* or *i*, and its genitive plural in *ium*. Some of the nouns of this form have *im* only, others *em* or *im*.

If the accusative singular has *im* only, the ablative has *i* only; if the accusative singular has *em* or *im*, the ablative has *e* or *i*.

The genitive plural is always in *ium*.

### Lesson 13.

|                             |                      |                            |                                |                             |                     |      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|------|
| Ubi                         | ea                   | dies                       | venit,                         | quam                        | constituerat        | cum  |
| When                        | that                 | day                        | came,                          | which                       | he-had-appointed    | with |
| <sup>pl.6</sup> legatis,    |                      | et                         | <sup>pl.1</sup> legati         |                             | reverterunt ad eum, |      |
| (the) ambassadors,          |                      | and                        | (the) ambassadors              |                             | returned to him,    |      |
| negat                       | se,                  | <sup>ri.6</sup> more       | et                             | <sup>m.6</sup> exemplo      |                     |      |
| he-denies (that)            | he,                  | <sup>by (the)</sup> custom | and                            | <sup>by (the)</sup> example |                     |      |
| <sup>3</sup> Romani         | <sup>3</sup> populi, | posse dare                 | <sup>er-iner.4</sup> iter (n.) | <sup>••</sup> ulli          |                     |      |
| 'of (the)' Roman            | people,              | could grant                | (a) passage                    | to-any (one)                |                     |      |
| per                         |                      | <sup>4</sup> provinciam;   | et                             | ostendit                    |                     |      |
| through (the Roman)         |                      | province;                  | and                            | he-shows (that he)          |                     |      |
| prohibiturum,               |                      | si                         |                                | conentur                    | facere              |      |
| was-about-to-prohibit (it), |                      | if                         |                                | they-attempt                | to-make             |      |

<sup>m-pl.4</sup> vim. <sup>m-pl.1</sup> Helvetii,  
 force [if they attempted to force a passage]. (The) Helvetii,  
 dejecti eâ spe, conati,  
 | cast-down from-that hope [disappointed in that hope], endeavored,  
 nonnunquam interdium, sæpius noctu, si possent  
 sometimes in-the-day-time, more-often by-night, if they-could  
 perrumpere, <sup>to-in.pl.6</sup> navibus  
 | break-through [force the passage of the Rhone], (some of them), ships  
 junctis, que compluribus <sup>to-in.pl.6</sup> ratibus.  
 [boats] being-joined-together, and many rafts  
 factis, alii <sup>m-pl.6</sup> vadis  
 being-made, (endeavored to pass over on them), other 'by (the) 'fords  
<sup>m.2</sup> Rhodani, quâ erat 'minima <sup>o-inis.1</sup> altitudo (f.) \*\*  
 'of (the) 'Rhone, where (there) was (the) least depth  
<sup>m-inis.2</sup> fluminis; repulsi <sup>o-omis.6</sup> munitione (f.) \*\* <sup>m-omis.2</sup> operis  
 'of (the) 'river; repulsed | 'by (the) 'fortification 'of (the) 'work  
 et concursu,  
 [by the strength and defences of the works] and 'by (the) 'encounter,  
 et <sup>m-pl.6</sup> telis <sup>m-in.pl.2</sup> militum, destiterunt hoc conatu.  
 and weapons 'of (the) 'soldiers, they-desisted from-this endeavor.

### Lesson 14.

Ubi eâ dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit; et legati ad eum reverterunt; negat, "se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare: et si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit." Helvetii eâ spe dejecti, navibus junctis, ratibusque compluribus factis, alii, vadis Rhodani, quâ minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdium, sæpius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione, et militum concursu, et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 13 AND 14.

- *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Legatus. Dies. Exemplo. Iter. Venit. Dare. Vim.  
 Ostendit. Spe. Navibus. Vis. Navis. Vi. Ratibus.

Flumen. Vadis. Perrumpere. Opus. Milos. Munitio.  
Hoc. Telis.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Of the soldiers. Fortification. By night. The ford. A ship. Force. By force. He denies. Custom. Day. Ambassadors. They returned. Road.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Helvetii eâ spe dejecti. Ratibus compluribus factis. Ubi dies venit. Legati reverterunt. Se posse iter ulli dare. Si vim facere conentur. Vadis Rhodani. Si perrumpere possent. Telis repulsi. Conatu destiterunt.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

The ambassadors return to him. By the custom of the Roman people. That day came. If they should attempt force. Where the river was least deep. More often by night. If they could force a passage. They desist from this endeavor.

*Forms of Third Declension—Neuters in "ia" Plural.*

| Singular.                                                  | Terminations. | Plural.                                                            | Terminations. |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Nom. Sedile; a seat, . . . e.                           |               | pl. 1. N. Sedilia; seats, . . . ia.                                |               |
| 2. Gen. Sedilis; of a seat, . . is.                        |               | pl. 2. G. Sedilium; of seats, . ium.                               |               |
| 3. Dat. Sedili; to a seat, . . . i.                        |               | pl. 3. D. Sedilibus; to seats, . ibus.                             |               |
| 4. Acc. Sedile; seat, . . . e.                             |               | pl. 4. A. Sedilia; seats, . . . ia.                                |               |
| 5. Voc. Sedile; O seat, . . . e.                           |               | pl. 5. V. Sedilia; O seats, . . . ia.                              |               |
| 6. Abl. Sedili; in, with, by, &c.,<br>a seat, . . . . . i. |               | pl. 6. Ab. Sedilibus; in, with,<br>by, &c., seats, . . . . . ibus. |               |

This form differs from the general form by having the ablative singular in *i*, in place of *e*; the nominative plural in *ia*, in place of *a*; and the genitive plural in *ium*, in place of *um*.

It is to be observed, that all neuter nouns, of all declensions, have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular

alike: that is, the accusative and vocative singular end like the nominative singular; and, also, that in all declensions the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural end in *a*.

Those neuters that end in *i*, in the ablative singular: that is, those ending in *e*, *l*, and *ar*, in the nominative singular, have *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, in place of *a*

## Lesson 15.

Postquam Caesar advertit <sup>an.</sup>animum id, subducit  
 After Caesar turns (his) mind (to) that, he-leads  
<sup>pl.4</sup>suas <sup>pl.4</sup>copias in <sup>an.</sup>proximum <sup>in-an.</sup>collem (*m.*) <sup>que</sup>que misit  
 his forces to (the) nearest hill and sent  
 equitatum, qui sustineret impetum <sup>in-an.pl.3</sup>hostium.  
 cavalry, that might-sustain (the) attack of (the) enemy.  
 Interim ipse instruxit <sup>x-in.</sup>triplicem aciem  
 'In-(the)-'mean-time 'he-himself 'drew-up (a) triple line  
 quatuor <sup>pl.3</sup>veteranarum <sup>o-an.pl.2</sup>legionum (*f.*) <sup>in</sup>in <sup>an.</sup>medio  
 of-four veteran legions | in middle  
<sup>in-an.</sup>colle; (*m.*) <sup>ita</sup>ita uti collocaret  
 hill [in the middle part of the hill]; so that he-might-place  
 duas <sup>o-an.pl.4</sup>legiones (*f.*) <sup>supra</sup>se, in <sup>an.</sup>summo  
 two legions above himself, | on (the) highest  
<sup>an.</sup>jugo, quas  
 top (of the hill), [on the summit thereof], which (legions) he-'had  
 proximè conscripserat in <sup>or-oris.</sup>citeriore <sup>an.</sup>Galliâ, et  
 very-lately 'levied in hither Gaul, and (likewise)  
<sup>o-in.pl.4</sup>omnia <sup>m.pl.4</sup>auxilia, et compleret <sup>an.</sup>totum  
 all (the) auxiliaries, and (so that) he-might-fill (the) whole  
<sup>an-an.</sup>montem (*m.*) <sup>o-in-an.pl.3</sup>hominibus. Interea  
 mountain with-men. 'In-(the)-'mean-time  
 jussit <sup>pl.4</sup>sarcinas conferri in <sup>an.</sup>unum  
 he-ordered (the) baggage to-be-brought-together into one  
<sup>an.</sup>locum, et eum muniri, ab iis, qui  
 place, and (ordered) that (place) to-be-defended, by those, who  
 constituerant in <sup>or-oris.</sup>superiore acie. <sup>an.pl.1</sup>Helvetii  
 stood in (the) higher line-of-battle. (The) Helvetii

secuti cum <sup>l-pl.6</sup> omnibus <sup>pl.6</sup> suis <sup>pl.6</sup> carris,  
 followed with all their wagons, (and)  
 contulerunt <sup>m-pl.4</sup> impedimenta in <sup>pl.4</sup> unum <sup>pl.4</sup> locum.  
 brought-together (their) baggage into one place.

## Lesson 16.

Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret, hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim, in colle medio, triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quatuor veteranarum, ita uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Galliâ citeriore proximè conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocaret, ac totum montem hominibus compleret. Interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab iis, qui in superiore acie constituerant, muniri jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 15 AND 16.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Animus. Collis. Misit. Equitatum. Hostium. Omnia. Colle. Legiones. Mons. Homo. Jussit. Locus. Omnibus. Impedimenta.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

In the mean time. Wagons. They brought. To be defended. The mountains. Highest. Four. Of the veterans. He himself. Drew up. He sent. The attack. The nearest. Afterwards.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Copias in proximum collem subducit. Legiones, quas in Galliâ conscripserat. Triplicem aciem instruxit. Sarcinas in unum locum conferri jussit. Helvetii secuti cum suis carris. Omnia impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

In the mean time he ordered the baggage to be brought into one place. Cæsar ordered that place to be defended. Cæsar sent the cavalry, who might sustain the attack of the enemy. He placed all the auxiliaries. He drew up a triple line of battle. Four legions of veterans. He filled the mountain with men.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension have two terminations in the nominative singular, *us* and *u*.

Those in *us* are, with but few exceptions, masculine; those in *u* are neuter.

This fourth declension is known by having its genitive singular in *us*, over the *u* of which a circumflex is generally placed: *as*, *ûs*.

To distinguish this fourth declension, the genitive, ending in *ûs*, is placed before the numbers denoting case, for the form in *us*; and for the form in *u*, *u* alone is placed before the numbers denoting case.

*Form of Fourth Declension in "us."*

| Singular.                           | Terminations. | Plural.                                       | Terminations.   |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Fructus; fruit,      | . . . us.     | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> Fructus; fruits,      | . . . us.       |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Fructûs; of fruit,   | . . . ûs.     | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> Fructuum; of fruits,  | uum.            |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Fructui; to fruit,   | . . . ui.     | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> Fructibus; to fruits, | ibus.           |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Fructum; fruit,      | . . . um.     | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> Fructus; fruits,      | . . . us.       |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Fructus; O fruit,    | . . . us.     | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> Fructus; O fruits,    | . . . us.       |
| 6. <i>Ab.</i> Fructu; in, with, by, |               | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> Fructibus; in, with, |                 |
| &c., fruit,                         | . . . . . u.  | by, &c., fruits,                              | . . . . . ibus. |

In this fourth declension the nominative, genitive, and vocative singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike, all ending in *us*; the genitive singular being generally distinguished by having a circumflex over it: *as*, *ûs*. The dative singular ends in *ui*, the accusative sin-



gular in *um*, the ablative singular in *u*; the genitive plural ends in *uum*, and the dative and ablative plural in *ibus*.

The dative singular sometimes has *u*, in place of *ui*; and some words have *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural, in place of *ibus*.

*Domus*—a house, feminine, is partly declined according to the fourth, and partly according to the second declension. and has this form :

| Singular.                     | Plural.                                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Domus.         | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> Domus.             |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Domūs or Domī. | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> Domuum or Domorum. |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Domui or Domo. | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> Domibus.           |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Domum.         | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> Domus or Domos.    |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Domus.         | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> Domus.             |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Domo.          | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> Domibus.          |

The genitive singular in *i* denotes "at home"; the genitive singular in *ūs* denotes "of a house."

### Lesson 17.

Postero die movent <sup>m.pl.4</sup>castra ex eo <sup>a.6</sup>loco;  
 'On (the) 'next day they-move (their) camp from that place;  
<sup>n-pl.1</sup>Cæsar facit idem, que <sup>præmittit</sup> <sup>is-is.4</sup>omnem  
 Cæsar does (the) same, and sends-forward all  
<sup>is.4</sup>equitatum ad <sup>a.4</sup>numerus quatuor millium, quem habebat  
 (the) cavalry to (the) number of-four thousand, which he-had  
 coactum ex <sup>is-is.6</sup>omni <sup>6</sup>provincia, et <sup>a.pl.6</sup>Ædus  
 collected from all (the) province, and 'from (the) 'Ædus  
 atque <sup>a.pl.6</sup>sociis eorum; qui  
 | and 'from (the) 'allies of-them [and from their allies]; who  
 videant in quas <sup>a-pl.4</sup>partes <sup>is-is.pl.4</sup>hostes faciant  
 might-observe | into what parts (the) enemy might-make  
<sup>or-inerit.4</sup>iter (n.)\*\* Qui,  
 (their) journey [in what direction the enemy might march]. Who,  
 insecuti cupidius <sup>m.4</sup>novissimum <sup>n-in.4</sup>agmen,  
 having-followed too-eagerly | (the) hindmost troop [the rear],  
 committunt <sup>m.4</sup>proelium cum <sup>is.6</sup>equitatu <sup>a.pl.2</sup>Helvetiorum,  
 join battle with (the) cavalry 'of (the) 'Helvetii,

<sup>a.s.</sup> alieno <sup>a.s.</sup> loco: et <sup>a.pl.1</sup> pauci de <sup>a.pl.6</sup> nostris  
<sup>1</sup>in (a) <sup>1</sup>disadvantageous place: and (a) few of our (men)  
 cadunt. Quo <sup>m.6</sup> prœlio <sup>a.pl.1</sup> Helvetii sublati, quòd  
 fall. By-which battle (the) Helvetii were-elevated, because  
<sup>a.pl.6</sup> quingentis <sup>co-itis.pl.6</sup> equitibus propulerant <sup>4</sup>tantam  
 with-five-hundred horsemen they-had-repulsed so-great  
<sup>do-dinis.4</sup> multitudinem (f.) <sup>co-itis.pl.2</sup> equitum, cœperunt  
 (a) multitude of-horsemen, they-began  
 subsistere audaciùs; nonnunquam ex <sup>m.6</sup> novissimo  
 to-withstand more-boldly; | (and) sometimes from (their) hindmost  
<sup>en-inis.6</sup> agmine. lacessere <sup>m.6</sup> prœlio <sup>a.pl.4</sup> nostros.  
 troop to-challenge with-battle our (men) [and  
 sometimes from their rear, they provoked our men to fight].

### Lesson 18.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem Cæsar facit, equitatumque omnem ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provinciâ, et Æduis, atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, præmittit; qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant: qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco, cum equitatu Helvetiorum prœlium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo prœlio sublati Helvetii, quòd quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audaciùs subsistere, nonnunquam ex novissimo agmine prœlio nostros lacessere cœperunt.

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 17 AND 18.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Locus. Equitatu. Movent. Facit. Quatuor. Pars. Equitatu. Socius. Hostes. Pauci. Prœlium. Quingentis. Multitudo. Nonnunquam. Cœperunt. Equitum.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

He does. Battle. So great. By the horsemen. With the cavalry. All. Which. He had. Part. Road. In the place. From the battle. Because. Multitude. They began.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quòd tantam multitudinem propulerant. Postero die castra movent. Equitatum omnem præmittit. Quem ex omni Provinciâ coactum habebat. Quas in partes iter faciant. Cum equitatu prælium committunt. Nostros lacessere cœperunt.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

They join battle with the cavalry, in a disadvantageous place. They sometimes provoked our men to battle, from their rear. A few of our men fall. Because, with five hundred horsemen, they had repelled so great a number of horsemen. Next day they move their camp. Cæsar sends forward all the cavalry. In what direction the enemy might march.

*Form of Fourth Declension in "u."*

| Singular.                                                   | Terminations. | Plural.                                                                    | Terminations. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Cornu; a horn, . . . u.                      |               | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> Cornua; horns, . . . ua.                           |               |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Cornu or Cornûs; of a horn, . . . u or ûs.   |               | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> Cornuum; of horns, uum.                            |               |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Cornu; to a horn, . . . u.                   |               | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> Cornibus; to horns, ibus.                          |               |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Cornu; a horn, . . . u.                      |               | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> Cornua; horns, . . . ua.                           |               |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Cornu; O horn, . . . u.                      |               | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> Cornua; O horns, . . . ua.                         |               |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Cornu; in, with, from, &c., a horn, . . . u. |               | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> Cornibus; in, with, from, &c., horns, . . . ibus. |               |

In this form of the fourth declension in *u*, the singular is often said to be indeclinable: that is, all the terminations of the singular are the same as the nominative singular; but the genitive in *ûs* is also used.

The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike, and end in *ua*; the genitive plural ends in *uum*, the dative and ablative plural end in *ibus*.

Lesson 19.

<sup>r-ri.1</sup> Cæsar <sup>a-pl.4</sup> præfecit <sup>a-pl.4</sup> singulos <sup>a-pl.4</sup> legatos <sup>a-pl.2</sup> singulis  
Cæsar set-over single lieutenants to-each

<sup>a-om-pl.2</sup> legionibus, et <sup>or-ri.4</sup> quæstorem, utl quisque haberet  
legion, and (a) quæstor, that every-one might-have

eos <sup>is-is-pl.4</sup> testes <sup>s-sus</sup> <sup>m-ati.2</sup> virtutis. (f.)\*\* Ipse à  
them (as) witnesses of-his valor. He-himself from

<sup>m.6</sup> dextro <sup>a.6</sup> cornu commissit <sup>m.4</sup> proelium, quòd  
the right | horn [wing] joined battle, because

animadverterat <sup>4</sup>eam <sup>m-ri.4</sup> partem <sup>is-is-pl.2</sup> hostium esse  
he-had-observed that part 'of (the) 'enemy to-be

minimè <sup>4</sup>firmam. Ita <sup>or-pl.1</sup> nostri, <sup>m.6</sup> signo <sup>m.5</sup> dato,  
least firm. So our (men), (the) signal being-given,

fecerunt <sup>m.4</sup>impetum acriter in <sup>is-is-pl.4</sup> hostes; itaque  
made (an) attack sharply on (the) enemy; then

<sup>is-is-pl.1</sup> hostes procurrerunt repentè que celeriter, ut  
(the) enemy 'ran suddenly and quickly 'forward,(so) that

<sup>m.1</sup> spatium non daretur conjiciendi <sup>m-pl.4</sup> pila in  
space 'was not 'given (for) throwing (the) javelins against

<sup>is-is-pl.4</sup> hostes. <sup>m-pl.6</sup> Pilis rejectis, pugnatum est  
(the) enemy. (The) javelins being-thrown, it-was-fought

cominus <sup>m-pl.6</sup> gladiis. At <sup>a-pl.1</sup> Germani, <sup>x-st.6</sup> phalange  
hand-to-hand with-swords. But (the) Germans, (a) phalanx

factà, celeriter ex <sup>6</sup>suà <sup>do-dia.6</sup> consuetudine, (f.)\*\*  
being-made, quickly according-to their custom,

exceperunt <sup>a-pl.4</sup>impetum <sup>m-pl.2</sup> gladiatorum. Complures  
received (the) attacks 'of (the) 'swords. Many (of)

<sup>or-pl.1</sup> nostri <sup>or-ri.1</sup> milites reperti sunt, qui insilirent in  
our soldiers were-found, who would-leap-up on

<sup>x-st-pl.4</sup> phalanges, et revellerent <sup>m-pl.4</sup> scuta <sup>a-pl.6</sup> manibus, (f.)\*\*  
(the) phalanxes, and pull-back (the) shields 'with (their) 'hands,

et vulnerarent desuper. Quum acies <sup>is-is-pl.2</sup> hostium  
and wound from-above. When (the) line 'of (the) 'enemy

pulsa esset à <sup>m.6</sup> sinistro <sup>a.6</sup> cornu, et conversa in <sup>4</sup>fugam,  
had-been-repulsed on (the) left wing, and put to flight,

premebant vehementer <sup>4</sup>nostram aciem à  
they-pressed vehemently (on) our line from (their)

<sup>m.6</sup> dextro <sup>a.6</sup> cornu <sup>do-dia.6</sup> multitudine (f.)\*\* <sup>a-pl.2</sup> suorum.  
right wing 'by (the) 'multitude of-their (men).

## Lesson 20.

Cæsar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quæstorem præfecit, uti eos testes suæ quisque virtutis haberet. Ipse à dextro cornu, quòd eam partem minimè firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes, signo dato, impetum fecerunt; itaque hostes repentè, celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non daretur. Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter, ex consuetudine suâ, phalange factâ, impetus gladiatorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalanges insilirent, et scuta manibus revellerent, et desuper vulnerarent. Quum hostium acies à sinistro cornu pulsa, atque in fugam conversa esset, à dextro cornu vehementer, multitudine suorum, nostram aciem premebant.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 19 AND 20.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Legatus. Præfecit. Proelium. Hostis. Cornu. Pars. Impetus. Milites. Gladiatorum. Fecerunt. Spatium. Pila. Gladiis. Consuetudo. Manibus. Acies. Fuga.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Wing of the army. Flight. They pressed. Javelins. Space. With swords. Quickly. Custom. Many. Received. Who. Shields. A hand. Legion. Witnesses. Battle. A part. Signal. They made. They ran. Attack. Suddenly.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Legioni legatum præfecit. Uti testes suæ virtutis haberent. Ipse à dextro cornu proelium commisit. Nostri milites in phalanges insilirent. Comminus gladiis pugnatum est. Germani impetus gladiatorum exceperunt. Scuta mani-

bus revellerent. Acies in fugam conversa esset. À dextro cornu, nostram aciem premebant.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

The Germans, according to their custom. Space for throwing javelins against the enemy. They quickly received the attack. Many were found, who would leap on the phalanxes. When the line of the enemy had been repulsed. The soldiers pulled back the shields with their hands. They pressed on our line from their right wing. That every one might have a witness. He himself joined battle. He had observed that part to be least firm. Our men made an attack on the enemy.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are feminine; *dies*—a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural.

Nouns of this declension are known by the genitive singular ending in *ei*.

To distinguish this fifth declension, *ei* is placed before the numbers denoting cases.

*Form of the Fifth Declension.*

| Singular.                                                      | Terminations. | Plural.                                                                    | Terminations. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Res; a thing, . . .                             | es.           | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> Res; things, . . .                                 | es.           |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Rei; of a thing, . . .                          | ei.           | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> Rerum; of things, . . .                            | erum.         |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Rei; to a thing, . . .                          | ei.           | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> Rebus; to things, . . .                            | ebus.         |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Rem; a thing, . . .                             | em.           | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> Res; things, . . .                                 | es.           |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Res; O thing, . . .                             | es.           | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> Res; O things, . . .                               | es.           |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Re; in, with, from, by, &c., a thing, . . . . . | e.            | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> Rebus; in, with, from, by, &c., things, . . . . . | ebus.         |

In this fifth declension, the nominative and vocative singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike, and end in *es*. The genitive and dative singular end in *ei*; the accusative singular ends in *em*, and the abla-

tive singular in *e*; the genitive plural ends in *erum*, and the dative and ablative plural in *ebus*.

But few nouns of this declension have a plural.

The genitive and dative singular is sometimes found in *e*, in place of *ei*; and the same two cases are sometimes in *i*, in place of *ei*.

### Lesson 21.

Postridiè ejus<sup>ei.2</sup> diei, quòd  
 | On-the-day-after of-that day [the day after that], because  
 omnino<sup>m.1</sup> biduum supererat, quum oporteret  
 altogether (a) space-of-two-days remained, when it-was-necessary  
 metiri<sup>m.4</sup> frumentum<sup>as.2</sup> exercitu; [u for ui] et  
 to-measure-out corn 'to (the) 'army; and  
 quòd aberat à Bibracte, longè<sup>m.6</sup> maximo ac  
 because he-was-distant from Bibracte, by-far (the) greatest and  
<sup>m.5</sup> copiosissimo<sup>m.6</sup> oppido<sup>as.pl.2</sup> Æduorum, non amplius  
 richest town 'of (the) 'Ædui, not more (than)  
 octodecim millibus<sup>as.pl.2</sup> passuum; existimavit  
 eighteen thousand paces; | he-thought  
 prospiciendum<sup>2</sup> frumentariæ<sup>ei.2</sup> rei  
 it-ought-to-be-foreseen for corn thing [he thought it necessary  
 et avertit<sup>or-iperia.4</sup> iter (n.)<sup>••</sup>  
 to take care for provisions] and he-turns-aside (his) route  
 ab<sup>as.pl.6</sup> Helvetiis, ac contendit ire Bibracte. Ea  
 from (the) Helvetii, and hastens to-go (to) Bibracte. That  
<sup>ei.1</sup> res nuntiatur<sup>in-as.pl.6</sup> hostibus per<sup>as.pl.4</sup> fugitivos  
 thing is-announced 'to (the) 'enemy by fugitives  
<sup>as.2</sup> Lucii<sup>as.2</sup> Æmilii<sup>o-onis.2</sup> decurionis<sup>es-itis.pl.2</sup> equitum  
 of-Lucius Æmilius (a) captain of-horsemen  
<sup>as.pl.2</sup> Gallorum. 'ei.1 Helvetii seu quòd existimarent,  
 'of (the) 'Gauls. (The) Helvetii either because they-thought, (that)  
<sup>as.pl.4</sup> Romanos discedere<sup>as.pl.4</sup> perterritos<sup>or-oris.6</sup> timore,  
 (the) Romans departed dismayed with-fear, (and)  
 eò magis, quòd pridie,<sup>or-oris.pl.6</sup> superioribus  
 so-much (the) more, because on-the-day-before, (the) higher  
<sup>as.pl.6</sup> locis occupatis, non commisissent<sup>m.4</sup> prœlium,  
 places being-occupied, they-'had not 'committed battle,

|                                       |                     |                                                  |                             |                |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| sive                                  | quòd                | confiderent                                      | posse                       | intercludi     |
| or                                    | because             | they-confided (that)                             | they-would-be               | hindered       |
| <sup>s</sup> frumentariâ              | <sup>ei.s</sup> re; |                                                  |                             |                |
| from-corn                             | thing               | [that they would be able to intercept the provi- |                             |                |
| sions of the Romans];                 |                     | <sup>m.s</sup> consilio                          | <sup>m.s</sup> commutato,   | atque          |
|                                       |                     | (their) counsel                                  | being-changed,              | and            |
| <sup>er-ineria.s</sup> itinere (n.)** |                     | <sup>m.s</sup> converso,                         | cœperunt                    | insequi, et    |
| the route                             |                     | being-altered,                                   | they-began                  | to-follow, and |
| laccessere <sup>er.pl.4</sup> nostros |                     | à <sup>m.s</sup> novissimo                       | <sup>m-inia.s</sup> agmine. |                |
| to-provoke                            | our (men)           | from (the) last                                  | troop                       | [from          |
| the rear].                            |                     |                                                  |                             |                |

## Lesson 22.

Postridiè ejus diei, quòd omnino biduum supererat, quum exercitu frumentum metiri oporteret, et quòd à Bibracte oppido Æduorum longè maximo ac copiosissimo, non ampliùs millibus passuum octodecim aberat, rei frumentariæ prospiciendum existimavit; et iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Æmilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nunciatur. Helvetii seu quòd timore perterritos Romanos, discedere existimarent, eò magis, quòd pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, prœlium non commississent; sive quòd re frumentariâ intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio, atque itinere converso, nostros à novissimo agmine insequi ac laccessere cœperunt.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 21 AND 22.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Timor. Locis. Discedere. Agmen. Iter. Prœlium.  
 Res. Equites. Nunciatur. Ire. Rebus. Oppidum.  
 Passuum. Exercitus.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Of the day. The road. To follow. Because. The army.  
 In the town. The greatest. Was distant. He thought.  
 To go. Of the horsemen. To the enemy. Fear. The  
 more. Counsel.



*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Nostros insequi cœperunt. Quod pridie, prœlium non commisissent. Ea res per fugitivos nunciatur. Timore perterritos discedere existimarent. Frumentum metire operet. Oppidum longè maximum ac copiosissimum. Iter ab Helvetiis avertit. Rei frumentariæ prospiciendum existimavit. Bibracte ire contendit.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

These things were announced by fugitives. Because they thought that the Romans departed dismayed. Because they had not committed battle. That they would be able to intercept the provisions of the Romans. They began to follow. On the day after that. It was necessary to measure out corn to the army. He was distant from Bibracte, not more than eighteen thousand paces.

The learner should be well exercised in declining the nouns of the above five declensions, as his attention is successively directed to each of them, and as they occur in the lessons.

## ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES may be considered under the heads of Declension, and of Comparison.

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

It may here be again repeated, that adjectives are in the same number, gender, and case, as the noun they qualify.

Adjectives have gender, number, and case, denoted by their terminations.

Adjectives are declined in the same manner as nouns, and,

as respects their declension, may be divided into two classes; the first, those which follow the first and second declension—the masculine and neuter gender being in the second declension, and the feminine gender in the first declension: *as*, *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*—the masculine always ending in *us* or *r*, the feminine in *a*, and the neuter in *um*. The second class contains all those which follow the forms of the third declension, and have different terminations to denote gender.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

*The Form in "us," "a," "um."*

SINGULAR.

| Masculine.                                                         | Feminine.                   | Neuter.                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Bonus ..... (us) bona .....                         | (a) bonum.....(um) good.    |                                        |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Boni .....                                          | (i) bonæ..... (æ) boni..... | (i) of good.                           |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Bono.....                                           | (o) bonæ..... (æ) bono..... | (o) to good.                           |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Bonum .....(um) bonam.....(am) bonum.....(um) good. |                             |                                        |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Bone.....                                           | (e) bona.....               | (a) bonum.....(um) O good.             |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Bono.....                                           | (o) bonâ.....               | (â) bono..... (o) in, with, &c., good. |

PLURAL.

| Masculine.                                                               | Feminine.       | Neuter.                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------|
| pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Boni.....                                               | (i) bonæ.....   | (æ) bona..... (a) good.                   |
| pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Bonorum (orum) bonarum..(arum) bonorum..(orum) of good. |                 |                                           |
| pl. 3. <i>D.</i> Bonis.....                                              | (is) bonis..... | (is) bonis..... (is) to good.             |
| pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Bonos.....                                              | (os) bonas..... | (as) bona..... (a) good.                  |
| pl. 5. <i>V.</i> Boni.....                                               | (i) bonæ.....   | (æ) bona..... (a) O good.                 |
| pl. 6. <i>Ab.</i> Bonis.....                                             | (is) bonis..... | (is) bonis..... (is) in, with, &c., good. |

The letters between the parentheses ( ), denote the terminations of the different cases, in masculine, feminine, and neuter singular, and the same in the plural.

The cases are denoted in the same manner as in the first and second declension of nouns; *s*, placed before the figures denoting cases, denotes the form in *us*, or the masculine, of the second declension. So, also, *er* or *r*, the masculine form in *er* or *r*, of the second declension; *a*, or only the figures

## 52 ADJECTIVES—FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

denoting cases, denotes the first declension, or feminine; *m* denotes the second declension, or neuter. The nominative masculine singular, of all adjectives, is to be looked for in the dictionaries.

### Lesson 23.

Quum venisset eò de <sup>a.6</sup>improviso, que  
 | When he-had-come thither from unexpected, and  
 celerius <sup>o-onia.6</sup>opinione (*f.*) <sup>is-is.pl.2</sup>omnium,  
 more-quickly (than) (the) opinion of-all [when he had ar-  
 rived more speedily there, than all had supposed he would do], <sup>a.pl.1</sup>Rhemi,  
 qui sunt <sup>a.pl.1</sup>proximi ex <sup>pl.6</sup>Belgis <sup>3</sup>Galliæ, miserunt ad  
 who are (the) nearest of (the) Belgæ to-Gaul, sent to  
 eum <sup>a.pl.4</sup>legatos <sup>a.4</sup>Iccium et <sup>a.4</sup>Antebrogium  
 him (as) ambassadors Iccius and Antebrogius  
<sup>a.pl.4</sup>primos <sup>2</sup>sux <sup>ss-atia.2</sup>civitatis, qui dicerent  
 (the) first (men) of-their state, who said (that)  
 “permittere se, que <sup>o-is.pl.4</sup>omnia <sup>m.pl.4</sup>sua.  
 “they-confided themselves, and all their (property)  
 in <sup>si.4</sup>fidem atque <sup>ss-atia.4</sup>potestatem <sup>a.2</sup>Romani <sup>a.2</sup>populi,  
 to (the) faith and power of (the) Roman people,  
 neque se consensisse cum <sup>a.pl.6</sup>reliquis <sup>pl.6</sup>Belgis,  
 nor had they consented with (the) remaining Belgæ,  
 neque conjurasse omnino contra <sup>a.4</sup>Romanum  
 nor had-they-conspired at-all against (the) Roman  
<sup>a.4</sup>populum; que paratos esse, et dare <sup>ss-idia.pl.4</sup>obsides,  
 people; and (that) they-were-ready, both to-give hostages,  
 et facere <sup>m.pl.4</sup>imperata, et recipere <sup>m.pl.6</sup>oppidis,  
 and to-do (their) commands, and to-receive (them) in (their) towns,  
 et juvare <sup>m.6</sup>frumento, que <sup>pl.6</sup>cæteris <sup>ei.pl.6</sup>rebus;  
 and to-assist (them) with-corn, and with-other things;  
<sup>is-is.pl.4</sup>omnes <sup>a.pl.4</sup>reliquos <sup>pl.4</sup>Belgas esse in <sup>m.pl.6</sup>armis;  
 (that) all (the) remaining Belgæ were in arms;  
 que <sup>a.pl.4</sup>Germanos, qui incolunt cis <sup>a.4</sup>Rhenum  
 and (that) (the) Germans, who dwell on-this-side (the) Rhine  
 conjunxisse sese cum his; que tantum  
 had-joined themselves with these (Belgæ); and (that) so-great  
 esse <sup>or-oris.4</sup>furorem <sup>is-is.pl.2</sup>omnium eorum, ut potuerint  
 was (the) fury of-all of-them, that they-had-been-able

detertere, ne quidem <sup>o-nis.pl.4</sup> Suessiones, <sup>s.pl.4</sup> suos <sup>fratres</sup> <sup>fratres</sup>  
 to-deter, not even (the) Suessiones, their brothers  
 que <sup>s.pl.4</sup> consanguineos, qui utantur eodem <sup>us-uris.6</sup> jure,  
 and relations, who use (the) same right, (and)  
 iisdem <sup>s-pl.pl.6</sup> legibus, habeant <sup>m.4</sup> unum <sup>m.4</sup> imperium, que  
 (the) same laws, have one government, and  
<sup>s.4</sup> unum <sup>m.4</sup> magistratum cum ipsis, quin  
 one magistracy with themselves, but that  
 consentirent cum his."  
 they-would-join with these (Belgæ)."

## Lesson 24.

Eò quum de improvise, celeriusque omnium opinione venisset, Rhemi, qui proximi Galliæ ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Antebrogium primos civitatis suæ miserunt; qui dicerent, "se suaque omnia in fidem atque potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum reliquis Belgis consensisse, neque contra populum Romanum, omnino conjurasse; paratosque esse et obsides dare, et imperata facere, et oppidis recipere, et frumento cæterisque rebus juvare: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse; Germanosque qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure, iisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium, unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, detertere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent."

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 23 AND 24.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Incolunt. Omnes. Omnia. Imperium. Lex. Frater.  
 Furor. Proximus. Primus. Fides. Civitas. Miserunt.  
 Potestas. Contra. Dare. Oppidum. Reliquus. Arma.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Magistracy. Government. So great. Relations. In the opinion. Nearest to. Ambassadors. Of the state. They sent. Power. Hostages. To receive.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Celerius omnium opinione venisset. Germani incolunt cis Rhenum. Unum imperium cum ipsis habeant. Qui eodem jure, iisdem legibus utantur. Ad eum legatos miserunt. Se omnia in potestatem populi Romani permittere. Paratos esse imperata facere. Frumento juvare. Reliquos Belgas esse in armis.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

That all the Belgæ were in arms. They sent as ambassadors to him the first men of the state. That they were ready to give hostages. To receive them in their towns. Who dwell on this side of the Rhine. With other things. So great was the fury of all. Who use the same laws. Their brothers and relations.

*The Forms of Declension in "er" and "r," in place of  
"us"—Form in "er."*

## SINGULAR.

| Masculine.                                                                                  | Feminine. | Neuter. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Tener..... (er) tenera..... (era) tenerum...(erum) tender.                   |           |         |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Teneri..... (eri) teneræ..... (eræ) teneri..... (eri) of tender.             |           |         |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Tenero..... (ero) teneræ..... (eræ) tenero..... (ero) to tender.             |           |         |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Tenerum (erum) teneram...(eram) tenerum...(erum) tender.                     |           |         |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Tener..... (er) tenera..... (era) tenerum...(erum) O tender.                 |           |         |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Tenero..... (ero) tenerâ..... (erâ) tenero..... (ero) in, with, &c., tender. |           |         |

## PLURAL.

| Masculine.                                                                                            | Feminine. | Neuter. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------|
| pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Teneri..... (eri) teneræ..... (eræ) tenera..... (era) tender                         |           |         |
| pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Tenero-<br>rum.....(erorum) rum...(erarum) rum...(erorum) of tender.                 | tenera-   | tenero- |
| pl. 3. <i>D.</i> Teneris..... (eris) teneris..... (eris) teneris..... (eris) to tender.               |           |         |
| pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Teneros..... (eros) teneras..... (eras) tenera..... (era) tender.                    |           |         |
| pl. 5. <i>V.</i> Teneri..... (eri) teneræ..... (eræ) tenera..... (era) O tender.                      |           |         |
| pl. 6. <i>Abl.</i> Teneris..... (eris) teneris..... (eris) teneris..... (eris) in, with, &c., tender. |           |         |

## Form in "r."

| SINGULAR.                      |                       |                       |                                |         |  |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|---------|--|
| Masculine.                     |                       | Feminine.             |                                | Neuter. |  |
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Piger.....      | (er) pigra.....       | (ra) pigrum.....      | (rum) slothful.                |         |  |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Pigri.....      | (ri) pigræ.....       | (ræ) pigræ.....       | (ri) of slothful.              |         |  |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Pigno.....      | (ro) pigræ.....       | (ræ) pigno.....       | (ro) to slothful.              |         |  |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Pigrum.....     | (rum) pigrum.....     | (ram) pigrum.....     | (rum) slothful.                |         |  |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Piger.....      | (er) pigra.....       | (ra) pigrum.....      | (rum) O slothful.              |         |  |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Pigno.....      | (ro) pigræ.....       | (ræ) pigno.....       | (ro) in, with, &c., slothful.  |         |  |
| PLURAL.                        |                       |                       |                                |         |  |
| Masculine.                     |                       | Feminine.             |                                | Neuter. |  |
| pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Pigræ.....    | (ri) pigræ.....       | (ræ) pigræ.....       | (ra) slothful.                 |         |  |
| pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Pigrorum..... | (rorum) pigrarum..... | (rarum) pigrorum..... | (rorum) of slothful.           |         |  |
| pl. 3. <i>D.</i> Pigris.....   | (ris) pigris.....     | (ris) pigris.....     | (ris) to slothful.             |         |  |
| pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Pigræ.....    | (ros) pigræ.....      | (ras) pigræ.....      | (ra) slothful.                 |         |  |
| pl. 5. <i>V.</i> Pigræ.....    | (ri) pigræ.....       | (ræ) pigræ.....       | (ra) O slothful.               |         |  |
| pl. 6. <i>Ab.</i> Pigris.....  | (ris) pigris.....     | (ris) pigris.....     | (ris) in, with, &c., slothful. |         |  |

Nine adjectives of frequent occurrence, and having the above forms of the first and second declensions, have their genitive singular in *ius*, in place of *i* and *æ*, for all the genders; and their dative singular in *i*, in place of *o* and *æ*, for all the genders. Of these, there are six in *us*: *as*, *alius*—another; *nullus*—no one; *solus*—alone; *totus*—whole; *ullus*—any; *unus*—one. There is one in *e*: *as*, *alter*—the other; and there are two in *r*: *as*, *uter*—which of the two; *neuter*—neither. Also, the compounds of *alter*, *and*, *uter*.

*Alius*—another, has *aliud* in place of *alium*, in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular neuter; and the same word, in the genitive singular, has *alius* in place of *aliius*.

The following is a specimen of the declension of these words:

| SINGULAR.                 |                  |                  |                         |  |
|---------------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Masculine.                | Feminine.        | Neuter.          |                         |  |
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Unus.....  | (us) una.....    | (a) unum.....    | (um) one.               |  |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Unius..... | (ius) unius..... | (ius) unius..... | (ius) of one.           |  |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Uni.....   | (i) uni.....     | (i) uni.....     | (i) to one.             |  |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Unum.....  | (um) unam.....   | (am) unum.....   | (um) one.               |  |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Une.....   | (e) una.....     | (a) unum.....    | (um) O one.             |  |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Uno.....   | (o) unâ.....     | (â) uno.....     | (o) in, with, &c., one. |  |

The plurals of these adjectives in *us* are declined like *bonus*, the plurals of *er* like *tener*, and the plurals of *r* like *piger*.

## Lesson 25.

<sup>m.-la.1</sup> Cæsar, cohortatus <sup>apl.4</sup> Rhemos, que-  
Cæsar, having-encouraged (the) Rhemi, | and  
prosecutus liberaliter <sup>o-omn.8</sup> oratione, (f.) \*\*  
having-followed-up liberally with-speech [and having spoken  
jussit <sup>la-la.4</sup> omnem <sup>ta.4</sup> senatum  
kindly and encouragingly to them], ordered all (their) senate  
convenire ad se, que- <sup>r.pl.4</sup> liberos  
to-assemble | to himself [in his presence], and (the) children  
<sup>ope-ipia.pl.2</sup> principum adduci <sup>ae-idia.pl.4</sup> obsides ad se; <sup>o-la.pl.1</sup> omnia  
'of (the) 'chiefs to-be-brought as hostages to him; all  
quæ diligenter facta sunt ab his ad <sup>st.4</sup> diem.  
which (things) 'were diligently 'done by them to (the) day.  
Ipse, magnoperè cohortatus <sup>a.4</sup> Divitiacum <sup>a.4</sup> Æduum,  
He, 'having greatly 'encouraged Divitiacus (the) Æduan,  
docet quantoperè intersit <sup>ei.2</sup> and <sup>a.2</sup> Reipublicæ, que-  
shows how-greatly it-concerns (the) Republic, and  
<sup>la-la.2</sup> communis <sup>ae-ita.2</sup> salutis, (f.) \*\* <sup>ta.pl.4</sup> manus (f.) \*\*  
(the) common safety, (that) (the) bands  
<sup>la-la.pl.2</sup> hostium distineri, ne sit  
'of (the) 'enemy should-be-dispersed, (that) it 'might not 'be  
configendum <sup>m.8</sup> uno <sup>ae-oris.8</sup> tempore cum <sup>8</sup> tantâ  
necessary-to-fight at-one time with so-great  
<sup>do-dia.8</sup> multitudine (f.) \*\* <sup>la-la.pl.2</sup> hostium; id posse  
(a) multitude of-enemies; (that) this might  
feri, si <sup>a.pl.1</sup> Ædui introduxerint <sup>pl.4</sup> suas <sup>pl.4</sup> copias in  
be-done, if (the) Ædui should-introduce their forces into  
<sup>la-la.pl.4</sup> fines <sup>a.pl.2</sup> Bellovacorum, et cœperint populari  
(the) territories 'of (the) 'Bellovaci, and should-begin to-ravage  
<sup>ae.pl.4</sup> agros eorum. His mandatis, dimittit  
(the) lands of-them. These (things) being-commanded, he-dismissed  
eum ab se. Postquam cognovit <sup>la-la.pl.4</sup> omnes  
him from himself. After he-knew (that) all  
<sup>pl.4</sup> copias <sup>pl.2</sup> Belgarum <sup>pl.4</sup> coactas in <sup>a.4</sup> unum <sup>a.4</sup> locum  
(the) forces 'of (the) 'Belgæ were collected in one place

venire ad se, neque jam longè  
 to-march against him, nor (that) they-<sup>1</sup> were now far  
 abesse ab his <sup>or-orig.pl.6</sup> exploratoribus, quos miserat,  
<sup>1</sup> distant from those scouts, that he-had-sent (out),  
 et ab <sup>a.pl.6</sup> Rhemis; maturavit transducere <sup>m.4</sup> exercitum  
 and from (the) Rhemi; he-hastened to-lead-over (his) army  
<sup>ac-ins.4</sup> flumen <sup>4</sup> Auxonam, quod est in <sup>pl.6</sup> extremis  
 (across) the the river Aisne, which is in the extreme  
<sup>in-ins.6</sup> finibus <sup>a.pl.3</sup> Rhemorum, atque ibi posuit  
 confines <sup>1</sup> of (the) <sup>1</sup> Rhemi, and there he-placed  
<sup>m.pl.4</sup> castra.  
 (his) camp.

### Lesson 26.

Cæsar Rhemos cohortatus, liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit: quæ omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Ædium magnoperè cohortatus, docet quantoperè Reipublicæ communisque salutis intersit, manus hostium distineri, ne cum tantâ multitudine uno tempore configendum sit; id fieri posse, si suas copias Ædii in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint, et eorum agros populari cœperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias, in unum locum coactas, ad se venire, neque jam longè abesse, ab his, quos miserat exploratoribus, et ab Rhemis cognovit; flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Rhemorum finibus, exercitum transducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit.

### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 25 AND 26.

#### *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Dies. Oratio. Liberi. Jussit. Obsides. Salus. Magnoperè. Manus. Multitudo. Hostis. Ager. Mandatum. Exercitus. Flumen. Cunctus. Cognovit. Castra. Maturavit.



*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Common. Time. Safety. Of the enemies. Hand. To be done. Fields. From. All. One. From the scouts. The river. Army. Camp. Speech. Children. Hostages. Diligently. Day.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Liberos ad se adduci jussit. Senatum convenire jussit. Reipublicæ intersit. Omnia ad diem facta sunt. Ne cum tantâ multitudine conflagendum sit. Tantâ multitudine hostium. Si Ædui eorum agros populari cœperint. His mandatis eum dimittit. Ibi castra posuit. Flumen est in extremis Rhemorum finibus. Omnes copias in unum locum coactas. Longè abesse cognovit.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

These things being ordered, he dismissed him. He knew that all the forces of the Belgæ. He pitched his camp there. He led the army across the river. He knew that they were not far distant. Whom he had sent. He shows how greatly it concerns the Republic. That it may not be necessary to fight at one time with so great a multitude. He ordered all the children to be brought as hostages to him. All which was done to the day.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three forms, namely: those having three endings in the nominative singular, those having two endings in the nominative singular, and those having only one ending in the same.

*Form of Third Declension of Adjectives, of three endings in  
Nominative Singular.*

## SINGULAR.

| Masculine.                      | Feminine.        | Neuter.                                  |
|---------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Acer..... (er)   | acris..... (ris) | acre ..... (re) sharp.                   |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Acris..... (ris) | acris..... (ris) | acris..... (ris) of sharp.               |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Acri..... (ri)   | acri ..... (ri)  | acri ..... (ri) to sharp.                |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Acrem.....(rem)  | acrem.....(rem)  | acre ..... (re) sharp.                   |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Acer..... (er)   | acris..... (ris) | acre ..... (re) O sharp.                 |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Acri..... (ri)   | acri ..... (ri)  | acri ..... (ri) in, with, &c.,<br>sharp. |

## PLURAL.

| Masculine.                           | Feminine.            | Neuter.                                       |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Acres..... (res)    | acres..... (res)     | acria..... (ria) sharp.                       |
| pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Acrum... (rium)     | acrium..... (rium)   | acrium ..... (rium) of sharp.                 |
| pl. 3. <i>D.</i> Acribus... (ribus)  | acribus..... (ribus) | acribus..... (ribus) to sharp.                |
| pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Acres..... (res)    | acres..... (res)     | acria..... (ria) sharp.                       |
| pl. 5. <i>V.</i> Acres..... (res)    | acres..... (res)     | acria..... (ria) O sharp.                     |
| pl. 6. <i>Ab.</i> Acribus... (ribus) | acribus..... (ribus) | acribus..... (ribus) in, with, &c.,<br>sharp. |

It is here to be observed, that the ablative singular, for all the genders, ends in *i* alone; the genitive plural, for all the genders, in *ium*; and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter, in *ia*.

## Lesson 27.

|                            |                                                   |                                                      |                                                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| m. <sup>1</sup> Oppidum    | a.pl. <sup>2</sup> Rhemorum,                      | x-cis. <sup>1</sup> Bibrax                           | en-inis. <sup>6</sup> nomine,                       |
| A town                     | 'of (the) 'Rhemi,                                 | Bibrax                                               | by-name,                                            |
| aberat octo millia         | en-pl. <sup>2</sup> passuum                       | ab m-pl. <sup>6</sup> castris ipsis;                 |                                                     |
| was-distant eight thousand | paces from                                        | (the) camp itself;                                   |                                                     |
| pl. <sup>1</sup> Belgæ     | cœperunt oppugnare id                             | a. <sup>6</sup> magno a. <sup>6</sup> impetu         |                                                     |
| (the) Belgæ                | began to-assault it                               | with-great violence                                  |                                                     |
| ex                         | en-inis. <sup>6</sup> itinere; (n.) <sup>••</sup> | ægrè sustentatum est                                 |                                                     |
| on (their)                 | march; (the assault) 'was difficultly             | 'sustained                                           |                                                     |
| eo                         | cl. <sup>6</sup> die. (m.) <sup>••</sup>          | lo-ionis. <sup>1</sup> Oppugnatio (f.) <sup>••</sup> | a-pl. <sup>2</sup> Gallorum                         |
| on-that day.               | (The) attack                                      | 'of (the) 'Gauls                                     |                                                     |
| atque                      | pl. <sup>2</sup> Belgarum est eadem.              | Ubi,                                                 | o-inis. <sup>6</sup> multitudine (f.) <sup>••</sup> |
| and 'of (the) 'Belgæ       | is (the) same. When,                              | a multitude                                          |                                                     |

o-inia.pl.<sup>2</sup> hominum circumjectâ a-pl.<sup>3</sup> totis pl.in.iun.<sup>3</sup> mœnibus,  
 of-men being-thrown-round (the) whole wall,  
 is-idia.pl.<sup>1</sup> lapides (m.)<sup>\*\*</sup> coepti sunt jaci in a-<sup>4</sup> murum  
 stones were-begun to-be-thrown against (the) wall  
 undique, que a-<sup>1</sup> murus nudatus est or-oris.pl.<sup>6</sup> defensoribus,  
 on-all-sides, and (the) wall was-stripped of-defenders,  
 o-inia.<sup>6</sup> testudine (f.)<sup>\*\*</sup> factâ,  
 (a) testudo being made, (by the men placing their shields  
 hi succedunt pl.<sup>3</sup> portis, que  
 over their heads), these [the Belgæ] approach the gates, and  
 subruunt a-<sup>4</sup> murum. Quod tum facile fiebat; nam  
 undermine (the) wall. Which 'was then easily 'done; for  
 tanta o-onis.<sup>1</sup> multitudo (f.)<sup>\*\*</sup> coniciebant is-idia.pl.<sup>4</sup> lapides (m.)<sup>\*\*</sup>  
 so-great (a) multitude did-throw stones  
 ac m-pl.<sup>4</sup> tela, ut as-asia.<sup>1</sup> potestas consistendi in a-<sup>6</sup> muro esset  
 and darts, | that (the) power of-standing on (the) wall was  
 a-<sup>3</sup> nulli. Quum x-cis.<sup>1</sup> nox  
 to-none [that no one could stand on the wall]. When night  
 fecisset is-is.<sup>4</sup> finem oppugnandi, a-<sup>1</sup> Iccius a-<sup>1</sup> Rhemus  
 had-made (an) end of-assaulting, Iccius (the) Rhemian  
 summâ as-asia.<sup>6</sup> nobilitate et gratiâ, inter a-pl.<sup>4</sup> suos,  
 of-the-highest nobility and favor, among his (people),  
 qui tum præerat m-<sup>3</sup> oppido; a-<sup>1</sup> unus ex iis, qui venerant  
 who then commanded (the) town; one of those, who had-come  
 ad r-ris.<sup>4</sup> Cæsarem a-pl.<sup>1</sup> legati de x-cis.<sup>6</sup> pace, mittit  
 to Cæsar (as) ambassadors about peace, sends  
 a-pl.<sup>4</sup> nuntios ad eum, "se non posse sustinere  
 messengers to him, "(that) he 'was not 'able to sustain  
 diutius, nisi m-<sup>4</sup> subsidium mittatur sibi."  
 (the assault) longer, unless a subsidy is sent to-him."

## Lesson 28.

Ab ipsis castris oppidum Rhemorum, nomine, Bibrax, aberat millia passuum octo: id ex itinere, magno impetu, Belgæ oppugnare cœperunt; ægrè eo die sustentatum est; Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est. Hi, ubi circumjectâ multitudine hominum totis mœnibus, undique in murum lapides jaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus nu-

datus est; testudine factâ, portis succedunt, murumque subruunt. Quod tum facîle fiebat: nam tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjiciebant, ut in muro consistendi potestas esset nulli. Quum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Icius Rhemus; summâ nobilitate et gratiâ inter suos, qui tum oppido præerat, unus ex iis, qui legati de pace ad Cæsarem venerant, nuncios ad eum mittit, "nisi subsidium sibi mitatur, se diutiùs sustinere non posse."

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 27 AND 28.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Nox. Nobilitas. Nuncius. Diutiùs. Oppidum. Multitudo. Facile. Lapis. Murus. Potestas. Fiebat. Finis. Nomen. Impetus. Oppugnatio. Est. Atque.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

In the camp. He sends. Was distant. Road. Day. A pace. They began. The attack. An end. Night. Who. One. Peace. Longer. Easily. Stones. The wall. Power. Men. A stone. A gate.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Oppidum nomine Bibrax. Ægrè sustentatum est. Ex itinere oppugnare cœperunt. Hi in murum lapides jaci cœpti sunt. Portis succedunt. Se diutiùs sustinere non posse. Icius oppido præerat. Nuncios ad eum mittit. Finem nox fecit. Potestas esset nulli. Quod facîle fiebat. Unus ex iis, qui legati ad Cæsarem venerant.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

One of those who had come to Cæsar. That he was not able to sustain the assault longer. He sends a messenger to him. The town Bibrax was distant eight thousand paces. They began to attack it with great violence. A multitude of men. Stones were begun to be thrown. The wall was

stripped of defenders. Which was easily done. They threw stones and darts. No one could stand on the wall. Night made an end of the assault.

*Form of the Third Declension of Adjectives, of two terminations in Nominative Singular.*

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine and Feminine.

## Neuter.

- |                            |      |       |       |      |                      |
|----------------------------|------|-------|-------|------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom. Mitis</i> ..... | (is) | mite  | ..... | (e)  | mild.                |
| 2. <i>Gen. Mitis</i> ..... | (is) | mitis | ..... | (is) | of mild.             |
| 3. <i>Dat. Mitī</i> .....  | (i)  | mitī  | ..... | (i)  | to mild.             |
| 4. <i>Acc. Mitē</i> .....  | (em) | mitē  | ..... | (e)  | mild.                |
| 5. <i>Voc. Mitis</i> ..... | (is) | mite  | ..... | (e)  | O mild.              |
| 6. <i>Abl. Mitī</i> .....  | (i)  | mitī  | ..... | (i)  | in, with, &c., mild. |

## PLURAL.

## Masculine and Feminine.

## Neuter.

- |                                  |        |         |       |        |                      |
|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------|--------|----------------------|
| pl. 1. <i>N. Mites</i> .....     | (es)   | mitia   | ..... | (ia)   | mild.                |
| pl. 2. <i>G. Mitium</i> .....    | (ium)  | mitium  | ..... | (ium)  | of mild.             |
| pl. 3. <i>D. Mitibus</i> .....   | (ibus) | mitibus | ..... | (ibus) | to mild.             |
| pl. 4. <i>A. Mites</i> .....     | (es)   | mitia   | ..... | (ia)   | mild.                |
| pl. 5. <i>V. Mites</i> .....     | (es)   | mitia   | ..... | (ia)   | O mild.              |
| pl. 6. <i>Abl. Mitibus</i> ..... | (ibus) | mitibus | ..... | (ibus) | in, with, &c., mild. |

Adjectives of this form have their masculine and feminine alike in the nominative and vocative singular, and end in *is*; the nominative singular of the neuter gender ends in *e*. In all the other cases, this form exactly resembles the form of three terminations in the nominative singular.

Comparatives have also two terminations in the nominative singular, but differ from the above form. Their masculine and feminine end in *or*, in the nominative singular; and their neuter, in the same case, in *us*. They are thus declined:

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine and Feminine.

## Neuter.

- |                                 |            |                  |            |        |                        |
|---------------------------------|------------|------------------|------------|--------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom. Mitior</i> .....     | (or)       | mitius           | .....      | (us)   | milder.                |
| 2. <i>Gen. Mitioris</i> .....   | (oris)     | mitioris         | .....      | (oris) | of milder.             |
| 3. <i>Dat. Mitiori</i> .....    | (ori)      | mitiori          | .....      | (ori)  | to milder.             |
| 4. <i>Acc. Mitio rem</i> .....  | (orem)     | mitius           | .....      | (us)   | milder.                |
| 5. <i>Voc. Mitior</i> .....     | (or)       | mitius           | .....      | (us)   | O milder.              |
| 6. <i>Abl. Mitiorē or ri...</i> | (re or ri) | mitiorē or ri... | (re or ri) |        | in, with, &c., milder. |

## PLURAL.

## Masculine and Feminine.

## Neuter.

- pl. 1. *N.* Mitiores..... (ores) mitiora..... (ora) milder.  
 pl. 2. *G.* Mitiorum.....(orum) mitiorum.....(orum) of milder.  
 pl. 3. *D.* Mitioribus ....(oribus) mitioribus.....(oribus) to milder.  
 pl. 4. *A.* Mitiores..... (ores) mitiora..... (ora) milder.  
 pl. 5. *V.* Mitiores..... (ores) mitiora..... (ora) O milder.  
 pl. 6. *Ab.* Mitioribus ....(oribus) mitioribus.....(oribus) in, with, &c., milder.

This comparative form differs from the form of three terminations, and from the general form above of two terminations, in having *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, in place of *i* only; and of having *um*, in place of *ium*, in the genitive plural; and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter, *a*, in place of *ia*.

## Lesson 29.

<sup>r-rh.1</sup> Caesar <sup>at-first</sup> primò <sup>resolved</sup> statuit <sup>to-forego</sup> supersedere <sup>m.6</sup> praelio, et  
 Caesar at-first resolved to-forego battle, both  
 propter <sup>o-inia.4</sup> multitudinem (*f.*)\*\* <sup>is-in.pl.3</sup> hostium, et  
 on-account-of (the) multitude 'of (the) 'enemy, and  
 propter <sup>4</sup> eximiam <sup>o-oinia.4</sup> opinionem (*f.*)\*\*  
 on-account-of (their) eminent reputation  
<sup>u-utia.2</sup> virtutis; (*f.*)\*\* tamen <sup>quotidiè</sup> periclitabatur  
 for-valor; however he-'did daily 'try  
<sup>is-in.pl.6</sup> equestribus <sup>m.pl.6</sup> proeliis, quid <sup>is-in.1</sup> hostis posset  
 by cavalry battles, what (the) enemy could-do  
<sup>u-utia.6</sup> virtute, (*f.*)\*\* et quid <sup>or.pl.1</sup> nostri  
 'by (their) 'bravery, and what our (men)  
 audent. Ubi intellexit <sup>or.pl.4</sup> nostros esse  
 might-dare (to do). When he-understood (that) our (men) were  
 non <sup>or-oria.pl.1</sup> inferiores, <sup>a.6</sup> loco pro <sup>m.pl.6</sup> castris  
 not inferior, (the) place before (the) camp (being)  
<sup>a.6</sup> opportuno, atque <sup>a.6</sup> idoneo <sup>a.6</sup> naturâ, ad <sup>si.4</sup> aciem  
 opportune, and fit by-nature, | to (the) line (of battle)  
 instruendam;  
 to-be-drawn-up [for forming a line of battle]; quòd is  
 because that  
<sup>is-in.1</sup> collis, (*m.*)\*\* ubi <sup>m.pl.1</sup> castra posita erant, editus  
 hill, where (the) camp had-been-placed, being-raised

paululùm ex <sup>ol.6</sup> planitie patebat in <sup>o-inis.4</sup> latitudinem (f.)\*\*  
 (a) little from (the) plain extended in breadth  
 adversùs, tantum <sup>a.2</sup> loci, quantum  
 towards (the enemy), | so-much of-place [so much in space], as  
<sup>ol.1</sup> acies <sup>1</sup> instructa poterat occupare, atque  
 (our) line (of battle) drawn-up was-able to-occupy, and  
 habebat <sup>a.pl.4</sup> dejectus <sup>m-eris.2</sup> lateris ex <sup>6</sup> utrâque  
 it-had abrupt-descents 'on (the) 'flanks from either  
<sup>a-tis.6</sup> parte, et leniter <sup>a.1</sup> fastigiatus in <sup>a-tis.6</sup> fronte, paulatim  
 part, and gently sloped on (the) front, gradually  
 redibat ad <sup>ol.4</sup> planitiem; ab utroque <sup>m-eris.6</sup> latere ejus  
 returned to (the) plain; from each side of-that  
<sup>is-is.2</sup> collis (m.)\*\* obduxit <sup>4</sup> transversam <sup>4</sup> fossam,  
 hill 'he [Cæsar] 'led-over a transverse trench,  
 circiter <sup>a.pl.2</sup> quadringentorum <sup>is-pl.2</sup> passuum, et ad <sup>pl.4</sup> extremas  
 about four-hundred paces, and at (the) extreme  
<sup>pl.4</sup> fossas constituit <sup>m-pl.4</sup> castella, quæ ibi  
 (ends of) (the) trenches he-constructed castles, and there  
 collocavit <sup>m-pl.4</sup> tormenta; ne, quum  
 he-placed engines-for-throwing-stones; lest, when  
 instruxisset <sup>ol.4</sup> aciem, <sup>is-is-pl.1</sup> hostes, (quòd poterant  
 he-had-drawn-up (his) line, (the) enemy, (because they-might-do  
 tantum <sup>o-inis.6</sup> multitudine, (f.)\*\* possent, à  
 so-much 'by (their) 'multitude, might-be-able, on  
<sup>m-eris-pl.6</sup> lateribus, circumvenire <sup>a-pl.4</sup> suos pugnantes.  
 (the) flanks, to-surround his (men) fighting.

## Lesson 30.

Cæsar primò, et propter multitudinem hostium, et propter  
 eximiam opinionem virtutis, prælio supersedere statuit; quo-  
 tidie tamen equestribus præliis, quid hostis virtute posset, et  
 quid nostri auderent, periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse  
 inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris, ad aciem instruendam  
 naturâ opportuno atque idoneo, quòd is collis, ubi castra  
 posita erant, paululùm ex planitie editus, tantum adversùs  
 in latitudinem patebat, quantum loci acies instructa occupare  
 poterat, atque ex utrâque parte lateris dejectus habebat, et in  
 fronte leniter fastigiatus, paulatim ad planitiem redibat; ab

utroque latere ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum; et ad extremas fossas castella constituit, ibique tormenta collocavit; ne, quum aciem instruxisset, hostes (quòd tantum multitudine poterant) à lateribus suos pugnantes circumvenire possent.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 29 AND 30.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Ubi. Inferiores. Propter. Prœlium. Equestris. Intellexit. Acies. Idoneus. Planities. Collis. Locus. Latus. Hostis. Collocavit. Castella. Tormenta. Pugnantes.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Engines for throwing stones. He determined. On the flanks. Enemy. In battle. Valor. Paces. A trench. Side. Part. In the place. In the camp. Line of battle. Hill. The plain.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Primò prælio supersedere statuit. Quid hostes auderent. Ad extremas fossas castella constituit. Quod multitudine poterant. Hostes suos circumvenire possent. Ubi intellexit. Loco idoneo. Is collis paululùm ex planitie editus. Tantum in latitudinem patebat. Ab utroque latere fossam obduxit. Acies instructa. Leniter fastigiatus. Ab latere ejus collis.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

What the enemy could do by their courage. Daily in cavalry battles. On account of the reputation of their valor. On account of the multitude of the enemy he determined to forego battle. He erected castles at the extreme ends of the trench. From each side of the hill. It had abrupt sides. The hill where the camp was placed. Fit for a line of battle.



That our men were not inferior. When he had formed the line of battle. Lest the enemy might be able to surround his men.

*Form of Adjectives of the Third Declension, with one termination in Nominative Singular.*

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine and Feminine.

## Neuter.

1. *Nom.* Felix..... (x) felix..... (x) happy.
2. *Gen.* Felicis..... (cis) felicis..... (cis) of happy.
3. *Dat.* Felici..... (ci) felici..... (ci) to happy.
4. *Acc.* Felicem..... (cem) felix..... (x) happy.
5. *Voc.* Felix..... (x) felix..... (x) O happy.
6. *Ab.* Felice or ci.....(ce or ci) felice or ci.....(ce or ci) in, with, &c., happy.

## PLURAL.

## Masculine and Feminine.

## Neuter.

- pl. 1. *N.* Felices..... (ces) felicia..... (cia) happy.
- pl. 2. *G.* Felicium.....(cium) felicium.....(cium) of happy.
- pl. 3. *D.* Felicibus.....(cibus) felicibus.....(cibus) to happy.
- pl. 4. *A.* Felices..... (ces) felicia..... (cia) happy.
- pl. 5. *V.* Felices..... (ces) felicia..... (cia) O happy.
- pl. 6. *Ab.* Felicibus.....(cibus) felicibus.....(cibus) in, with, &c., happy.

In like manner are declined present participles, and adjectives in *ens*.

## Lesson 31.

<sup>m-adn.1</sup> Palus (f.)\*\* non maga erat inter <sup>m.4</sup> nostrum  
 (A) marsh not great was between our (men)  
 atque <sup>m.4</sup> exercitum <sup>m-pl.2</sup> hostium; <sup>m-pl.1</sup> hostes expectabant  
 and (the) army 'of (the) enemy; (the) 'enemy waited,  
 si <sup>m-pl.1</sup> nostri transirent hanc; autem  
 (to see) if our (men) would-pass-over this (marsh); but  
<sup>m-pl.1</sup> nostri erant parati in <sup>m-pl.2</sup> armis, ut, si <sup>m.1</sup> initium  
 our (men) were prepared in arms, that, if (a) beginning  
 transeundi fieret ab illis,  
 of-crossing-over (the marsh) should-be-made by them,  
 aggredierentur <sup>m-pl.4</sup> impeditos. Interim  
 'they [his men] 'might-attack (them) encumbered. In-the-mean-time

contendebatur <sup>h-h.s</sup>equestri <sup>m.s</sup>prælio inter <sup>pl.4</sup>duas  
 | it-was-contended 'by (a) 'cavalry battle between (the) two

<sup>si.pl.4</sup>acies.

lines [a cavalry engagement took place between the two armies].

Ubi <sup>ex.pl.1</sup>neutri faciunt <sup>m.4</sup>initium transeundi,  
 When neither make (a) beginning of-crossing-over (the marsh),

<sup>m.s</sup>prælio <sup>ex.pl.2</sup>nostrorum <sup>ex-ha.pl.2</sup>equitum  
 | (the) battle of-our horsemen (being the)

<sup>ex-cri.2</sup>secundiore,

more-successful [our cavalry having the advantage in the contest],

<sup>r-ri.1</sup>Cæsar reduxit <sup>a.pl.4</sup>suos in <sup>m.pl.4</sup>castra. <sup>h-h.pl.1</sup>Hostes  
 Cæsar led-back his (men) to (the) camp. (The) enemy

protinus contenderunt ex eo <sup>a.s</sup>loco ad <sup>ex-ha.4</sup>flumen  
 immediately hastened from that place to the river

<sup>4</sup>Axonam, quod demonstratum est esse post <sup>m.pl.4</sup>nostra  
 Aisne, which has-been-shown to-be behind our

<sup>m.pl.4</sup>castra; ibi, <sup>m.pl.2</sup>vadis <sup>m.pl.2</sup>repertis, conati sunt  
 camp; there, fords being-found, they-endeavored

transducere <sup>m-ri.4</sup>partem <sup>pl.2</sup>suarum <sup>pl.2</sup>copiarum eo  
 to-lead-over (a) part of-their forces with-that

<sup>m.s</sup>consilio, ut, si possent, expugnarent <sup>m.4</sup>castellum,  
 design, that, if they-could, they-would-storm (the) castle,

cui Q. Titurius <sup>a.1</sup>legatus præerat  
 | to-which Q. Titurius (the) lieutenant was-over [which Q. Titurius

the lieutenant commanded] <sup>que</sup>and <sup>intercinderent</sup>would-cut-down

<sup>m-ntia</sup>pontem; (m.)\*\* <sup>sin</sup>minùs, <sup>popularentur</sup>ex.pl.4 agros  
 (the) bridge; or at-least, would-ravage (the) fields

<sup>a.pl.2</sup>Rhemorum, qui erant <sup>a.s</sup>magno <sup>h-h.2</sup>usui nobis ad  
 'of (the) 'Rhemi, which were (of) great use to-us for

<sup>m.4</sup>bellum gerendum, <sup>que</sup>sustinebant <sup>ex.pl.4</sup>nostros  
 (the) war to-be-carried-on, and supplied our

<sup>h-h.pl.4</sup>commeatus.

(men with) provisions.

### Lesson 32.

Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum: hanc si nostri transirent, hostes expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos

aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim prœlio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum nostrorum prœlio, Cæsar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est; ibi vadis repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui præerat Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscinderent; sin minus, agros Rhemorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatusque nostros sustinebant.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 31 AND 32.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Legatus. Pons. Ager. Magnus. Usus. Commeatus. Bellum. Qui. Prœlium. Eques. Reduxit. Secundior. Flumen. Vadum. Pars. Consilium. Exercitus. Hostis. Initium. Interim. Palus. Inter.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

In the battle. Horsemen. The enemy. River. Place. Fords. A part. Forces. Castle. The army. Prepared. A beginning. Battle. When. Marsh. Great. Bridge. Fields. Use. Provisions.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Prœlio equestri contendebatur. Nostri parati in armis erant. Palus erat inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Ut hostes impeditos aggrederentur. Nostri transeundi initium faciunt. Exercitum in castra reduxit. Hostes ad flumen contenderunt. Ibi partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt. Castellum cui præerat legatus. Qui magno nobis usui erant.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Or at least would ravage the fields. Which were of use for carrying on the war. Our cavalry having the advantage. He led back his men to the camp. The enemy hastened from that place to the river. Fords being found there. With the design, that they would storm the castle. They endeavored to lead over a part of their forces. Between our army and the army of the enemy. Our men were prepared. A cavalry engagement took place between the two armies. If a beginning of crossing over should be made by them.

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison, the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*: as, positive, *mitis*—*mild*; comparative, *mitior*—*milder*; superlative, *mitissimus*—*mildest*.

It is in the positive form, nominative singular masculine, that an adjective is to be looked for in the dictionary.

The positive is declined according to the different forms given above.

The comparative is regularly formed, for adjectives declined according to the first and second declensions, by adding *or* to the genitive masculine singular of the positive: as, positive, *altus*—*high*, Gen. mas. *alti*—*of high*; comparative, *altior*—*higher*; and for adjectives declined according to the third declension, by changing the *s* of the genitive singular masculine positive into *or*: as, positive, *mitis*—*mild*, Gen. *mitis*—*of mild*; comparative, *mitior*—*milder*; or, positive, *felix*—*happy*, Gen. *felicis*—*of happy*; comparative, *felicior*—*more happy*. The comparatives are declined like *mitior*—*milder*, as given above.

The superlative is regularly formed, for adjectives declined according to the first and second declensions, by adding *issimus* to the genitive masculine singular of the positive: as, positive, *altus*—*high*, Gen. *alti*—*of high*; superlative, *altis-*

*simus*—highest; and for adjectives declined according to the third declension, by changing the *s* of the genitive singular masculine or feminine into *ssimus*: as, positive, *mitis*—mild, Gen. *mitis*—of mild; superlative, *mitissimus*—mildest. The superlatives are declined according to the first and second declensions, like *bonus*—good, as above.

All adjectives in *er*, as well those of the first and second declensions, as those of the third declension, form their superlatives by adding *rimus* to the nominative singular masculine: as, *tener*—tender; superlative, *tenerrimus*—most tender; *acer*—sharp; superlative, *acerrimus*—sharpest; but their comparatives are formed in the general manner, as above.

Some adjectives, ending in *ilis*, form their superlatives by substituting *limus*, in place of *is*: as, *facilis*—easy; superlative, *facillimus*—easiest.

Some adjectives, ending in *icus*, as *beneficus*—beneficent, form their comparatives by changing *us* into *entior*: as, *beneficentior*—more beneficent; and their superlatives by changing *us* into *entissimus*: as, *beneficentissimus*—most beneficent.

Some few adjectives are regular in the comparative, but irregular in the superlative, or have even double irregular superlatives: as,

*Dexter*—right; *dexterior*; *dextimus*.

*Extera*—outward; *exterior*; *extimus* or *extremus*.

*Postera*—hind; *posterior*; *postremus* or *postumus*—hindmost.

*Inferus*—low; *inferior*; *infinus* or *imus*.

*Superus*—high; *superior*; *supremus* or *summus*.

Some adjectives are altogether irregular in their comparisons: as,

*Bonus*—good; *melior*—better; *optimus*—best.

*Malus*—bad; *pejor*—worse; *pessimus*—worst.

*Magnus*—great; *major*—greater; *maximus*—greatest.

*Parvus*—little; *minor*—less; *minimus*—least.

*Multus*—much; (*plus*)—more; *plurimus*—most.

It will not generally be necessary to designate the positive, but, when required, the comparative may be designated by a *c*, placed after the word between parentheses, and the superlative by an *s*, placed in like manner: as, *mitior* (*c.*); *mitissimus* (*s.*). When the comparison is irregular, the positive may sometimes be placed before the *c* or the *s*, in parentheses: as, *melior* (*bonus, c.*); *maximus* (*magnus, s.*).

## Lesson 33.

<sup>pr-1</sup> Cæsar <sup>factus</sup> <sup>certior</sup> (*c.*)<sup>••</sup> <sup>h</sup>  
 Cæsar | having-been-made more-sure [being informed] by  
<sup>as</sup> Titurio, <sup>transducit</sup> <sup>m-tin-4</sup> pontem (*m.*)<sup>••</sup> <sup>is-is-4</sup> omnem  
 Titurius, leads-over (the) bridge all  
<sup>is-4</sup> equitatum et <sup>pl-4</sup> Numidas <sup>is-is-3</sup> levis <sup>2</sup> armaturæ,  
 (the) cavalry and (the) Numidians of-light armor,  
<sup>or-oris-pl-4</sup> funditores que <sup>pl-4</sup> sagittarios, atque contendit  
 (the) slingers and (the) archers, and hastens  
 ad eos. Pugnatum est acriter in eo <sup>as</sup> loco; <sup>or-pl-1</sup> nostri  
 to them. It-was-fought sharply in that place; our  
 aggressi <sup>is-is-pl-4</sup> hostes, <sup>pl-4</sup> impeditos in  
 (men) having-attacked (the) enemy, entangled in  
<sup>or-is-is-6</sup> flumine, occiderunt <sup>as</sup> magnum <sup>as</sup> numerum eorum:  
 (the) river, slew (a) great number of-them:  
 repulerunt <sup>de-din-6</sup> multitudine (*f.*)<sup>••</sup> <sup>m-pl-3</sup> telorum  
 'they [our men] 'repulsed 'with (a) 'multitude of-darts  
<sup>pl-4</sup> reliquos <sup>m-ntis-pl-4</sup> conantes  
 (and other weapons) (the) remainder (of the enemy) endeavoring  
 audacissimè transire per <sup>m-oris-pl-4</sup> corpora eorum;  
 most-boldly to-cross-over | on (the) bodies of-them [on  
 interfecerunt <sup>pl-4</sup> primos,  
 the bodies of their own men]; 'they [our men] 'killed (the) first,  
 qui transierant <sup>pl-4</sup> circumventos <sup>is-6</sup> equitatu. Ubi  
 who had-passed surrounded 'by (the) 'cavalry. When  
<sup>is-is-pl-1</sup> hostes intellexerunt <sup>is-4</sup> spem fefelisse se, et  
 (the) enemy understood (that) hope had-deceived them, both  
 de <sup>m-6</sup> oppido expugnando, et de  
 as-respects the town (intended) to-be-stormed, and as-respects

<sup>m.-in.4</sup> flumine transeundo, neque viderunt  
 (the) river (intended) to-be-crossed-over, nor saw-they  
<sup>cr.pl.4</sup> nostros progredi in <sup>m.-in.4</sup> iniquiorem (c.) \*\*  
 our (men) to-advance into (a) more-disadvantageous  
<sup>a.4</sup> locum, <sup>6</sup> causâ pugnandi, atque <sup>1</sup> frumentaria  
 place, <sup>1</sup> for (the) <sup>1</sup> purpose of-fighting, and | corn  
<sup>si.1</sup> res cœpit deficere ipsos; <sup>m.5</sup> concilio  
 thing [provisions] began to-fail them; (a) council  
<sup>m.5</sup> convocato, constituerunt esse  
 being-called, they-resolved (that) it-was  
<sup>m.1</sup> optimum (*bonus, s.*) \*\* quemque reverti <sup>4</sup> suam  
 best (for) every-one to-return (to) his  
<sup>a.4</sup> domum, (*f.*) \*\* et convenire undique ad eos  
 home, and to-assemble from-all-sides to those  
 defendendos, in <sup>in.-pl.4</sup> fines  
 (whom it was necessary) to-be-defended, (and) into (the) territories  
 quorum <sup>a.pl.1</sup> Romani primûm introduxissent  
 of-whom (the) Romans <sup>1</sup> might first <sup>1</sup> have-led  
<sup>m.4</sup> exercitum; ut potius decertarent,  
 (an) army; so-that they-<sup>1</sup> might rather <sup>1</sup> contend (with them),  
 in suis, quàm <sup>a.pl.5</sup> alienis <sup>in.-pl.5</sup> finibus,  
 | in their-own, than in-others borders [in their own coun-  
 et uterentur <sup>pl.5</sup> domesticis  
 try, than in that of others], and might-use (their) domestic  
<sup>pl.5</sup> copiis <sup>2</sup> frumentariæ <sup>si.2</sup> rei. Quoque hæc <sup>o-onis.1</sup> ratio (*f.*) \*\*  
 supplies of provisions. Also this reason  
 cum <sup>pl.5</sup> reliquis <sup>pl.5</sup> causis deduxit eos ad eam <sup>4</sup> sententiam,  
 with (the) remaining motives led them to that determination,  
 quòd cognoverant, <sup>a.4</sup> Divitiacum atque <sup>a.pl.4</sup> Æduos  
 because they-knew, (that) Divitiacus and (the) Ædui  
 appropinquare <sup>in.-pl.5</sup> finibus <sup>a.pl.5</sup> Bellovacorum.  
 were-approaching to-the-territories <sup>1</sup> of (the) <sup>1</sup> Bellovasi. | It-<sup>1</sup> was  
 non poterat persuaderi his, ut morarentur  
 not <sup>1</sup> able to-be-persuaded to-these, that they-should-delay  
 diutius, neque  
 longer [they could not be persuaded to remain longer], | nor  
 ferrent <sup>m.4</sup> auxilium <sup>a.pl.5</sup> suis.  
 should bring [from bringing] assistance to-their (countrymen).

## Lesson 34.

Cæsar certior factus à Titurio, omnem equitatum, et levis armaturæ Numidas, funditores, sagittariosque pontem transducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est; hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt: per eorum corpora reliquos audacissimè transire conantes, multitudine telorum repulerunt: primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido, et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causâ viderunt, atque eos res frumentaria deficere cœpit; concilio convocato, constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti; et quorum in fines primùm Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenire; ut potiùs in suis, quàm alienis finibus decertarent; et domesticis copiis rei frumentariæ uterentur. Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, hæc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quòd Divitiacum atque Æduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant; his persuaderi, ut diutiùs morarentur, neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 33 AND 34.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Locus. Corpus. Transire. Telum. Primus. Equitatus. Omnis. Pons. Oppidum. Flumen. Spes. Nostri. Causa. Res. Cœpit. Optimum. Finis. Domus. Exercitus. Potiùs. Auxilium. Diutiùs. Ratio. Cognoverant.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Longer. Assistance. First. Army. Rather. Than. Supplies. Reason. Led. Hope. Town. River. More. Disadvantageous. Thing. Place. They resolved. Best. House. Archers. The enemy. Great. Slew. The re-



mainder. Number. Most boldly. Bodies. Cavalry.  
When. Bridge. Slingers.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Acriter pugnatum est. Cæsar ad eos contendit. Nostri magnum numerum occiderunt. Reliquos multitudine telorum repulerunt. Hostes ubi intellexerunt. In locum progredi pugnandi causâ. Constituerunt optimum esse domum reverti. Ad eos defendendos convenire. Ad eam sententiam hæc ratio eos deduxit. Quod Divitiacum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi non poterat.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

That they should delay longer. Into whose territories the Romans might have led an army. So that they might rather contend with them in their own country, than in that of others. This reason led them to that determination. They knew that Divitiacus was approaching. They understood that hope had deceived them. They saw our men advance into a more disadvantageous place. Provisions began to fail them. They resolved that it was best to return home. It was sharply fought in that place. Our men slew a great number of them. To cross over on the bodies of their own men. Cæsar being informed. He leads all the cavalry over the bridge.

NUMERALS.

| Cardinals. |                                        | Ordinals.                       |         |
|------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------|
| I.         | 1. Unus, one.....                      | Primus, first.                  |         |
| II.        | 2. Duo, two.....                       | Secundus, second.               |         |
| III.       | 3. Tres, three.....                    | Tertius, third.                 | [rest.] |
| IV.        | 4. Quatuor, four (and so for the rest) | Quartus, fourth (and so for the |         |
| V.         | 5. Quinque .....                       | Quintus.                        |         |
| VI.        | 6. Sex .....                           | Sextus.                         |         |
| VII.       | 7. Septem.....                         | Septimus.                       |         |
| VIII.      | 8. Octo.....                           | Octavus.                        |         |
| IX.        | 9. Novem .....                         | Nonus.                          |         |
| X.         | 10. Decem.....                         | Decimus.                        |         |

|        | Cardinals.                                    | Ordinals.                 |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| XI.    | 11. Undecim.....                              | Undecimus.                |
| XII.   | 12. Duodecim.....                             | Duodecimus.               |
| XIII.  | 13. Tredecim.....                             | Tertius decimus.          |
| XIV.   | 14. Quatuordecim.....                         | Quartus decimus.          |
| XV.    | 15. Quindecim.....                            | Quintus decimus.          |
| XVI.   | 16. Sedecim or sexdecim.....                  | Sextus decimus.           |
| XVII.  | 17. Septendecim.....                          | Septimus decimus.         |
| XVIII. | 18. Octodecim.....                            | Octavus decimus.          |
| XIX.   | 19. Novendecim or novemdecim                  | Nonus decimus.            |
| XX.    | 20. Viginti.....                              | Vicesimus or vigesimus.   |
| XXI.   | 21. Viginti unus or unus et vi-<br>ginti..... | Vicesimus primus.         |
| XXII.  | 22. Viginti duo or duo et viginti             | Vicesimus secundus.       |
| XXX.   | 30. Triginta.....                             | Tricesimus or trigesimus. |
| XL.    | 40. Quadraginta.....                          | Quadragesimus.            |
| L.     | 50. Quinquaginta.....                         | Quinquagesimus.           |
| LX.    | 60. Sexaginta.....                            | Sexagesimus.              |
| LXX.   | 70. Septuaginta.....                          | Septuagesimus.            |
| LXXX.  | 80. Octoginta.....                            | Octogesimus.              |
| XC.    | 90. Nonaginta.....                            | Nonagesimus.              |
| C.     | 100. Centum.....                              | Centesimus.               |
| CI.    | 101. Centum unus or centum et<br>unus.....    | Centesimus primus.        |
| CC.    | 200. Ducenti, æ, a.....                       | Ducentesimus.             |
| CCC.   | 300. Trecenti, æ, a.....                      | Trecentesimus.            |
| CD.    | 400. Quadringenti, æ, a.....                  | Quadragesimus.            |
| D.     | 500. Quingenti, æ, a.....                     | Quingentesimus.           |
| DC.    | 600. Sexcenti, æ, a.....                      | Sexcentesimus.            |
| DCC.   | 700. Septingenti, æ, a.....                   | Septingentesimus.         |
| DCCC.  | 800. Octingenti, æ, a.....                    | Octingentesimus.          |
| DCCCC. | 900. Nongenti, æ, a.....                      | Nongentesimus.            |
| M.     | 1000. Mille.....                              | Millesimus.               |

All the ordinal numbers are declined like *bonus, bona, bonum*.

Some of the cardinal numbers are declined, others are not. *Unus*—one is declined, as above denoted, under the head of adjectives declined according to the first and second declensions.

*Duo*—two is thus declined :

Gift of The People of the United States  
Through the Victory Book Campaign  
(A. L. A. — A. R. C. — U. S. O.)  
To the Armed Forces and Merchant Marine

## PLURAL.

| Masculine.                                                                                   | Feminine. | Neuter. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------|
| pl. 1. <i>N. Duo</i> ..... (o) <i>duo</i> ..... (æ) <i>duo</i> ..... (o).                    |           |         |
| pl. 2. <i>G. Duorum</i> .....(orum) <i>duarum</i> .....(arum) <i>duorum</i> .....(orum).     |           |         |
| pl. 3. <i>D. Duobus</i> ..... (obus) <i>duabus</i> ..... (abus) <i>duobus</i> ..... (obus).  |           |         |
| pl. 4. <i>A. Duos or duo</i> .(os or o) <i>duas</i> ..... (as) <i>duo</i> ..... (o).         |           |         |
| pl. 5. <i>V. Duo</i> ..... (o) <i>duæ</i> ..... (æ) <i>duo</i> ..... (o).                    |           |         |
| pl. 6. <i>Ab. Duobus</i> ..... (obus) <i>duabus</i> ..... (abus) <i>duobus</i> ..... (obus). |           |         |

*Ambo*—both is declined like *duo*.

*Tres*—three is declined like adjectives of the third declension in the plural, with two endings: as, like *mitis*, pl. *mītes*.

Cardinal numbers, from *quatuor*—four to *centum*—a hundred, both included, are indeclinable; that is, their terminations remain the same, and are not changed, either by case, number, or gender.

From *ducenti* to *nongenti*, both included, those numbers are declined as the plural of *bonus*: as, *boni*, *æ*, *a*, as denoted above.

*Mille*—a thousand is indeclinable when used as an adjective; when used as a substantive it is indeclinable in the singular, but is declinable in the plural: as, *millia*.

## Lesson 35.

|                                                                                                                |                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <sup>*.pl.4</sup> Bellovacos                                                                                   | valere plurimū inter eos, et           |
| (That) (the) Bellovacī                                                                                         | prevail most among them, both          |
| <sup>no-utis.6</sup> virtute, (f.) <sup>••</sup> et <sup>as-atis.6</sup> auctoritate, et <sup>*.6</sup> numero |                                        |
| <sup>1</sup> by (their) <sup>1</sup> valor, and authority, and <sup>1</sup> by (the) <sup>1</sup> number       |                                        |
| <sup>o-ins.pl.2</sup> hominum;                                                                                 | hos posse conficere centum             |
| <sup>1</sup> of (their) <sup>1</sup> men; (that) these were-able to-raise a hundred                            |                                        |
| <sup>pl.4</sup> millia <sup>m.pl.4</sup> armata;                                                               | <sup>*.pl.4</sup> pollicitos sexaginta |
| thousand, armed [armed men]; having-promised sixty                                                             |                                        |
| <sup>pl.4</sup> millia <sup>m.pl.4</sup> lecta ex eo <sup>*.6</sup> numero, que                                |                                        |
| thousand chosen out-of that number, and (that)                                                                 |                                        |
| postulare <sup>m.4</sup> imperium <sup>m.2</sup> totius <sup>m.2</sup> belli                                   |                                        |
| they-demand (the) chief-command of-all (the) war                                                               |                                        |
| sibi. <sup>pl.4</sup> SueSSIONES esse <sup>*.pl.4</sup> suos <sup>*.pl.4</sup> finitimos;                      |                                        |
| for-themselves. (That the) SueSSIONES are their neighbors;                                                     |                                        |

possidere <sup>a.pl.4</sup> latissimos (s.)<sup>••</sup> que  
(and that) they-possess (the) most-extended and  
<sup>a.pl.4</sup> feracissimos (s.)<sup>••</sup> <sup>a.pl.4</sup> agros; <sup>a.4</sup> Divitiacum fuisse  
most-fertile lands; (that) Divitiacus had-been  
<sup>a.4</sup> regem apud eos, etiam <sup>e</sup> nostrâ <sup>e</sup> memoriâ,  
king over them, even in-our memory,  
<sup>a.4</sup> potentissimum (s.)<sup>••</sup> <sup>a.4</sup> totius <sup>2</sup> Galliæ, qui quum  
(the) most-powerful (man) of-all Gaul, who not-only  
obtinerit <sup>m.4</sup> imperum <sup>a.2</sup> magnæ <sup>re-rtis</sup> partis harum  
had-obtained (the) empire 'of (a) 'great part of-these  
<sup>lo-4</sup> <sup>lonia.pl.2</sup> regionum, (f.)<sup>••</sup> tum <sup>2</sup> Britannîæ; <sup>4</sup> Galbam  
regions, but-also of-Britain; (that) Galba  
esse nunc <sup>a.4</sup> regem; <sup>4</sup> summam  
was now (their) king; (that) (the) supreme-command  
<sup>m.4</sup> <sup>totius</sup> <sup>m.2</sup> belli deferri ad hunc propter  
'of (the) 'whole war is-conferred on him on-account-of (his)  
<sup>4</sup> justitiam que <sup>4</sup> prudentiam <sup>as-atia.6</sup> voluntate <sup>is-in.pl.2</sup> omnium;  
justice and prudence 'by (the) 'will of-all;  
habere duodecim <sup>m.pl.4</sup> oppida  
(that) 'they [the Suesiones] 'have twelve towns  
<sup>a.6</sup> numero polliceri quinquaginta <sup>pl.4</sup> millia  
in-number (that) they-promise fifty thousand  
<sup>m.pl.4</sup> armata; <sup>a.pl.4</sup> Nervios totidem,  
armed [armed men]; (that) (the) Nervi (promise) as-many,  
qui habeantur maximè <sup>a.pl.1</sup> feri inter ipsos,  
[who [they] are-deemed (the) most wild among these-same  
que longissimè absint; <sup>as-atia.pl.4</sup> Atrebatas,  
(nations), and 'are farthest 'distant; (that) (the) Atrebatas,  
quindecim <sup>pl.4</sup> millia; <sup>a.pl.4</sup> Ambianos, decem  
(promise) fifteen thousand; (that) (the) Ambiani, ten  
<sup>pl.4</sup> millia; <sup>a.pl.4</sup> Morinos, viginti et quinque <sup>pl.4</sup> millia;  
thousand; (that) (the) Morini, twenty and five thousand;  
<sup>a.pl.4</sup> Menapios, novem <sup>pl.4</sup> millia; <sup>a.pl.4</sup> Caletos, decem  
(that) (the) Menapii, nine thousand; (that) (the) Caleti, ten  
<sup>pl.4</sup> millia; <sup>pl.4</sup> Velocasses et <sup>a.pl.4</sup> Veromanduos totidem;  
thousand; (that) (the) Velocasses and Veromandui as-many;  
<sup>a.pl.4</sup> Aduaticos, viginti novem <sup>pl.4</sup> millia;  
(that) (the) Aduatici, twenty nine thousand; (that)  
<sup>a.pl.4</sup> Condrusos, <sup>pl.4</sup> Eburones, <sup>a.pl.4</sup> Cæresos, <sup>a.pl.4</sup> Pæmanos, qui  
(the) Condrusi, Eburones, Cæresi, Pæmani, who

appellantur <sup>m.s</sup> uno <sup>m-inia.6</sup> nomine <sup>s.pl.1</sup> Germani, arbitrari  
 are-called by-one name Germans, are-reckoned  
 ad quadraginta <sup>pl.4</sup> millia.  
 at forty thousand.

## Lesson 36.

Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos, et virtute, et auctoritate, et hominum numero valere; hos posse conficere armata millia centum; pollicitos ex eo numero lecta millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; latissimos, feracissimosque agros possidere; apud eos fuisse regem, nostrâ etiam memoriâ, Divitiacum, totius Galliæ potentissimum; qui quum magnæ partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniæ, imperium obtinuerit, nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter justitiam, prudentiamque, summam totius belli omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero duodecim; polliceri millia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maximè feri inter ipsos habeantur, longissimèque absint; quindecim millia Atrebates; Ambianos decem millia; Morinos viginti quinque millia; Menapios novem millia; Caletos decem millia; Velocasses et Veromanduos totidem; Aduaticos viginti novem millia; Condrusos, Eburones, Cæresos, Pæmanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 35 AND 36.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Quadraginta. Nomen. Appellantur. Virtus. Inter. Potentissimus. Rex. Agri. Latissimus. Finitimi. Imperium. Sexaginta. Millia. Auctoritas. Magnus. Pars. Bellum. Duodecim. Quinquaginta. Ferus. Centum. Quindecim. Decem. Viginti. Quinque. Qui.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Forty. Name. One. Twenty. Ten. Nine. Fifteen. Distant. Among. Farthest. Of all. Part. Now. King.

War. Will. Towns. In number. As many. Who. Men.  
A hundred. Chosen. Most extended. Lands. Among.  
Most powerful. Valor.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Qui Germani appellantur. Ambianos polliceri millia armata decem. Qui longissimè absint. Nervii maximè feri inter ipsos habeantur. Omnium voluntate deferri. Ad hunc summam totius belli deferri. Magnæ partis harum regionum imperium obtinuerit. Rex Galba. Totius Galliæ potentissimus. Nostrâ memoriâ. Suessiones feracissimos agros possidere. Totius belli imperium postulare. Hos posse conficere armata millia centum. Bellovacos, auctoritate, et hominum numero valere.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

The Germans are reckoned at forty thousand. They are deemed the most wild among these same nations. They are the farthest distant. That the Atrebates promise fifteen thousand. The Veromandes as many. Who are called Germans. The most powerful man of all Gaul. He had obtained the empire of these regions. That Galba was now their king. The supreme command of the whole war. That they could raise a hundred thousand armed men. That the Suessiones possess the most extended lands. A most powerful king. That the Bellovaci prevail most by their valor.

---

PRONOUNS.

PRONOUNS, in Latin, may be divided into two principal classes, the *substantive pronouns*, and the *adjective pronouns*.

## SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

The substantive pronouns are: *ego—I; tu—thou; sui—of himself, herself, itself. Ego—I*, or the first person, is thus declined:

| Singular.                                       | Plural.                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Ego; I.                          | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> Nos; we.                             |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Mei; of me.                      | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> Nostrum or nostri; of us.            |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Mihi; to me.                     | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> Nobis; to us.                        |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Me; me.                          | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> Nos; us.                             |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> _____.                           | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> _____.                               |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Me; in, from, with, by, &c., me. | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> Nobis; in, from, with, by, &c., us. |

This first person, or *ego*, is denoted by placing 1, in parentheses, after the pronoun: as, *me*<sup>(1)</sup>; the cases are denoted, for the singular, by placing the numbers for cases before this pronoun; and the same numbers, with *pl.*, for the plural: as, <sup>3</sup>*mihi*<sup>(1)</sup>; <sup>pl.3</sup>*nobis*<sup>(1)</sup>.

## Lesson 37.

<sup>a.pl.3</sup> Conscripti <sup>cr-ri.pl.5</sup> patres video <sup>cr-ori.pl.4</sup> ora(n.)<sup>••</sup> atque  
 Conscript fathers I-see (the) countenances and  
<sup>a.pl.4</sup> oculos vestrum <sup>is-is.pl.3</sup> omnium esse conversos in <sup>4</sup>me; <sup>(1)••</sup>  
 eyes of-you all to-be turned on me;  
 video vos esse <sup>a.pl.4</sup> sollicitos non solum de <sup>cr.5</sup> vestro  
 I-see you to-be solicitous not only concerning your (own)  
<sup>m.6</sup> periculo, ac <sup>ei.3 and 2</sup> reipublicæ, verum etiam, si id  
 danger, and (that) of (the) republic, but also, if that  
 depulsum sit, de <sup>m.6</sup> meo  
 (danger) may-have-been-repelled (by me), concerning my (own)  
<sup>m.6</sup> periculo. <sup>1</sup> Vestra <sup>ss-atk.1</sup> voluntas erga  
 peril (in accomplishing it). Your good-will towards  
<sup>4</sup>me <sup>(1)••</sup> est <sup>1</sup>jucunda <sup>3</sup>mihi <sup>(1)••</sup> in <sup>m.pl.6</sup> malis, et grata  
 me is pleasant to-me, in danger, and grateful  
 in <sup>cr-ori.6</sup> dolore; sed quæso per <sup>is-is.pl.4</sup> immortales  
 in grief; but I-entreat (you) by the immortal  
<sup>a.pl.4</sup> deos! deponite eam, atque  
 gods! lay-aside this (your good will towards me), and

obliti <sup>2</sup>mea <sup>us-utis.2</sup>salutis, (f.)\*\* cogitate de vobis  
 having-forgotten my safety, think of yourselves

ac de <sup>er-pl.6</sup>vestris <sup>r-pl.6</sup>liberis. Si quidem hæc  
 and of your children. If indeed | this

<sup>io-onis.1</sup>conditio (f.)\*\* <sup>6s.2</sup>consulatûs data est  
 condition 'of (the) 'consulship has-been-given

<sup>3</sup>mihi, <sup>(1)</sup>\*\* ut  
 me [this condition, of being consul, has been imposed on 'me], that

perferrem <sup>is-is.pl.4</sup>omnes <sup>as-atis.pl.4</sup>acerbitates, <sup>is-is.pl.4</sup>omnes  
 I-should-bear all bitter-inflictions, all

<sup>or-oris.pl.4</sup>dolores que <sup>ta-pl.4</sup>cruciatus; feram non solum  
 griefs and torments, I-will-bear (them) not only

fortiter, sed etiam libenter, dummodo <sup>as-atis.1</sup>dignitas  
 courageously, but even willingly, provided-that dignity

que <sup>us-utis.1</sup>salus (f.)\*\* pariat <sup>us-utis.1</sup>vobis que  
 and safety may-be-procured for-you and

<sup>as.3</sup>Romano <sup>as.3</sup>populo <sup>s-pl.6</sup>meis <sup>or-oris.pl.6</sup>laboribus.  
 'for (the) 'Roman people by-my labors.

<sup>1</sup>Ego <sup>(1)</sup>\*\* sum ille <sup>1-is.1</sup>Consul, <sup>as.5</sup>conscripti <sup>er-ris.5</sup>patres,  
 I am that Consul, O conscript fathers,

cui non <sup>m.1</sup>forum, in quo <sup>is-is.1</sup>omnis <sup>as-atis.1</sup>æquitas  
 to-whom not (the) forum, in which all equity

continetur; non <sup>as.1</sup>campus, <sup>as.1</sup>consecratus  
 is-contained; not (the) Campus-Martius, consecrated

<sup>is-is.pl.3</sup>consularibus <sup>m-pl.3</sup>auspiciis; non <sup>1</sup>curia,  
 to-consular auspices; not (the) senate-chamber,

<sup>m.1</sup>summum <sup>m.1</sup>auxilium <sup>is-is.pl.3</sup>omnium  
 (the) highest aid (and refuge) of-all

<sup>as-atis.pl.2</sup>gentium; non <sup>as.1</sup>domus, (f.)\*\*  
 nations; not (my) house, (for a man's house is his),

<sup>as-is.1</sup>commune <sup>m.1</sup>perfugium; non <sup>as.1</sup>lectus  
 common (and inviolable) refuge; not (my) bed

<sup>as.1</sup>datus ad <sup>as-atis.4</sup>quietem; (f.)\*\* denique non hæc  
 given for repose; finally not this (consular)

<sup>as-is.1</sup>sedes <sup>or-oris.2</sup>honoris unquam fuit <sup>1</sup>vacua  
 seat of-honor 'has ever 'been free

<sup>m.6</sup>periculo <sup>as-ris.2</sup>mortis, atque <sup>pl.6</sup>insidiis.  
 from (the) danger of death, and from-snares.



## Lesson 38.

Video, patres conscripti, in me omnium vestrū ora atque oculos esse conversos; video vos non solū de vestro ac reipublicā, verū etiam, si id depulsum sit, de meo periculo esse sollicitos. Est mihi jucunda in malis, et grata in dolore, vestra erga me voluntas; sed eam, per deos immortales! quæso, deponite, atque, oblii salutis meæ, de vobis ac de liberis vestris cogitate. Mihi quidem si hæc conditio consulatū data est, ut omnes acerbitates, omnes dolores cruciatuque perferrem; feram non solū fortiter, sed etiam libenter, dummodo meis laboribus vobis populoque Romano dignitas salusque pariat. Ego sum ille consul, patres conscripti, cui non forum, in quo omnis æquitas continetur; non campus, consularibus auspiciis consecratus; non curia, summum auxilium omnium gentium; non domus, commune perfugium; non lectus, ad quietem datus; non denique hæc sedes honoris, unquam vacua mortis periculo, atque insidiis fuit.

As the substantive pronouns are very irregular, the student should be made to decline them as they occur. So also, hereafter, the demonstrative and relative pronouns, which also are irregular.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 37 AND 38.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Quies. Sedes. Mors. Unquam. Labor. Pater. Æquitas. Summus. Domus. Gens. Perfugium. Lectus. Salus. Liberi. Consulatus. Mihi. Dolores. Cruciatu. Fortiter. Oculos. Me. Video. Respublica. Gratus.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

I. Repose. Bed. A nation. To me. Aid. With me. Senate chamber. Consular. We. Equity. To

whom. Of me. Father. To us. People. For you. My. Willingly. Torments. Grievs. Indeed. Children. Of us. Think. Us. Safety. Pleasant. Towards. Peril. Also. Only. Countenances. Eyes.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Non hæc sedes unquam vacua periculo fuit. Lectus ad quietem datus. Ego sum ille consul. Forum, in quo omnis æquitas continetur. Consularibus auspiciis consecratus. Auxilium omnium gentium. Video, in me omnium oculos esse conversos. Video, vos de meo periculo esse sollicitos. Est mihi jucunda et grata vestra erga me voluntas. Quæso, de vobis ac de liberis vestris cogitate. Mihi quidem, si hæc conditio consulatûs data est. Omnes dolores perferrem. Non solum fortiter, sed etiam libenter. Meis laboribus populo Romano salus pariat.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Not my bed given for repose. This seat of honor. That safety may be procured for you by my labors. I am that consul. The forum in which all equity is contained. Consecrated to consular auspices. The aid of all nations. Think of yourselves and of your children. If this condition, of being consul, has been imposed on me. That I should bear all griefs and torments. Not only courageously, but even willingly. I see the eyes of you all to be turned on me. I see you to be solicitous concerning my peril. Your good will towards me is pleasant.

*Tu—thou*, the second person, is thus declined :

| Singular.                                   | Plural.                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Tu ; thou.                   | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> Vos ; ye or you.                 |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Tui ; of thee.               | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> Vestrûm or vestri ; of you.      |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Tibi ; to thee.              | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> Vobis ; to you.                  |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Te ; thee.                   | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> Vos ; you.                       |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> Tu ; O thou.                 | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> Vos ; O ye or you.               |
| 6. <i>Ab.</i> Te ; in, with, by, &c., thee. | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> Vobis ; in, with, by, &c., you. |

*Sui*—of himself, of herself, of itself, or the third person, is thus declined :

| Singular.                                                       | Plural.                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> _____.                                           | <i>pl.</i> 1. <i>N.</i> _____.                                      |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> <i>Sui</i> ; of himself, of herself, of itself.  | <i>pl.</i> 2. <i>G.</i> <i>Sui</i> ; of themselves.                 |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> <i>Sibi</i> ; to himself, to herself, to itself. | <i>pl.</i> 3. <i>D.</i> <i>Sibi</i> ; to themselves.                |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> <i>Se</i> ; himself, herself, itself.            | <i>pl.</i> 4. <i>A.</i> <i>Se</i> ; themselves.                     |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> _____.                                           | <i>pl.</i> 5. <i>V.</i> _____.                                      |
| 6. <i>Ab.</i> <i>Se</i> ; in, with, by, &c., himself, &c.       | <i>pl.</i> 6. <i>Ab.</i> <i>Se</i> ; in, with, by, &c., themselves. |

In *sui*, the third person, the nominative and vocative singular and plural are wanting. The plural of *sui* is like the singular.

As the first person, *ego*, has been denoted by placing <sup>(1)</sup> between parentheses, after the pronoun, so the second person, *tu*, is denoted by placing <sup>(2)</sup> between parentheses after it, and the third person, *sui*, by placing <sup>(3)</sup> in like manner, after it.

The syllable *met* is sometimes added to the end of these substantive pronouns, for the sake of emphasis : as, *egomet*—*I myself*. In the nominative and vocative singular of *tu*—*thou*, *te* or *tement* is used : as, *tute* or *tutement* ; and in the accusative and ablative singular of the same *tu*, *te* is added : as, *tete* ; and *se* is added to *se* : as, *sese* ; all in the same emphatic sense as *met*.

### Lesson 39.

Quid, quòd 'tu<sup>(3)</sup> ipse  
 | What [what shall I say of this], that you yourself  
 dedisti 'te<sup>(2)</sup> in 'custodiam?  
 have-given yourself into (the) custody (of a private person)?  
 Quid, quòd 'causâ 'suspicionis<sup>(f.)</sup>  
 What, that | for-(the)-sake of-suspicion (necessary)  
 'vitandæ, dixisti,  
 to-be-avoided [for the purpose of doing away with suspicion], you-said,

<sup>4</sup>te<sup>(3)</sup> velle habitare apud <sup>4</sup>M. Lepidum? A quo  
 (that) you wished to-reside with M. Lepidus? By whom  
 non receptus, ausus es etiam venire ad  
 not having-been-received, you-dared even to-come to  
<sup>4</sup>me; <sup>(1)</sup> atque rogasti, ut asservarem <sup>4</sup>te<sup>(3)</sup> <sup>2</sup>meae  
 me; and you-asked, that I-would-guard you (in) my  
<sup>2</sup>domi, (f.) <sup>2</sup>cum tulisses id <sup>4</sup>responsum quoque  
 house, when you-had-received this answer also  
 à <sup>4</sup>me, <sup>(1)</sup> <sup>4</sup>me<sup>(1)</sup> posse esse <sup>2</sup>nullo <sup>2</sup>tuto <sup>2</sup>modo  
 from me, (that) I could be in-no safe manner  
 cum <sup>4</sup>te<sup>(3)</sup> <sup>2</sup>iisdem <sup>co-ctm.pl.6</sup> parietibus, qui  
 with you 'in (the) 'same walls (of my house), who  
 essem in <sup>2</sup>magno <sup>2</sup>periculo, quòd contineremur  
 was in great danger, because we-were-contained  
 iisdem <sup>co-ctm.pl.6</sup> mœnibus; venisti ad  
 'in (the) 'same walls-' of (the) 'city; 'you (then) 'came to  
<sup>4</sup>Q. Metellum, <sup>co-ctm.4</sup> prætorem; à quo <sup>2</sup>repudiatus,  
 Q. Metellum, (the) prætor; by whom being rejected,  
 demigrasti ad <sup>4</sup>tuum <sup>co-ctm.4</sup> sodalem (m.) <sup>2</sup>  
 you-went-away to your companion (that)  
<sup>4</sup>optimum (s.) <sup>2</sup>virum <sup>4</sup>M. Marcellum,  
 most-excellent man [said ironically] M. Marcellus,  
 quem <sup>1</sup>tu<sup>(3)</sup> videlicet putasti fore et  
 whom you certainly thought would-be-both  
<sup>4</sup>diligentissimum (s.) <sup>2</sup>ad <sup>4</sup>custodiendum <sup>4</sup>te<sup>(3)</sup> et  
 most-diligent for guarding you, and  
<sup>4</sup>sagacissimum (s.) <sup>2</sup>ad <sup>4</sup>susplicandum, et  
 most-sagacious for suspecting (you), and  
<sup>4</sup>fortissimum (s.) <sup>2</sup>ad <sup>4</sup>vindicandum. Sed quàm  
 most-resolute for punishing (you). But how  
 longè videtur, debere abesse à <sup>co-ctm.6</sup> carcere  
 far does-it-seem, (that) he-ought to-be-distant from prison  
 atque à <sup>co-ctm.6</sup> vinculis, qui ipse jam iudicaverit <sup>4</sup>se<sup>(3)</sup>  
 and from bonds, who himself now has-judged himself  
<sup>4</sup>dignum <sup>4</sup>custodiâ?  
 worthy (of) custody?

## Lesson 40.

Quid, quòd tu te ipse in custodiam dedisti? Quid, quòd vitandæ suspicionis causâ, apud M. Lepidum te habitare velle dixisti? A quo non receptus, etiam ad me venire ausus es; atque ut domi meæ te asservarem, rogasti; cùm à me quoque id responsum tulisses, me nullo modo posse iisdem parietibus tuto esse tecum, qui magno in periculo essem, quod iisdem mœnibus contineremur; ad Q. Metellum prætorem venisti; à quo repudiatus, ad sodalem tuum, virum optimum, M. Marcellum demigrasti; quem tu videlicet et ad custodiendum te diligentissimum, et ad suspicandum sagacissimum, et ad vindicandum fortissimum fore putasti. Sed quàm longè videtur à carcere atque à vinculis abesse debere, qui se ipse jam dignum custodiâ judicaverit.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 39 AND 40.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Sodalis. Vir. Fortissimus. Fore. Optimum. Te. Carcere. Se. Sibi. Sui. Custodia. Dignus. Vobis. Vos. Vestrum. Me. Domus. Responsum. Modus. Paries. Tibi. Dixisti. Habitare.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Me. You. House. Answer. Manner. Wall. Danger. In the same. Great. Yourself. Custody. What. Suspicion. You said. Companion. Best, or most excellent. Most sagacious. Whom. Most diligent. Prison. To be distant.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Ad prætorem venisti. Ad sodalem tuum demigrasti. Quem tu ad custodiendum te diligentissimum fore putasti. Se ipse dignum custodiâ judicaverit. Tu te ipse in custodiam dedisti. Ad me venire ausus es. Cùm id responsum tulisses. Quod iisdem mœnibus contineremur.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

By whom being rejected. That most excellent man, M. Marcellus. Whom you thought would be most diligent. Most resolute for punishing you. How far ought he to be distant from a prison. You dared to come to me. You asked that I would guard you in my house. Who was in great danger. For the purpose of doing away with suspicion.

### ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Adjective pronouns are those pronouns which, like adjectives, denote gender in addition to number and case. They may be divided into several classes, as *demonstrative, relative, possessive, &c.*

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are those which specify or point out a person or thing. They are: *is—this, that, he, she, it; ille—that, he, she, it; hic—this, he, she, it; iste—this, he, she, it*; used often in contempt.

*Hic—this*, is thus declined :

#### SINGULAR.

| Masculine.                 | Feminine.  | Neuter.     |               |
|----------------------------|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Hic.....    | hæc .....  | hoc.....    | this.         |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Hujus ..... | hujus..... | hujus ..... | of this.      |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Huic.....   | huic ..... | huic .....  | to this.      |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Hunc.....   | hanc ..... | hoc.....    | this.         |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> .....       | .....      | .....       | [&c., this.   |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Hoc .....   | hac.....   | hoc.....    | in, with, by, |

#### PLURAL.

| Masculine.                  | Feminine.   | Neuter.     |               |
|-----------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Hi.....    | hæ .....    | hæc .....   | these.        |
| pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Horum..... | harum ..... | horum ..... | of these.     |
| pl. 3. <i>D.</i> His.....   | his .....   | his .....   | to these.     |
| pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Hos .....  | has.....    | hæc.....    | these.        |
| pl. 5. <i>V.</i> .....      | .....       | .....       | [&c., these.  |
| pl. 6. <i>Ab.</i> His.....  | his.....    | his.....    | in, with, by, |

It is here to be observed, that the neuter nominative, accusative, and ablative singular, with the masculine ablative singular, are alike; that the feminine nominative singular, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural, are alike; that the genitive singular, for all genders, is alike; that the dative singular, for all genders, is alike; that the masculine and neuter genitive plural are alike; that the dative and ablative plural, for all the genders, are alike.

The emphatic *ce* is sometimes added to the end of the cases of *hic*: as, *hujusce, hosce, &c.*

To designate this demonstrative pronoun *hic*, *ic* is placed for the masculine, *æc* for the feminine, and *oc* for the neuter.

### Lesson 41.

|                                                 |                                                            |                                               |                                       |                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <sup>mc.6</sup> <b>Hac</b>                      | <sup>ei.6</sup> <b>re</b>                                  | <b>statim</b>                                 | <sup>6</sup> <b>cognitâ</b>           | <b>per</b>                          |                             |
| This                                            | thing                                                      | 'being immediately                            | 'known                                | by                                  |                             |
| <sup>or-ori.pl.4</sup> <b>speculatores,</b>     | <sup>ar-aria.1</sup> <b>Cæsar</b>                          | <sup>a.1</sup> <b>veritus</b>                 | <sup>pl.4</sup> <b>insidias,</b>      |                                     |                             |
| (the) scouts,                                   | Cæsar                                                      | having-feared                                 | snares,                               |                                     |                             |
| <b>quòd</b>                                     | <b>nondum</b>                                              | <b>perspexerat</b>                            | <b>de quâ</b>                         | <sup>6</sup> <b>causâ</b>           |                             |
| because                                         | he-'had                                                    | not yet                                       | 'perceived                            | from what cause                     |                             |
| <b>discederent,</b>                             | <b>continuit</b>                                           | <sup>ta.4</sup> <b>exercitum</b>              | <b>que</b>                            | <sup>ta.4</sup> <b>equitatum.</b>   |                             |
| they-departed,                                  | kept                                                       | (his) army                                    | and                                   | cavalry                             |                             |
| <sup>m.pl.6</sup> <b>castris.</b>               | <b>Primâ</b>                                               | <sup>x-ch.6</sup> <b>luce,</b>                | <sup>ei.6</sup> <b>re</b>             |                                     |                             |
| in-camp.                                        | 'In (the) 'first                                           | light [at daybreak],                          | the thing                             |                                     |                             |
| <sup>6</sup> <b>confirmatâ</b>                  | <b>ab</b>                                                  | <sup>or-ori.pl.6</sup> <b>exploratoribus,</b> | <b>præmisit</b>                       |                                     |                             |
| being-confirmed                                 | by                                                         | (the) scouts,                                 | he-sent-before                        |                                     |                             |
| <sup>is-is.4</sup> <b>omnem</b>                 | <sup>ta.4</sup> <b>equitatum,</b>                          | <b>qui moraretur</b>                          | <sup>m.4</sup> <b>novissimum (s.)</b> | <sup>6</sup> <b>agmen.</b>          |                             |
| all                                             | (the) cavalry,                                             | who might-detain                              | (the) last                            |                                     |                             |
| <sup>or-inis.4</sup> <b>agmen.</b>              | troop [who might detain the rear of the retreating enemy]. |                                               |                                       |                                     |                             |
| <b>Præfecit</b>                                 | <sup>ic.pl.3</sup> <b>his</b>                              | <sup>a.pl.4</sup> <b>legatos</b>              | <sup>a.4</sup> <b>Quintum</b>         | <sup>a.4</sup> <b>Pedium,</b>       |                             |
| He-placed-over                                  | these                                                      | (the) lieutenants                             | Quintus                               | Pedius,                             |                             |
| <b>et</b>                                       | <sup>a.4</sup> <b>Lucium</b>                               | <sup>a.4</sup> <b>Aurunculeium</b>            | <sup>4</sup> <b>Cottam.</b>           | <b>Jussit</b>                       | <sup>a.4</sup> <b>Titum</b> |
| and                                             | Lucius                                                     | Aurunculeius                                  | Cotta.                                | He-ordered                          | Titus                       |
| <sup>a.4</sup> <b>Labienum</b>                  | <sup>a.4</sup> <b>legatum</b>                              | <b>subsequi</b>                               | <b>cum</b>                            | <sup>is-is.pl.6</sup> <b>tribus</b> |                             |
| Labienus                                        | (the) lieutenant                                           | to-follow                                     | with                                  | three                               |                             |
| <sup>is-onis.pl.6</sup> <b>legionibus; (f.)</b> | <sup>ic.pl.1</sup> <b>hi</b>                               | <sup>a.pl.1</sup> <b>adorti</b>               |                                       |                                     |                             |
| legions;                                        | these                                                      | having-attacked                               |                                       |                                     |                             |

|                                           |                                         |                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <sup>a.pl.4</sup> novissimos,(s.)**       | et                                      | <sup>a.pl.1</sup> prosecuti                                |
| the-last                                  | [the rear], and                         | having-pursued (them)                                      |
| <sup>m.pl.4</sup> multa                   | <sup>pl.4</sup> millia                  | <sup>aa.pl.2</sup> passuum, conciderunt                    |
| many                                      | thousand                                | paces, cut-up a great                                      |
| <sup>do-dinia.4</sup> multitudinem (f.)** | <sup>eorum</sup>                        | <sup>m-ntia.pl.2</sup> fugientium. Quum                    |
| multitude                                 | of-them                                 | flying. When                                               |
| <sup>ic.pl.1</sup> hi                     | ab                                      | <sup>m.6</sup> extremo                                     |
| these                                     | from (the) hindmost                     | <sup>an-linia.6</sup> agmine, ad quos                      |
|                                           |                                         | troop [in the rear], to   whom                             |
| ventum erat,                              |                                         | consisterent,                                              |
| it-had-been-come                          | [with whom our men had come up],        | halted,                                                    |
| que fortiter                              | sustinerent                             | <sup>aa.4</sup> impetum                                    |
| and bravely                               | sustained                               | <sup>or.pl.2</sup> nostrorum                               |
|                                           | (the) attack                            | of-our                                                     |
| <sup>as-ilia.pl.2</sup> militum;          | <sup>or-oria.pl.1</sup> priores,(c.)**  | quòd                                                       |
| soldiers;                                 | (those) first                           | [those in the front], because                              |
| viderentur abesse                         | à <sup>m.6</sup> periculo, neque        | continenterentur                                           |
| they-seemed to-be-distant from            | danger, nor                             | were-held-together                                         |
| <sup>ullâ</sup>                           | <sup>as-ctia.6</sup> necessitate, neque | <sup>m.6</sup> imperio, <sup>or-oria.6</sup> clamore       |
| by-any                                    | necessity, or                           | authority, (the) noise                                     |
| <sup>a.6</sup> exaudito,                  | <sup>do-dinia.pl.6</sup> ordinibus      | <sup>a.pl.6</sup> perturbatis, <sup>is-is.pl.1</sup> omnes |
| being-heard,                              | (the) ranks                             | being-disturbed, all                                       |
| posuerunt <sup>m.4</sup> subsidium        | <sup>pl.2</sup> sibi**                  | in <sup>6</sup> fugâ.                                      |
| placed                                    | safety to-themselves                    | in flight.                                                 |

## Lesson 42.

Hac re statim, Cæsar, per speculatores cognitâ, insidias veritus, quòd quâ de causâ discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primâ luce, confirmatâ re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, præmisit. His, Q. Pedium, et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos præfecit: T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi novissimos adorti, et multa millia passuum prosequuti, magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt. Quum ab extremo agmine hi, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent, fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent; priores, quòd abesse à periculo viderentur, neque ullâ necessitate, neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus, omnes in fugâ sibi subsidium posuerunt.



## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 41 AND 42.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Hi. Passus. Fugiens. Agmen. Fortiter. Miles. Impetum. Abesse. Periculum. Hos. Clamor. Hanc. Fuga. Hujus. Speculator. Exercitus. Harum. Lux. Equitatus. His. Legatus. Huic, Jussit.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Bravely. Attack. To be distant. Danger. Authority. Noise. Flight. He ordered. Three. These. Many. To this. Paces. Of this. Immediately. To these. Scouts. Snares. Not yet. Army. Cavalry. Light.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quum hi consisterent. Fortiter impetum militum sustinerent. Quodd abesse à periculo. Omnes in fugâ sibi subsidium posuerunt. Cæsar insidias veritus. Exercitum castris continuit. Primâ luce omnem equitatum præmisit. Legatum subsequi jussit. Magnam multitudinem considerunt.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

From the rear. They sustained the attack of our soldiers. Nor were they held together by any authority. All placed safety to themselves in flight. He placed lieutenants over these. He ordered the lieutenant to follow with two legions. They cut up a great multitude of them flying. Because he had not yet perceived. At daylight he sent forward all the cavalry. He kept his army in camp.

*Is—this, that*, is thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

| Masculine.               | Feminine. | Neuter.   |
|--------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Is.....   | he, this  | ea.....   |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Ejus..... | ejus..... | ejus..... |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Ei.....   | ei.....   | ei.....   |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Eum.....  | eum.....  | id.....   |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> .....     | .....     | .....     |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Eo.....   | eo.....   | eo.....   |

..... she, this    it, this.  
 ..... of this.  
 ..... to this.  
 ..... this.  
 ..... [ &c., this,  
 ..... in, with, by,

## PLURAL.

| Masculine.                                       | Feminine.                      | Neuter.                        |               |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| pl. 1. <i>N.</i> <i>Ii</i> ( <i>ei</i> ).....    | <i>ea</i> .....                | <i>ea</i> .....                | these.        |
| pl. 2. <i>G.</i> <i>Eorum</i> .....              | <i>earum</i> .....             | <i>eorum</i> .....             | of these.     |
| pl. 3. <i>D.</i> <i>Iis</i> or <i>eis</i> .....  | <i>iis</i> or <i>eis</i> ..... | <i>iis</i> or <i>eis</i> ..... | to these.     |
| pl. 4. <i>A.</i> <i>Eos</i> .....                | <i>ea</i> .....                | <i>ea</i> .....                | these.        |
| pl. 5. <i>V.</i> .....                           |                                |                                | [&c., these.  |
| pl. 6. <i>Ab.</i> <i>Iis</i> or <i>eis</i> ..... | <i>iis</i> or <i>eis</i> ..... | <i>iis</i> or <i>eis</i> ..... | in, with, by, |

Observe, that the nominative and ablative feminine singular, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural, are alike; that the genitive singular, for all genders, is alike; that the dative singular, for all genders, is alike; that the dative and ablative plural are alike, for all genders.

*Dem* is sometimes added to the end of *is*, in all the cases, numbers, and genders, the *s* of the nominative singular masculine, and the *d* of the nominative and accusative singular neuter being omitted: as, nominative singular, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.

The *m* of the accusative singular masculine and feminine, and of the genitive plural, is changed into *n*: as, accusative singular, *eundem*, *eandem*; genitive plural, *eorundem*, *earundem*, *eorundem*.

To designate the demonstrative pronoun *is*, *is* is placed for the masculine, *ea* for the feminine, and *id* for the neuter.

## Lesson 43.

|                                                                          |                           |                          |                              |                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <sup>a.pl.1</sup> Helvetii                                               | <sup>a.pl.1</sup> commoti | <sup>a.s</sup> repentino | <sup>an.s</sup> adventu      | <sup>in.2</sup> ejus, |
| The Helvetians                                                           | moved                     | 'by (the) 'sudden        | arrival                      | of-him                |
| quum intelligerent, illum fecisse <sup>a.s</sup> uno <sup>ei.s</sup> die |                           |                          |                              |                       |
| [Cæsar], when they-understood, (that) he had-done in-one day             |                           |                          |                              |                       |
| <sup>id.4</sup> id,                                                      | quod ipsi                 | ægerimè                  | confecerant                  | viginti               |
| that, which themselves 'had scarcely 'accomplished in-twenty             |                           |                          |                              |                       |
| <sup>ei.pl.2</sup> diebus,                                               | ut                        | transirent               | <sup>en-inia.4</sup> flumen, |                       |
| days, (namely) that                                                      | they-might-pass           |                          | the river,                   |                       |
| mittunt                                                                  | <sup>a.pl.4</sup> legatos | ad                       | <sup>in.4</sup> eum;         | cujus                 |
| they-sent                                                                | ambassadors               | to                       | him;                         | of-which              |

io-<sup>10</sup>-<sup>10</sup>is.<sup>2</sup> legationis (f.)<sup>••</sup> Divico fuit <sup>pe-pis.<sup>1</sup></sup> princeps, qui fuerat  
 embassy Divico was chief, who was

x-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>cia.<sup>1</sup> dux <sup>a-pl.<sup>2</sup></sup> Helvetiorum <sup>m.<sup>6</sup></sup> Cassiano <sup>m.<sup>6</sup></sup> bello.  
 (the) leader 'of (the) 'Helvetians 'in (the) 'Cassian war.

h-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>Is. ita egit cum <sup>ar-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>6</sup></sup> Cæsare;  
 | He thus acted with Cæsar [he thus addressed Cæsar];

"si <sup>a-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup></sup> Romanus <sup>a-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup></sup> populus faceret x-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>cia.<sup>4</sup> pacem cum  
 "if (the) Roman people would-make peace with

a-pl.<sup>6</sup> Helvetiis, <sup>a-pl.<sup>4</sup></sup> Helvetios <sup>a-pl.<sup>4</sup></sup> ituros in  
 (the) Helvetians, (the) Helvetians | would-be-going [would go] into

ea.<sup>4</sup> eam <sup>m-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>4</sup></sup> partem, atque <sup>a-pl.<sup>4</sup></sup> futuros ibi, ubi <sup>m-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>1</sup></sup> Cæsar  
 that part, and would-remain there, where Cæsar

constituisset, atque voluisset esse;  
 might-have-appointed (for them), and wished (them) to-be;

sin perseveraret persequi <sup>m.<sup>6</sup></sup> bello, reminisceretur  
 but-if he-should-persevere to-follow with-war, he-should-remember

et <sup>us-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>2</sup></sup> veteris <sup>m.<sup>2</sup></sup> incommodi <sup>a-<sup>2</sup>-<sup>2</sup></sup> Romani <sup>a-<sup>2</sup>-<sup>2</sup></sup> populi, et  
 both (the) old misfortune 'of (the) 'Roman people, and

<sup>2</sup> pristinae <sup>us-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>2</sup></sup> virtutis (f.)<sup>••</sup> <sup>a-pl.<sup>2</sup></sup> Helvetiorum. Quòd  
 (the) ancient valor 'of (the) 'Helvetians. Because

improvisò adortus esset <sup>a-<sup>4</sup>-<sup>4</sup></sup> unum  
 unexpectedly he-had-attacked (a part of the army composed of) one

a-<sup>4</sup>-<sup>4</sup> pagum, quum <sup>is-pl.<sup>1</sup></sup> ii, qui transissent <sup>en-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>4</sup></sup> flumen  
 canton, when those, who had-passed-over the river 'were

non possent ferre <sup>m.<sup>4</sup></sup> auxilium <sup>a-pl.<sup>3</sup></sup> suis;  
 not 'able to-bring assistance to-their (people); 'he [Cæsar]

ne tribueret aut magnoperè <sup>3</sup> suae <sup>us-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>3</sup></sup> virtuti (f.)<sup>••</sup>  
 'should not 'attribute either too-much to-his valor

ob <sup>ea.<sup>4</sup></sup> eam <sup>ei.<sup>4</sup></sup> rem, aut despiceret ipsos.  
 on-account-of that thing, or despise themselves.

pl.<sup>4</sup> Se (3)<sup>••</sup> ita didicisse à <sup>a-pl.<sup>6</sup></sup> suis <sup>er-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>pl.<sup>6</sup></sup></sup> patribus que.  
 That they 'had so 'learned from their fathers and

or-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>pl.<sup>6</sup></sup> majoribus, ut contenderent magis  
 ancestors, that they-should-contend more

us-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>6</sup> virtute (f.)<sup>••</sup> quàm <sup>a-<sup>6</sup>-<sup>6</sup></sup> dolo, aut niterentur  
 by-valor than by-deceit, or strive (to succeed)

pl.<sup>6</sup> insidiis. Quare ne committeret,  
 by-snares (or ambushes). Wherefore he-'should not 'act-so,

ut <sup>is.<sup>1</sup></sup> is <sup>a-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup></sup> locus, ubi constitissent, caperet <sup>en-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>1</sup>is.<sup>4</sup></sup> nomen  
 that (the) place, where they-had-stood, should-take (its) name

|                      |                                       |                                          |                       |                |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| ex                   | <sup>as-atis.6</sup> calamitate       | <sup>as</sup> Romani                     | <sup>as</sup> populi, | et             |
| from                 | (the) calamity                        | <sup>1</sup> of (the) <sup>1</sup> Roman | people,               | and            |
| <sup>to-onia.6</sup> | internecione (f.)**                   | <sup>as</sup> exercitûs,                 | ac                    | proderet       |
| (the)                | massacre                              | <sup>1</sup> of (the) <sup>1</sup> army, | and                   | should-deliver |
|                      | 'memoriam.'                           |                                          |                       |                |
|                      | (the) memory (thereof to posterity)." |                                          |                       |                |

## Lesson 44.

Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, quum id quod ipsi diebus viginti ægerrimè confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Cæsare egit: "Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi Cæsar constituisset, atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quòd improvisò unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent: ne ob eam rem, aut suæ magnoperè virtuti tribueret, aut ipsos despiceret. Se ita à patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quàm dolo contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani, et internecione exercitûs nomen caperet, ac memoriam proderet."

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 43 AND 44.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Improvise. Flumen. Ferre. Virtus. Patres. Locus.  
 Internecio. Nomen. Adventus. Ejus. Dies. Id.  
 Ægerrimè. Legati. Eum. Mittunt. Ei. Princèps.  
 Hac. Pax. Bello. Eis. Pars. Eorum. Ubi. Ii.  
 Pristinus.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Assistance. This. Fathers. Ancestors. More. Deceit.  
 Place. Peace. Old. Ancient. Unexpectedly. Canton.  
 Arrival. Day. Twenty. Embassy. Chief. Leader.  
 War. Moved.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quòd unum pagum adortus esset. Qui suis auxilium ferre non possent. Ne ob eam rem, ipsos despiceret. Se à majoribus suis didicisse. Is locus ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet. Helvetii ejus adventu commoti. Legatos ad eum mittunt. Divico ita cum Cæsare egit. Si pacem faceret. Ibi futuros, ubi Cæsar voluisset. Reminisceretur pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

And should deliver the memory thereof to posterity. They were not able to bring assistance to their people. He should not despise them on account of that thing. They had learned from their fathers that they should contend more by valor than by deceit. The place where they had stood. If they would make peace with the Helvetians. He should remember the old misfortune. Because he had attacked one canton. Moved by his arrival. That which they had accomplished in twenty days. They send ambassadors to Cæsar. He thus acted with Cæsar.

*Ille—that*, is thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

| Masculine.                  | Feminine.   | Neuter.     |               |
|-----------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Ille.....    | illa .....  | illud.....  | that.         |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Illius ..... | illius..... | illius..... | of that.      |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Illi .....   | illi.....   | illi.....   | to that.      |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Illum.....   | illam.....  | illud.....  | that.         |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> .....        | .....       | .....       | [&c., that.   |
| 6. <i>Abl.</i> Illo.....    | illâ .....  | illo .....  | in, with, by, |

## PLURAL.

| Masculine.                     | * Feminine.          | Neuter.              |               |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| pl. 1. <i>N. Illi</i> .....    | <i>illæ</i> .....    | <i>illa</i> .....    | those.        |
| pl. 2. <i>G. Illorum</i> ..... | <i>illarum</i> ..... | <i>illorum</i> ..... | of those.     |
| pl. 3. <i>D. Illis</i> .....   | <i>illis</i> .....   | <i>illis</i> .....   | to those.     |
| pl. 4. <i>A. Illos</i> .....   | <i>illas</i> .....   | <i>illa</i> .....    | those.        |
| pl. 5. <i>V.</i> .....         | .....                | .....                | [&c., those.  |
| pl. 6. <i>Ab. Illis</i> .....  | <i>illis</i> .....   | <i>illis</i> .....   | in, with, by, |

*Iste*—*this* is declined like *ille*; so is also the intensive or emphatic pronoun *ipse*—*himself*, *ipsa*—*herself*, and *ipsum*—*itself*. *Ipse* has *ipsud*, instead of *ipsud*, in the nominative and accusative singular; in all the other cases, numbers, and genders, it is like *ille*.

Observe, that the nominative and ablative singular feminine, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural, are alike; that the genitive singular, for all genders, is the same; that the dative singular, for all genders, is the same; as are also the dative and ablative plural, for all genders.

Te designate the demonstrative pronoun *ille*, *le* is placed for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *lud* for the neuter; in *iste*, *te* is placed for the masculine, *ta* for the feminine, and *tud* for the neuter; in *ipse*, *se* is placed for the masculine, *sa* for the feminine, and *sum* for the neuter.

## Lesson 45.

|                           |                             |                                |                                                |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <sup>a.1</sup> Divitiacus | <sup>a.1</sup> complexus    | <sup>ar-ar.4</sup> Cæsarem cum | <sup>pl.6</sup> multis                         |
| Divitiacus                | having-embraced             | Cæsar                          | with many                                      |
| <sup>pl.6</sup> lacrymis  | <sup>pl.6</sup> cœpit       | obsecrare,                     | "ne statueret                                  |
| tears                     | began                       | to-entreat,                    | "(that) he- <sup>1</sup> would 'not 'determine |
| quid                      | gravius                     | in                             | <sup>ar-ris.4</sup> fratrem;                   |
| any-thing                 | severely                    | against                        | (his) brother; (that) he knew                  |
| <sup>lud.pl.4</sup> illa  | <sup>esse m.pl.4</sup> esse | <sup>m.pl.4</sup> vera;        | nec quonquam capere                            |
| those (things)            | to-be                       | true;                          | nor (that) any-one took                        |
| plus                      | <sup>ar-ar.2</sup> doloris  | ex                             | <sup>id.6</sup> eo, quàm                       |
| more                      | grief                       | from                           | that (thing), than himself;                    |
| quod.                     | (quum                       | <sup>se.1</sup> ipse           | posset plurimum                                |
| that                      | (  when                     | he-himself                     | was-able (to do) (the) most                    |

<sup>2</sup>domi(<sup>f</sup>)<sup>••</sup> atque in <sup>6</sup>reliquâ <sup>6</sup>Galliâ, <sup>1</sup>ille minimum,  
at-home and in remaining Gaul, he (the) least,  
propter <sup>4</sup>adulescentiam),  
on-account-of (his) youth), [when, he, Divitiacus, had the greatest

influence at home, and in the rest of Gaul, he, his brother, on account of

crevisset per <sup>4</sup>se<sup>(3)••</sup>  
his youth, had least], [he-had-grown by himself [he, his brother,

quibus  
had grown in power through his, Divitiacus', means] which  
<sup>pe-pl. pl. 6</sup>opibus ac <sup>pl. 6</sup>nervis uteretur non solum ad  
power and strength he-did-use not only to

<sup>4</sup>minuendam <sup>4</sup>gratiam, sed penè ad <sup>4</sup>suam  
diminishing (his, Divitiacus'), authority, but almost to his

<sup>el. 4</sup>perniciem; <sup>4</sup>sese<sup>(3)••</sup> tamen commoveri  
[Divitiacus'] destruction; (that) he however was-moved

et <sup>6</sup>fraterno <sup>or-oris. 6</sup>amore, et <sup>10-1on. 6</sup>existimatione(<sup>f</sup>)<sup>••</sup>  
both by-fraternal love, and 'by (the) 'opinion

<sup>2</sup>vulgi, quòd si quid <sup>10-oris. 1</sup>gravius(<sup>c</sup>)<sup>••</sup>  
'of (the) 'common-people, because if any-thing serious

accidisset <sup>10-3</sup>ei à <sup>ar-ar. 6</sup>Cæsare, quum <sup>10-1</sup>ipse  
had-happened to-him from Cæsar, when he-himself

teneret <sup>10-4</sup>eum <sup>2</sup>locum <sup>2</sup>amicitiæ apud <sup>10-4</sup>eum,  
[Divitiacus] held that place of-friendship with him,

<sup>10-10. 4</sup>neminem existimaturum  
[Cæsar] (that) no-one would-think (that this) 'was

non factum <sup>6</sup>suâ <sup>10-10. 6</sup>voluntate; ex quâ  
not 'done with-his [Divitiacus'] consent; from which

<sup>el. 6</sup>re futurum uti <sup>pl. 1</sup>animi <sup>10-10. 2</sup>totius <sup>2</sup>Galliæ  
thing it-would-be that (the) minds of-all Gaul

avertentur à <sup>4</sup>se." <sup>(3)••</sup> Quum <sup>10-10. 1</sup>fleus  
would-be-turned-away from himself." When weeping

peteret <sup>10-10. 4</sup>hæc à <sup>ar-ar. 6</sup>Cæsare,  
he-sought those (things) from Cæsar,

<sup>10-10. 6</sup>pluribus(<sup>multum, c.</sup>)<sup>••</sup> <sup>pl. 6</sup>verbis, <sup>ar-ar. 1</sup>Cæsar  
with-many words, Cæsar

prehendit <sup>10-2</sup>ejus <sup>4</sup>dextram; <sup>10-1</sup>consolatus, rogat  
takes his right-hand; having-consolated (him), he-asks

faciat <sup>10-10. 4</sup>finem orandi; ostendit.  
(that) he-would-make (an) end of-entreating; he-shows (that)

<sup>in.2</sup> ejus    <sup>4</sup> gratiam    esse    <sup>m.2</sup> tanti    apud    <sup>6</sup> se, <sup>(3)</sup> ••    uti  
           his        favor        was        so-much    with       himself,    that  
 condonet        et    <sup>4</sup> injuriam    <sup>2</sup> reipublicæ,    et    <sup>4</sup> suum  
 he-would-forgive both (the) injury 'of (the) 'republic, and his-own  
 or-oris.4    dolorem    <sup>in.2</sup> ejus    <sup>as-atia.3</sup> voluntati    ac    <sup>x-cis.pl.3</sup> precibus.  
                   grief    'to    his        'good-will    and       prayers.

## Lesson 46.

Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis Cæsarem complexus obsecrare cœpit, "ne quid gravius in fratrem statuerit, scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus, quam se, doloris capere; propterea quòd, (quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi, atque in reliquâ Galliâ, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset) per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis, non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed penè ad perniciem suam uteretur; sese tamen et amore fraterno, et existimatione vulgi commoveri; quòd si quid ei à Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non suâ voluntate factum; quâ ex re futurum, uti totius Galliæ animi à se averterentur." Hæc quum pluribus verbis flens à Cæsare peteret, Cæsar ejus dextram prehendit; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicæ injuriam, et suum dolorem, ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 45 AND 46.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Cœpit. Flens. Dextra. Finis. Dolor. Preces. Frater.  
 Illa. Vera. Gratia. Domi. Adolescentia. Ille.  
 Penè. Pernicies. Amor. Vulgus. Ipse. Amicitiae.  
 Nemo. Voluntas.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Authority. Destruction. However. Fraternal. The common people. He himself. Friendship. No one. Con-



sent. Brother. More. Grief. Because. At home.  
Youth. Minds. Right hand. End. Prayers. Many.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Si quid ei accidisset. Suâ voluntate factum. Animi à se averterentur. Hæc quum à Cæsare peteret. Ejus dextramprehendit. Rogat finem orandi faciat. Utî injuriam ejus precibus condonet. Divitiacus obsecrare Cæsarem cœpit. Scire se, illa esse vera. Quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi posset. Quibus ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese amore fraterno commoveri.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

When weeping he sought these things from Cæsar. Having consoled him, he takes his right hand. He shows that his favor was so much with himself. Almost to his destruction. That he, however, was moved by the opinion of the common people. If any thing had happened to him. It was done with his consent. Which he did use. He began to entreat.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns are *qui*—*who*, with the compounds *quicunque*—*whoever*, and *quisquis*—*whoever*. They are always in the same gender and number as the nouns to which they relate.

*Qui*—*who*, is thus declined :

SINGULAR.

| Masculine.                           | Feminine.              | Neuter.                    |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Nom.</i> Qui.....              | who, quæ.....          | who, quod..... which.      |
| 2. <i>Gen.</i> Cujus.....            | whose, cujus.....      | whose, cujus.....of which. |
| 3. <i>Dat.</i> Cui.....to whom,      | cui.....to whom,       | cui.....to which.          |
| 4. <i>Acc.</i> Quem.....             | whom, quam.....        | whom, quod..... which.     |
| 5. <i>Voc.</i> .....                 | [whom, .....           | [whom, ..... [which.       |
| 6. <i>Ab.</i> Quo.....in, with, &c., | quâ.....in, with, &c., | quo.....in, with, &c.,     |

## PLURAL.

| Masculine.                    | Feminine.                  | Neuter.                                   |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| pl. 1. <i>N.</i> Qui.....     | who, quæ.....              | who, quæ..... which.                      |
| pl. 2. <i>G.</i> Quorum.....  | whose, quarum.....         | whose, quorum..... of which.              |
| pl. 3. <i>D.</i> Quibus.....  | to whom, quibus.....       | to whom, quibus..... to which.            |
| pl. 4. <i>A.</i> Quos.....    | whom, quas.....            | whom, quæ..... which.                     |
| pl. 5. <i>V.</i> .....        | [whom, .....               | [whom, ..... [which.                      |
| pl. 6. <i>Ab.</i> Quibus..... | in, with, &c., quibus..... | in, with, &c., quibus..... in, with, &c., |

The nominative masculine singular and plural are alike. The nominative feminine singular and plural, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural, are alike. The genitive singular, in all genders, is the same. The dative singular, in all genders, is the same. The dative and ablative plural, in all genders, are the same.

*Quicunque*—*whoever*, is declined like *qui*, *cunque* being added to the end of each case : as, *cujuscunque*.

In *quisquis*—*whoever*, both words are declined : as, *quem-quem*.

*Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders. *Queis* or *quib* occurs for *quibus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

These relative pronouns are denoted by *ui* for the masculine, *uæ* for the feminine, and *od* for the neuter.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are *quis* and *qui*—*who*, *what* ; *quisnam* and *quinam*—*who*, *what* ; likewise, *ecquis*, *ecquisnam*, *numquis*—*is there any* ; also, *cujus*, *cujæ*, *cujum*—*whose* ; and *cujas*, *cujatis*—*of what country*.

*Qui* is declined like the relative *qui* ; so also *quinam*, *nam* being added to all the cases.

*Quis* is declined like *qui*, except that it has *quis* in the nominative singular masculine, and *quid* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter ; this variation is denoted by *uis* and by *id*. *Quisnam* is declined like *quis* ; so also *ecquis*, *ecquisnam*, *numquis*—*is there any* ; *ecquis* has some-

times *ecqua* in the nominative singular feminine; *numquis*, or *nunquis*, has *nunqua* in the neuter plural nominative and accusative.

## Lesson 47.

<sup>is.6</sup> Eodem <sup>cl.6</sup> die <sup>a.1</sup> factus <sup>or-orig.1</sup> certior (c.)\*\* ab  
<sup>1</sup>On (the) <sup>1</sup>same day | being-made sure by  
<sup>or-orig.1</sup> exploratoribus  
 (the) scouts [being informed with certainty by the scouts]  
<sup>is-is.pl.4</sup> hostes <sup>con</sup>sedisse <sup>sub</sup>  
 (that) (the) enemy had-set-down | under [at the foot of]  
<sup>no-nis.4</sup> montem, (m.)\*\* <sup>octo</sup> <sup>pl.1</sup> millia <sup>no-pl.2</sup> passuum ab  
 (the) mountain, eight thousand paces from  
<sup>m-pl.6</sup> castris <sup>sc.2</sup> ipsius; <sup>misit</sup>,  
 | the camp of-him [from his, Caesar's, camp]; he-sent (those),  
<sup>ui-pl.1</sup> qui <sup>cognoscerent</sup>, <sup>is-is.1</sup> qualis <sup>esset</sup> <sup>1</sup>natura  
 who might-ascertain, what might-be (the) nature  
<sup>no-nis.2</sup> montis, et <sup>is-is.1</sup> qualis <sup>no.1</sup> ascensus in <sup>no.6</sup> circuitu  
 'of (the) 'mountain and what (the) ascent in (the) circuit  
 Renuntiatum est esse <sup>is-is.4</sup> facilem. De <sup>6</sup> tertiâ  
 (thereof). It-was-announced to-be easy. At (the) third  
<sup>6</sup> vigiliâ, jubet <sup>a.4</sup> Titum <sup>a.4</sup> Labienum <sup>a.4</sup> legatum, pro  
 watch, he-orders (his) lieutenant, | for  
<sup>or-orig.6</sup> prætore, <sup>cum</sup> <sup>pl.6</sup> duobus  
 pretor [with pretorian power], with two  
<sup>is-is.pl.6</sup> legionibus, (f.)\*\* et <sup>is-pl.6</sup> iis <sup>x-cis.pl.6</sup> ducibus,  
 legions, and (the) same guides,  
<sup>ui-pl.1</sup> qui cognoverant <sup>er-ineris.4</sup> iter, (n.)\*\* <sup>ascendere</sup> <sup>m.4</sup> summum  
 who knew (the) road, to-ascend (the) highest  
<sup>m.4</sup> jugum <sup>no-nis.2</sup> montis; (m.)\*\* <sup>ostendit</sup> <sup>id.1</sup> quid sit <sup>m.2</sup> sui  
 top 'of (the) 'mountain; he-shows what was his  
<sup>m.2</sup> consilii. <sup>no.1</sup> Ipse de <sup>6</sup> quartâ <sup>6</sup> vigiliâ contendit  
 intention. He-himself about (the) fourth watch hastened  
 ad <sup>is-pl.4</sup> eos <sup>is.6</sup> eodem <sup>er-ineris.6</sup> itinere, (m.)\*\* <sup>od.6</sup> quo  
 to them 'by (the) 'same road, by-which  
<sup>is-is.pl.1</sup> hostes <sup>ierant</sup>; <sup>que</sup> <sup>mittit</sup> <sup>is-is.4</sup> omnem <sup>no.4</sup> equitatum  
 (the) enemy had-gone; and sends all (the) cavalry  
 ante <sup>se.6</sup> <sup>a.1</sup> Publius <sup>a.1</sup> Considius, <sup>ui.1</sup> qui habebatur  
 before him. Publius Considius, who was-held

<sup>a.1</sup> peritissimus (*s.*)<sup>a.2</sup> <sup>is-a.2</sup> militaris <sup>a.2</sup> rei, et fuerat in  
most-skilled (in) military affairs, and had-been in  
<sup>a.6</sup> exercitu <sup>a.2</sup> Lucii <sup>2</sup> Syllae, et postea <sup>a.2</sup> Marci  
(the) army of-Lucius Syllae, and afterwards (in that) of-Marcus  
<sup>a.2</sup> Crassi, praemittitur cum <sup>or-orig.pl.</sup> exploratoribus.  
Crassus, is-sent-forward with (the) scouts.

## Lesson 48.

Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub montem consedisse, millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset natura montis, et qualis in circuitu adscensus, qui cognoscerent misit; renunciatum est, facilem esse. De tertiâ vigiliâ Titum Labienum legatum, pro prætore, cum duabus legionibus, et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Syllæ, et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus, præmittitur.

### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 47 AND 48.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

|          |               |            |            |         |       |           |
|----------|---------------|------------|------------|---------|-------|-----------|
| Vigiliâ. | Dux.          | Iter.      | Mons.      | Jubet.  | Quid. | Ipse.     |
| Eodem.   | Hostes.       | Contendit. | Equitatus. | Mittit. | Peri- | tissimus. |
|          | Exploratores. | Passus.    | Octo.      | Qualis. | Ad-   | scensus.  |
|          | Misit.        | Facilis.   |            |         |       |           |

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Mountain. Paces. Who. Ascent. Circuit. Easy.  
 Guides. Third. Two. Watch. The same. He orders.  
 Day. Scouts. Enemy. He is sent forward. They knew.  
 The highest. Road. Top. What. He hastened. He  
 sends. Cavalry. Most skilled. Army.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Titum Labienum summum jugum montis adscendere jubet. Ipse eodem itinere ad eos contendit. Equitatum ante se mittit. Publius Considius cum exploratoribus præmittitur. Certior factus, hostes sub montem consedissee. Qui cognoscerent, misit. Qualis esset natura montis. Renunciatum est, facile esse.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Considius is sent forward with the scouts. Who knew the road. He shows what his intention was. He himself hastened to them. By the same road he sends all the cavalry before him. Who was held most skilled in military affairs. At the foot of the mountain. He sent those, who might ascertain what might be the nature of the mountain. It was announced to be easy. With two legions and the same guides.

#### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns are *meus*—my, *tuus*—thy, *suus*—his, *noster*—our, *vester*—yours, and *cujus*—whose. *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus* and *cujus*, are declined and designated like *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*—good; *noster* and *vester* like *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*—slothful. *Pte* is sometimes added to the ablative singular of possessive pronouns: as, *suapte manu*—by his own hand. *Met* is sometimes added to *meus*, &c.

#### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns are *aliquis*—some one, *siquis*—if any, *nequis*—lest any, *quisque*—every one, *quisquam*—any one, *quispiam*—some one, *unusquisque*—each, *aliquipiam*—any, some, *quidam*—a certain one, *quilibet* and *quivis*—any one you please.

*Aliquis* is declined like *quis*, except that it has *aliqua* in the nominative singular feminine, and in the nominative and

accusative plural neuter; also, in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, it has *aliquod* or *aliquid*.

*Siquis* and *nequis* are declined like *aliquis*, but sometimes have *siquæ*, *nequæ*, in the nominative singular feminine.

*Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*, with some slight variation in the nominative and accusative neuter singular.

*Unusquisque* is declined like *unus* and *quis*: as, nominative, *unusquisque*; genitive, *uniuscujusque*.

*Quidam*, *quilibet*, and *quivis*, are declined like *qui*. *Quidam* has generally an *n* before *d*, in the accusative singular and genitive plural: as, accusative singular, *quendam*; genitive plural, *quorundam*.

## VERBS.

THE changes that a verb undergoes are called *conjugations*. There are four conjugations. The first has *ā* (long) before the infinitive active present: as, *amāre*—*to love*; the second has *ē* (long) before the same: as, *monēre*—*to advise*; the third has *ĕ* (short) before the same: as, *regĕre*—*to rule*; and the fourth has *ī* (long) before the same: as, *dudīre*—*to hear*.

To the conjugations of Latin verbs belong *voices*, *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*; besides *participles*, *gerunds*, and *supines*.

VOICES.—There are two voices, *active* and *passive*: as, active, *amo*—*I love*; passive, *amor*—*I am loved*.

MOODS.—There are four moods:—1st, the *indicative*, which absolutely asserts an action: as, *amo*—*I love*; 2d, the *subjunctive*, which expresses an action as modified by some condition or circumstance, or asserts an action in an indirect or not absolute manner: as, *amem*—*I may love*, *si amem*—*if I love*; or indirect assertion, *amem*—*I love*; 3d, the *imperative mood*, which commands: as, *ama*—*love thou*; and 4th,

the *infinitive mood*, which expresses an action in an indefinite or unlimited sense, and has neither number nor person.

In Latin, there is often a peculiar construction, or use, of the infinitive, namely: when the nominative of the verb in the indicative, in English, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the indicative, in English, is put in the infinitive. This construction is denoted in the interlinear translations above, in English, by placing (*that*) in parentheses, before the sentence: as, *hostes consedissee*—(*that*) *the enemy had set down*. So that, in English, this form of the infinitive is expressed by the indicative, with *that* commencing the sentence.

**TENSES.**—There are six tenses in Latin, denoted by their termination in the active voice:—1st, the *present*: as, *amo*—*I love*, or *am loving*; 2d, the *imperfect*: as, *amabam*—*I was loving*, or *did love*, in the sense of not having completed the action; 3d, *future*: as, *amabo*—*I shall love*; 4th, the *perfect*, which denotes an action finished: as, *amavi*—*I have loved*; 5th, the *pluperfect*: as, *amaveram*—*I had loved*; 6th, *future perfect*: as, *amavero*—*I shall have loved*.

**NUMBERS.**—There are two numbers, the *singular* and *plural*.

**PERSONS.**—There are three persons, the *first*, *second*, and *third*.

**PARTICIPLES.**—Under this name adjective participles are denoted: that is, uniting the sense of an adjective with that of the verb, and having voice and tense, but no persons, and are declined like an adjective. There are four participles, namely:—two in the active voice: as, present, *amans*—*loving*; future, *amaturus*—*about to love*; and two in the passive voice: as, perfect, *amatus*—*loved*, or *having been loved*; future, *amandus*—*to be loved*.

**GERUNDS.**—Under this name noun participles are denoted: that is, uniting the sense of a noun with that of the verb. The gerund is declined like a noun of the second declension, but has no nominative and no plural; as, *amandi*—*of loving*.

SUPINES.—There are two supines, the supine in *um*, and the supine in *u*. The supine in *um* is a modified meaning of the noun participle; its principal meaning is to be about to be occupied in the action, or 'carrying on of the action. It is generally used after a verb of motion or transfer: as, *pabulatum mittere*—to send a foraging. The supine in *u* may be considered as a species of adverb participles, and is principally used with, or to limit, or modify adjectives: as, *mirabile dictu*—wonderful to tell, or to be told, or wonderful in telling, or wonderful, tellingly.

It is in the first person singular, indicative mood, active voice, that words are to be looked for in the dictionary: as, *amo, moneo, audio*.

There are three principal tenses, or forms, from which all the other tenses and forms, in the different voices and moods, are derived, namely: first, the *present active indicative*, or the *present infinitive* of the same; second, the *perfect active indicative*; and third, the supine in *um*.

From the present active indicative, or present active infinitive, are derived, or formed, the present, the imperfect, and the future tenses, in each voice; the present and imperfect subjunctive of each voice; the present infinitive of each voice; also, the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

From the perfect active indicative are derived, or formed, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active voice; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, active voice; and the perfect infinitive, active voice.

From the supine in *um* are derived, or formed, the supines in *um* and *u*, the perfect participle, and all the compound tenses of the passive voice, formed by this participle and *sum*; likewise, the future active participle; also, the future infinitive passive, formed by the supine in *um*, and the passive infinitive of the verb *iri*, and the future active infinitive, formed by the future active participle and *esse*.

These principal forms, from which all the other tenses are



derived, are denoted in the dictionary : that is, the terminations of the infinitive, perfect, and supine, are placed after the indicative present, first person, active voice.

In order to indicate the above different parts and modifications of the verb, the following signs and abbreviations are used :

**VOICES.**—*P* placed before the numbers indicating tense, or before the sign of the subjunctive mood, denotes the passive voice ; the active voice does not require to be indicated. When the verb is deponent, *d* is used, in place of *p*.

**MOODS.**—The indicative mood does not require to be particularly designated. The subjunctive mood is denoted by an *s*, or *sb*, placed before the numbers indicating tense. The imperative mood has an *im*, placed in like manner ; and the infinitive an *in*.

**TENSES.**—Tenses are denoted by numbers placed in parentheses before the verb : as, <sup>(1)</sup> indicates the present tense, <sup>(2)</sup> the imperfect tense, <sup>(3)</sup> the future, <sup>(4)</sup> the perfect, <sup>(5)</sup> the pluperfect, and <sup>(6)</sup> the future perfect.

**NUMBERS AND PERSONS.**—Persons are denoted by placing <sup>1</sup> for the first person, <sup>2</sup> for the second person, and <sup>3</sup> for the third person, in brackets <sup>(1)</sup>, after the verb. The plural is indicated by placing *pl.* before these numbers : as, <sup>(1)</sup> *amamus* <sup>(pl. 1)</sup>, *we love*. The singular requires no sign : as, <sup>(1)</sup> *amo*. <sup>(1)</sup>

**PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.**—Participles are denoted by placing *par.*, in brackets, after the verb : as, <sup>(1)</sup> *amans* <sup>[par.]</sup> ; the declension of the participle is placed next it, after the sign of tense : as, <sup>(1), no-nis. 1</sup> *amans* <sup>[part.]</sup>. Gerunds are, in like manner, indicated by placing [*ger.*] after the verb. These gerunds have not the signs of tense, but only those of declension before them. The supine in *um* is denoted by placing [*um*] in brackets after the verb, and that in *u* by, in like manner, placing [*u*].

The letters, or terminations, indicating the three principal tenses or parts, from which all the other tenses and forms are

derived, are placed first before the verb : as, <sup>1</sup>*ar-avi-atum.*<sup>(1)</sup> *amo*<sup>(1)</sup>, *I love*.

The first conjugation is denoted by *ar-avi-atum* ; *ar* denoting either the first person singular, present indicative active, by dropping *ar* and adding *o* : as, *amo*—*I love* ; or the infinitive of the same, by adding *e* : as, *amare*—*to love*. When any irregular form of this conjugation occurs, other letters must be added to all or some of these three principal tenses or forms : as, in *do*—*I give*, *ar-edi-atum* indicating that these, and the tenses formed from them, are added to the commencing *d* of *do*.

The second conjugation is denoted by *er-ui-atum*, or by *er-eui-etum* ; the *r* of the first form is dropped, and *o* is added, to form the present tense, first person singular, and *e* is added to the end of *er* for the present infinitive. Besides these, there are irregularities in these principal forms, which will require to be indicated by other or additional letters.

The third conjugation is very irregular as respects these three principal tenses, or forms, especially in the perfect and supine. The conjugation itself is always denoted by *er* for the present and infinitive present ; the *er* being dropped, and *o* added for the present, first person singular, and an *e* added to *er* for the infinitive ; but, on account of the great irregularities, the *er* would often require more letters before it : as in *rego*—*to rule*, *gēr-xi-etum* ; making *rego*, *regere*, *rexī*, *rectum*. Sometimes the perfect begins with a different letter from the present, when it may be necessary to put the entire verb in italics to denote this : as in *ago*—*to act*, *gēr-egi-etum* ; making *ago*, *agere*, *egi*, *actum*.

The fourth conjugation is denoted by *ir-ivi-atum* ; the *r* of the first form *ir* is dropped, and *o* added to form the first person present singular, and *e* is added to the end of *ir* to form the infinitive. Those verbs of this conjugation that are irregular, are designated as above.

When, in any of the four conjugations, a letter, or letters, that belong to the first principal part, are dropped in the

second or third principal part, or in both, such dropped letter, or letters, are placed in parentheses ( ) before the first principal part: as in *jubeo*—*I order*, (*b*) *ēr-ssi-ssum*; making *jubeo*, *jubēre*, *jussi*, *jussum*.

A perpendicular line is placed before one of these principal tenses, or forms, to denote that the tense or form of the verb is derived from it: as, *ar- | avi-atum.*<sup>(5)</sup> *amaveram*<sup>(5)</sup>, *I had loved*; or, *| ar-avi-atum.*<sup>(3)</sup> *amabat*<sup>(3)</sup>, *he did love, or was loving*.

When the present differs altogether from the infinitive, both are denoted entire in italics, between parentheses: as in *sum*—*I am* (*sum-esse*), *e-ui*; or, as in *eo*—*I go* (*eo-iri*), *ir-ivi-itum*; all the principal parts being in this last example entire, and in italics. When any principal part differs entirely from its regular termination, it will be necessary to substitute the entire verb, in italics, therefor: as in *do*—*I give*, *ar-dedi-datum*; making *do*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Present Indicative. | Present Infinitive. | Perfect Indicative.  | Supine.               |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Amo.</i>         | <i>Amare (ar).</i>  | <i>Amavi (avi).</i>  | <i>Amatum (atum).</i> |
| <i>I-love.</i>      | <i>to-love.</i>     | <i>I-have-loved.</i> | <i>a-loving.</i>      |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*Ar.*" (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., love.*

## SINGULAR.

## Terminations.

|                                               |            |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------|
| (1) <i>Amo</i> [1], <i>I love</i> .....       | <i>o.</i>  |
| (1) <i>Amas</i> [2], <i>thou lovest</i> ..... | <i>as.</i> |
| (1) <i>Amat</i> [3], <i>he loves</i> .....    | <i>at.</i> |

## PLURAL.

|                                                        |              |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| (1) <i>Amamus</i> [pl. 1], <i>we love</i> .....        | <i>amus.</i> |
| (1) <i>Amatis</i> [pl. 2], <i>ye or you love</i> ..... | <i>atis.</i> |
| (1) <i>Amant</i> [pl. 3], <i>they love</i> .....       | <i>ant.</i>  |

*"Ar."* (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was loving, or did love.*

SINGULAR.

Terminations.

|                                                      |       |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| (2) Amabam [1], I was loving, or did love.....       | abam. |
| (2) Amabas [2], thou wast loving, or didst love..... | abas. |
| (2) Amabat [3], he was loving, or did love.....      | abat. |

PLURAL.

|                                                         |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| (2) Amabamus [pl. 1], we were loving, or did love.....  | abamus. |
| (2) Amabatis [pl. 2], you were loving, or did love..... | abatis. |
| (2) Amabant [pl. 3], they were loving, or did love..... | abant.  |

*"Ar."* (3) *Future Tense. I, &c., shall or will love.*

SINGULAR.

|                                     |       |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| (3) Amabo [1], I shall love.....    | abo.  |
| (3) Amabis [2], thou wilt love..... | abis. |
| (3) Amabit [3], he will love.....   | abit. |

PLURAL.

|                                          |         |
|------------------------------------------|---------|
| (3) Amabimus [pl. 1], we shall love..... | abimus. |
| (3) Amabitis [pl. 2], you will love..... | abitis. |
| (3) Amabunt [pl. 3], they will love..... | abunt.  |

*"Avi."* (4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., have loved, or loved.*

SINGULAR.

|                                        |           |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|
| (4) Amavi [1], I have loved.....       | avi.      |
| (4) Amavisti [2], thou hast loved..... | a[vi]sti. |
| (4) Amavit [3], he has loved.....      | avit.     |

PLURAL.

|                                                        |                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| (4) Amavimus [pl. 1], we have loved.....               | avimus.             |
| (4) Amavistis [pl. 2], you have loved.....             | a[vi]stis.          |
| (4) Amaverunt or amavere [pl. 3], they have loved..... | a[ve]runt or avere. |

*"Avi."* (5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had loved.*

SINGULAR.

|                                         |           |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------|
| (5) Amaveram [1], I had loved.....      | a[ve]ram. |
| (5) Amaveras [2], thou hadst loved..... | a[ve]ras. |
| (5) Amaverat [3], he had loved.....     | a[ve]rat. |

PLURAL.

|                                            |             |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------|
| (5) Amaveramus [pl. 1], we had loved.....  | a[ve]ramus. |
| (5) Amaveratis [pl. 2], you had loved..... | a[ve]ratis. |
| (5) Amaverant [pl. 3], they had loved..... | a[ve]rant.  |

"*Avi.*" (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have loved.*

| SINGULAR.                                               | Terminations. |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| (6) <i>Amavero</i> [1], I shall have loved.....         | a[ve]ro.      |
| (6) <i>Amaveris</i> [2], thou wilt have loved.....      | a[ve]ris.     |
| (6) <i>Amaverit</i> [3], he will have loved.....        | a[ve]rit.     |
| PLURAL.                                                 |               |
| (6) <i>Amaverimus</i> [pl. 1], we shall have loved..... | a[ve]rimus.   |
| (6) <i>Amaveritis</i> [pl. 2], you will have loved..... | a[ve]ritis.   |
| (6) <i>Amaverint</i> [pl. 3], they will have loved..... | a[ve]rint.    |

In the above it will be seen, that the <sup>(1)</sup> present, <sup>(2)</sup> imperfect, and <sup>(3)</sup> future tenses, with their numbers and persons, are formed from the first principal part, *ar*; and that the <sup>(4)</sup> perfect, <sup>(5)</sup> pluperfect, and <sup>(6)</sup> perfect future tenses, with their numbers and persons, are formed from the second principal part, *avi*.

In the <sup>(1)</sup> present tense, the *ar* is changed into *o* in the first person singular, into *as* in the second, and into *at* in the third person singular; in the plural, this *ar* is changed into *amus* in the first, into *atis* in the second, and into *ant* in the third person.

In the <sup>(2)</sup> imperfect tense, the *ar* is changed, in the singular, into *abam* in the first person, into *abas* in the second person, and into *abat* in the third person; in the plural, the *ar* is changed into *abamus* in the first person, into *abatis* in the second person, and into *abant* in the third person.

In the <sup>(3)</sup> future tense, this *ar* is changed, in the singular, into *abo* in the first person, into *abis* in the second person, and into *abit* in the third person; in the plural, it is changed into *abimus* in the first person, in the second into *abitis*, and in the third into *abunt*.

In the <sup>(4)</sup> perfect tense, *avi* is the same as the second principal part, and denotes the first person singular; in the second person, *sti* is added to *avi*; and in the third, *t* is added to the same; in the plural, *mus* is added to *avi* in the

first person, *stis* in the second person, and in the third the *i* of *avi* is changed into *e*, and *runt* or *re* added.

In the <sup>(6)</sup> pluperfect tense, the *i* of *avi* is changed into *e* in all the numbers and persons. In the singular, first person, *ram* is added to this *e*, in the second *ras*, and in the third *rat*; in the plural, *ramus* is added for the first person, *ratis* for the second, and *rant* for the third.

In the <sup>(6)</sup> future perfect tense, the *i* of *avi* is changed into *e* in all the numbers and persons. In the singular, first person, *ro* is added to this *e*, in the second *ris*, and in the third *rit*; in the plural, *rimus* is added to the first person, *ritis* to the second, and *rint* to the third.

*Av* is properly the distinctive form of the second principal part, the *i* being added to form the first person singular.

In the perfect tense, in the second person singular, *amavisti*, the *vi* in the termination, *a[vi]sti*, is placed in brackets; this denotes that the *vi* may be omitted, and the second person singular contracted into *amâsti*, instead of *amavisti*; so, in like manner, the *vi* in the second person plural may be omitted, and *amavistis* contracted into *amâstis*. In the third person plural of the same, the *ve* in brackets in the termination may be omitted, and *amaverunt* contracted into *amârunt*.

In the pluperfect tense, the *ve* in brackets, in the terminations of all the numbers and persons, may be omitted, and the verb contracted: as, *amaveram* into *amâram*, *amaveras* into *amâras*, &c., &c.

In the future perfect, the *ve* in brackets, in the terminations of all the numbers and persons, may be omitted, and the verb contracted: as, *amavero* into *amâro*, *amaveris* into *amâris*, &c., &c.

These contractions only take place when *s* follows *vi*, or when *r* follows *ve*. They are here denoted by a circumflex over the vowel preceding the *s* or *r*.

## Lesson 49.

<sup>1</sup>Ego<sup>(1)●●</sup> <sup>ul-clia.1</sup>consul <sup>video</sup> <sup>ic-pl.4</sup>hosce, <sup>et</sup>  
 I (the) consul see these (persons), and  
<sup>| ar-avi-atum.(1)</sup>rogo<sup>(1)●●</sup> <sup>sententiam</sup> <sup>de</sup> <sup>republica;</sup>  
 I-ask (their) opinion concerning (the) republic;  
<sup>et</sup> <sup>nondum</sup> <sup>| ar-avi-atum.(1)</sup>vulnero<sup>(1)●●</sup> <sup>is-pl.4</sup>eos  
 and | do not yet wound those  
<sup>x-clia.6</sup>voce,  
<sup>with (my)</sup> voice [I do not yet publicly charge them with their guilt],  
<sup>ul-pl.4</sup>quos <sup>oportebat</sup> <sup>trucidari</sup> <sup>m.5</sup>ferro.  
 whom it-did-behave to-be-slaughtered with iron [the sword].  
<sup>Igitur</sup> <sup>Catilina</sup> <sup>fuisti</sup> <sup>apud</sup> <sup>Leccam,</sup>  
 Therefore O Catiline you-were at Lecca's (house),  
<sup>is.6</sup>illā <sup>x-clia.6</sup>nocte; <sup>distribuisti</sup> <sup>re-rtia-pl.4</sup>partes <sup>Italīæ;</sup>  
 on that night; you-distributed (the) parts of-Italy (to  
<sup>statuisti</sup> <sup>quō</sup> <sup>placeret</sup>  
 your followers; you-appointed whither it-might-please (you) (for)  
<sup>ul-pl.4</sup>quemque <sup>proficisci;</sup> <sup>delegisti</sup> <sup>ul-pl.4</sup>quos  
 each-one to-go; you-selected (those) whom  
<sup>relinqueres</sup> <sup>2</sup>Romæ <sup>ul-pl.4</sup>quos <sup>educeres</sup>  
 you-might-leave at-Rome (and those) whom you-might-lead-out  
<sup>cum.</sup> <sup>te.;</sup><sup>(2)●●</sup> <sup>descripsisti</sup> <sup>re-rtia-pl.4</sup>partes  
 (of the city) with you; you-designated (the) parts  
<sup>is-bis.2</sup>urbis <sup>ad</sup> <sup>m-pl.4</sup>incendia; <sup>ar- | avi-atum.(4)</sup>confirmasti<sup>(2)●●</sup>  
 of-the-city for conflagration; you-affirmed, (that)  
<sup>te</sup><sup>(2)●●</sup> <sup>m.4</sup>ipsum <sup>esse</sup> <sup>jam</sup> <sup>exiturum;</sup> <sup>dixisti</sup>  
 you yourself were now about-to-depart; you-said (that)  
<sup>esse</sup> <sup>etiam</sup> <sup>tum</sup> <sup>paullulum</sup> <sup>2</sup>moræ <sup>2</sup>tibi<sup>(2)●●</sup> <sup>quōd</sup>  
 there-was even then (a) very-little delay to-you, because  
<sup>1</sup>ego<sup>(1)●●</sup> <sup>viverem.</sup> <sup>pl.1</sup>Duo <sup>is-pl.1</sup>Romani <sup>is-rtia-pl.1</sup>equites  
 I. (yet) lived. Two Roman knights  
<sup>reperi sunt,</sup> <sup>ul-pl.1</sup>qui <sup>liberarent</sup> <sup>te</sup><sup>(2)●●</sup> <sup>istā</sup> <sup>6</sup>curā,  
 were found, who would-free you from-that care,  
<sup>et</sup> <sup>pollicerentur</sup> <sup>pl.4</sup>sese<sup>(3)●●</sup> <sup>interfecturos</sup> <sup>me</sup><sup>(1)●●</sup> <sup>in</sup>  
 and promised (that) they would-kill me in  
<sup>m.6</sup>meo <sup>m.6</sup>lectulo <sup>6</sup>illā <sup>x-clia.6</sup>nocte <sup>m.6</sup>ipsā, <sup>paullo</sup> <sup>ante</sup>  
 my bed on-that night itself, (a) little before  
<sup>x-clia.4</sup>lucem. <sup>1</sup>Ego<sup>(1)●●</sup> <sup>comperi</sup> <sup>is-pl.4</sup>omnia <sup>is-pl.4</sup>hæc,  
 (day) light. I discovered all these (things),

|                          |                                |                     |                     |                     |                     |                    |                         |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------------|------------|------|----|
| etiam                    | ar. <sup>6</sup>               | vestro              | us. <sup>6</sup>    | cœtu                | vix dum             | dimisso:           | munivi                  |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
| even                     |                                | your                | assembly            | 'being scarcely yet | 'dismissed:         | I-fortified        |                         |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
| atque                    | ar-   avi-atum. <sup>(4)</sup> | firmavi             | ( <sup>1</sup> )    | ••                  | 'meam               | 'domum (f.)        | ••                      |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
| and                      |                                | strengthened        |                     | my                  | house               |                    |                         |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
| or-oris.pl. <sup>6</sup> |                                | majoribus (c.)      | ••                  | m.pl. <sup>6</sup>  | præsidiis;          | exclusi            | la.pl. <sup>4</sup> eos |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
|                          |                                | with-stronger       |                     |                     | guards;             | I-excluded         | those                   |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
| vi.pl. <sup>4</sup>      |                                | quos                | 'tu                 | ( <sup>2</sup> )    | ••                  | miseras ad         | 'me                     | ( <sup>1</sup> )      | ••        | ar-avi-   atum. | salutatam  | [um] | •• |
|                          |                                | whom                | you                 |                     |                     | had-sent to        | me                      |                       |           |                 | a-saluting |      |    |
| mane;                    |                                | quum                | la.pl. <sup>1</sup> | illi                | se.pl. <sup>1</sup> | ipsi venissent,    |                         |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
| 'in (the)                |                                | 'morning; when      |                     | those (persons)     | themselves          | had-come,          |                         |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
| (and concerning)         |                                | ui.pl. <sup>4</sup> | quos                | 'ego                | ( <sup>1</sup> )    | ••                 | jam                     | prædixeram            |           |                 |            |      |    |
|                          |                                |                     | whom                | I                   | 'had                | already            |                         | 'foretold             |           |                 |            |      |    |
| a.pl. <sup>3</sup>       |                                | multis              | ac                  | a.pl. <sup>3</sup>  | summīs              | r.pl. <sup>3</sup> | virīs                   |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |
|                          |                                | to-many             | and                 | 'to (the)           | 'highest            |                    | men                     | (that)                |           |                 |            |      |    |
| esse venturos            |                                | ad                  | 'me                 | ( <sup>1</sup> )    | ••                  | la. <sup>4</sup>   | id                      | us-oris. <sup>2</sup> | temporis. |                 |            |      |    |
| they-were-about-to-come  |                                | to                  | me                  | (at)                | that                |                    | time.                   |                       |           |                 |            |      |    |

The stroke before | *ar*, in *rogo*, denotes that it is formed from the first principal part, as also *ar*, in *vulnero*. The stroke before | *avi*, in *confirmāsti*, denotes that it is derived from the second principal part, and the circumflex over *ā*, that it is contracted from *confirmavisti*.

The learner, as in the declensions, must make himself gradually acquainted with the conjugations. In the above lesson, he is only to conjugate the indicative mood, active voice.

### Lesson 50.

Hosce ego video consul, et de republicā sententiam rogo; et, quos ferro trucidari oportebat, eos nondum voce vulnero. Fuisti igitur apud Leccam illā nocte, Catilina: distribuisti partes Italiæ: statuisti quò quemque proficisci placeret; delegisti quos Romæ relinqueres; quos tecum educeres; descripsisti urbis partes ad incendia; confirmāsti, te ipsum jam esse exiturum; dixisti paullulum tibi esse etiam tum moræ, quòd ego viverem. Reperti sunt duo equites Romani, qui te istā curā liberarent, et sese illā ipsā nocte paullo ante lucem me meo in lectulo interfecturos pollicerentur. Hæc



ego omnia, vix dum etiam coetu vestro dimisso, comperi; domum meam majoribus præsidiis munivi atque firmavi; exclusi eos, quos tu mane ad me salutatum miseras, quum illi ipsi venissent; quos ego jam multis ac summis viris ad me id temporis venturos esse prædixeram.

EXERCISES ON LESSONS 49 AND 50.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Equites. Nox. Lux. Coetus. Firmavi. Domus. Quibus. Salutatum. Salutabo. Illi. Viris. Tempus. Rogat. Ferrum. Vulnerant. Confirmasti. Confirmaverat. Mora.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

I. All. Scarcely. They strengthened. House. Guards. In the morning. Already. Many. City. Conflagration. You. You said. Who. Care. Night. I asked. They will ask. Not yet. He wounds. To be slaughtered. Whither. To go. I see.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Tu mane ad me miseras. Exclusi eos quum venissent. Multis viris prædixeram. Reperti sunt, qui te istâ curâ liberarent. Me interfecturos pollicerentur. Hæc ego omnia comperi. Domum meam munivi atque firmavi. Hosce ego video. De republica sententiam rogat. Eos nondum voce vulneravi. Fuisti apud Læcam. Delegisti quos tecum educeres. Quò proficisci placeret. Descripsisti urbis partes ad incendia. Confirmavit se ipsum esse exiturum. Paullulum tibi esse tum moræ. Quòd ego viverem.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

That they were about to come to me. A little before daylight. Your assembly being scarcely yet dismissed. I fortified and strengthened my house. Whom he had sent to

me a saluting. When those persons had come. You designated the parts of the city for conflagration. He affirmed that he was about to depart. You said that there was a very little delay to you. Two Roman knights were found. They promised that they would kill me. I discovered all these things. You strengthened your house. When those had come, whom I foretold.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—ACTIVE VOICE.

"Ar." sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may love, if I love, &c.*

| SINGULAR.                                             | Terminations. |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (1) Amem [1], I may, &c., love.....               | em.           |
| sb. (1) Ames [2], thou mayst, &c., love.....          | es.           |
| sb. (1) Amet [3], he may, &c., love.....              | et.           |
| PLURAL.                                               |               |
| sb. (1) Amemus [pl. 1], we may, &c., love.....        | emus.         |
| sb. (1) Ametis [pl. 2], ye or you may, &c., love..... | etis.         |
| sb. (1) Ament [pl. 3], they may, &c., love.....       | ent.          |

"Ar." sb. (2) *Imperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should love.*

| SINGULAR.                                           |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------|
| sb. (2) Amarem [1], I might, &c., love.....         | arem.   |
| sb. (2) Amares [2], thou mightst, &c., love.....    | ares.   |
| sb. (2) Amaret [3], he might, &c., love.....        | aret.   |
| PLURAL.                                             |         |
| sb. (2) Amaremus [pl. 1], we might, &c., love.....  | aremus. |
| sb. (2) Amaretis [pl. 2], you might, &c., love..... | aretis. |
| sb. (2) Amarent [pl. 3], they might, &c., love..... | arent.  |

"Avi." sb. (4) *Perfect. I may, &c., have loved.*

| SINGULAR.                                           |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| sb. (4) Amaverim [1], I may have loved.....         | a[ve]rim.   |
| sb. (4) Amaveris [2], thou mayst have loved.....    | a[ve]ris.   |
| sb. (4) Amaverit [3], he may have loved.....        | a[ve]rit.   |
| PLURAL.                                             |             |
| sb. (4) Amaverimus [pl. 1], we may have loved.....  | a[ve]rimus. |
| sb. (4) Amaveritis [pl. 2], you may have loved..... | a[ve]ritis. |
| sb. (4) Amaverint [pl. 3], they may have loved..... | a[ve]rint.  |

"*Avi.*" sb. (5) *Pluperfect.* *I, &c., might, could, would, or should have loved.*

## SINGULAR.

## Terminations.

|                                                           |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| sb. (5) Amavissem [1], I might, &c., have loved.....      | a[vi]ssem. |
| sb. (5) Amavisses [2], thou mightst, &c., have loved..... | a[vi]sses. |
| sb. (5) Amavisset [3], he might, &c., have loved.....     | a[vi]sset. |

## PLURAL.

|                                                              |              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| sb. (5) Amavissemus [pl. 1], we might, &c., have loved.....  | a[vi]ssemus. |
| sb. (5) Amavissetis [pl. 2], you might, &c., have loved..... | a[vi]ssetis. |
| sb. (5) Amavisset [pl. 3], they might, &c., have loved.....  | a[vi]sset.   |

## "AR." IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

|                                      |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| im. Ama or amato [2], love thou..... | a or ato. |
| im. Amato [3], let him love.....     | ato.      |

## PLURAL.

|                                            |               |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------|
| im. Amate or amatote [pl. 2], love ye..... | ate or atote. |
| im. Amanto [pl. 3], let them love.....     | anto.         |

## IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ar." in. (1) *Present.*

|                             |      |
|-----------------------------|------|
| in. (1) Amare, to love..... | are. |
|-----------------------------|------|

"Avi." in. (4) *Perfect.*

|                                      |         |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| in. (4) Amavisse, to have loved..... | avisse. |
|--------------------------------------|---------|

"Atum." in. (3) *Future.*

|                                                 |              |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| in. (3) Amaturus esse, to be about to love..... | aturus esse. |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------|

## PARTICIPLE [PART.].

"Ar." (1) *Present.*

|                                            |      |
|--------------------------------------------|------|
| (1) ns-ntis. 1. Amans [part.], loving..... | ans. |
|--------------------------------------------|------|

"Atum." (3) *Future.*

|                                                      |              |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| (3) us-a-um. 1. Amaturus [part.], about to love..... | aturus-a-um. |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------|

"AR." GERUND [GER.].

Terminations.

|                                             |        |
|---------------------------------------------|--------|
| 2. <i>G. Amandi</i> , of loving.....        | andi.  |
| 3. <i>D. Amando</i> , to or for loving..... | ando.  |
| 4. <i>A. Amandum</i> , loving.....          | andum. |
| 6. <i>Ab. Amando</i> , by, &c., loving..... | ando.  |

"ATUM." SUPINE [UM] IN UM.

|                                   |       |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| <i>Amatum</i> [um], a loving..... | atum. |
|-----------------------------------|-------|

In the above, it will be perceived that the <sup>(1)</sup> present, and the <sup>(2)</sup> imperfect subjunctive, with the imperative, and all their numbers and persons, are formed from the first principal part, *ar*; also, the present infinitive, present participle, and the gerunds, are formed from the same principal part, *ar*. The <sup>(4)</sup> perfect and <sup>(6)</sup> pluperfect subjunctive, with their numbers and persons, are formed from the second principal part, *avi*; also, the <sup>(4)</sup> perfect infinitive is formed from the same. The future participle, the future infinitive, and the supine in *um*, are formed from the third principal part, *atum*.

In the present tense, the *ar* is changed into *em* in the first person singular subjunctive, in the second person singular into *es*, and in the third person singular into *et*; in the plural of the same, *ar* is changed into *emus* in the first, into *etis* in the second, and into *ent* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, subjunctive, the *ar* is changed, in the singular, into *arem* in the first, *ares* in the second, and *aret* in the third person; in the plural, the *ar* is changed into *aremus* in the first, into *aretis* in the second, and into *arent* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, subjunctive, *avi*, in the singular, is changed into *averim* in the first, into *averis* in the second, and into *averit* in the third person; in the plural, *avi* is changed into *averimus* in the first person, into *averitis* in the second person, and into *averint* in the third person.

In the pluperfect subjunctive, *avi*, in the singular, is changed into *avissem* in the first, into *avisses* in the second,

and into *avisset* in the third person; in the plural, *avi* is changed into *avissemus* in the first, into *avissetis* in the second, and into *avisent* in the third person.

In the imperative mood, in the singular, *ar* is changed into *a* or *ato* in the second, and into *ato* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *ate* or *atote* in the second, and into *anto* in the third person.

In the infinitive, in the present tense, *ar* is changed into *aré*; in the perfect tense, *avi* is changed into *avisse*; and in the future, *atum* is changed into *aturus*.

In the participle present, *ar* is changed into *ans*; in the future, *atum* is changed into *aturus*.

In the gerunds, *ar* is changed into Gen. *andi*, Dat. *ando*, Acc. *andum*, Ab. *ando*.

The supine, *amatum*, is the same as the third principal part, *atum*.

The *ve* included in brackets, in the terminations of the perfect indicative subjunctive, and the *vi* included in brackets in the pluperfect subjunctive, may be omitted in the same manner as in the indicative perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

### Lesson 51.

|      |                  |                    |                   |            |                 |           |                        |                     |                |         |
|------|------------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------------------|---------------------|----------------|---------|
| ea.6 | Ea               | ei.6               | re                | impetratâ, | [part.]         | ••        | is-is.pl.1             | omnes               | ne-ntis.pl.1   | flentes |
|      | That             | thing              | being-obtained,   |            |                 |           |                        | all                 |                | weeping |
|      | projecerunt      | pl.4               | sese              | (3)••      | ad              | ar-aris.3 | Cæsari                 | ce-edis.pl.4        | pedes          |         |
|      | threw            |                    | themselves        | at         |                 |           | Cæsar's                |                     | feet (saying), |         |
|      |                  | pl.4               | se                | (3)••      | contendere      | et        | ar-avi-atum.in.(1)     | laborare            | non            |         |
|      | (that)           | "they              |                   | endeavored | and             |           |                        | labored             | no             |         |
|      | minùs            | id.4               | id,               | id.pl.4    | ea,             | od.pl.4   | quæ                    |                     | dixissent      |         |
|      | less             | (for)              | that,             | (that)     | those (things), |           | which                  | they-may-have-said, |                |         |
|      |                  |                    | ne                |            | enuntiarentur,  |           | quàm                   | utl                 |                |         |
|      | should           | not                |                   |            | be-divulged,    |           | than                   | that                |                |         |
|      |                  | ar-avi-atum.ab.(2) | impetrarent       | [pl.3]••   |                 | id.pl.4   | ea                     | od.pl.4             | quæ            |         |
|      |                  |                    | they-might-obtain |            |                 |           | those (things)         | which               |                |         |
|      | vellent;         |                    | propterea         | quòd       | si              |           | enuntiatum esset,      |                     |                |         |
|      | they-might-wish; |                    | because           | that       | if              |           | it-should-be-divulged, |                     |                |         |

viderent <sup>4</sup>se<sup>(3)••</sup> venturos in  
they-perceived | (that) they were-about-to-come in  
<sup>a.4</sup>summum <sup>ss.4</sup>cruciatum."  
(the) greatest torture [that they would have to suffer the ex-  
<sup>a.1</sup>Divitiacus <sup>a.1</sup>Æduus locutus est pro  
treme of torture].” Divitiacus (the) Ædian spoke for  
<sup>ic.pl.6</sup>his; “esse <sup>pl.4</sup>duas <sup>io-ionia.pl.4</sup>factiones (*f.*)••  
these; (he said, that) “there-were two factions  
<sup>a-ius.2</sup>totius <sup>2</sup>Galliæ; <sup>a.pl.4</sup>Æduos tenere <sup>ss.4</sup>principatum  
(in) all Gaul; (that) the Ædii held (the) sovereignty  
<sup>a-ius.2</sup>alterius <sup>ss.pl.2</sup>harum, <sup>a.pl.4</sup>Arvernos <sup>a-ius.2</sup>alterius. Quum  
of-one of-these, (the) Aveni ‘of (the) ‘other. When  
<sup>ic.pl.1</sup>hi contenderent tantoperè inter <sup>pl.4</sup>se<sup>(3)••</sup> de  
these contended so-earnestly between themselves for  
<sup>ss.6</sup>potentatu <sup>a.pl.4</sup>multos <sup>a.pl.4</sup>annos, factum esse,  
dominion (during) many years, | it-was-done [it  
ut <sup>a.pl.1</sup>Germani accerserentur ab <sup>a.pl.6</sup>Arvernīs  
happened], that (the) Germans were-called-in by (the) Arverni  
que <sup>a.pl.6</sup>Sequanis, <sup>ss-edis.6</sup>mercede. Primò circiter  
and Sequani, for-hire. (At) first about  
quindecim millia <sup>ic.pl.2</sup>horum transisse <sup>a.4</sup>Rhenum;  
fifteen thousand of-these had-crossed-over (the) Rhine;  
posteaquam <sup>a.pl.1</sup>feri ac <sup>a.pl.1</sup>barbari <sup>o-ia.pl.1</sup>homines  
after-that (these) wild and barbarous men  
<sup>ar- | avi-atum.ab.(5)</sup>adamāssent <sup>(pl.3)••</sup> <sup>or.pl.4</sup>agros et <sup>ss.4</sup>cultum,  
had-fallen-in-love (with) (the) lands and cultivation,  
et <sup>pl.4</sup>copias <sup>a.pl.2</sup>Gallorum, <sup>us-uris.pl.4</sup>plures (*c.*)••  
and stores of-the-Gauls, (that) more  
transductos; nunc esse in <sup>6</sup>Galliā centum et  
were-led-over; (that) now there-were in Gaul (a) hundred and  
viginti <sup>pl.2</sup>millium, ad <sup>m.4</sup>numerus.”  
twenty thousand (Germans), in number.”

## Lesson 52.

Eā re impetratā, sese omnes fientes Cæsari ad pedes pro-  
jecerunt; “non minùs se id contendere et laborare, ne ea,  
quæ dixissent, enunciarentur, quàm uti ea, quæ vellent, im-  
petrarent; propterea, quòd si enunciatum esset, summum in

cruciatum se venturos viderent." Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Æduus; "Galliæ totius factiones esse duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Æduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi quum tantoperè de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse, uti ab Arvernīs Sequanisque Germani mercede accerserentur. Horum primò circiter millia quindecim Rhenum transisse; posteaquam agros, et cultum, et copias Gallorum, homines feri ac barbari adamassent, transductos plures; nunc esse in Galliâ ad centum et viginti millium numerum."

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 51 AND 52.

##### *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Tantoperè. Potentatus. Anni. Merces. Homo. Ferus. Adamassent. Adamavisset. Plus. Ager. Sese. Pedes. Dixissent. Vellent. Impetrarent. Impetrarem. Impetraretis. Totus. Duæ. Alter. Principatus. Tenere. Laborare. Laborans. Laboravisse. Laboraturus. Laborandi.

##### *English words to be translated into Latin.*

About. After that. Wild. The lands. Stores. More. Now. Hundred. He spoke. Sovereignty. Dominion. Many. Hire. Weeping. Foot. He will labor. Less. He might obtain. Because. They perceived.

##### *Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Locutus est Divitiacus. Principatum tenere Æduos. De potentatu multos annos contenderent. Factum est uti Germani accerserentur. Agros, et cultum Gallorum adamassent. Sese omnes fientes Cæsari ad pedes projecerunt. Non minùs se id laborare. Ne ea enunciarentur. Uti ea, quæ vellent, impetrarent. Si enunciatum esset.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Fifteen thousand of these had crossed over the Rhine. After that they had fallen in love with the lands, and stores of the Gauls. Divitiacus spoke for these. That the Ædui held the sovereignty. These contended for dominion. The Germans were called in by the Arverni. All threw themselves at Cæsar's feet. That those things should not be divulged. That they might obtain those things which they might wish.

Before proceeding to the passive form of this first conjugation, it will be necessary to give the conjugation of the verb *sum*—*I am*; for many of the tenses in the passive voice are formed by this verb *sum*, and the past participle.

SUM—I AM.

This verb, *sum*, is very irregular; and, from its nature, has no passive voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|             |           |              |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|
| <i>Sum.</i> | Esse (e). | Fui (ui).    |
| I-am.       | to-be.    | I-have-been. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Sum." (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am.*

Terminations.

SINGULAR.

|                           |             |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| (1) Sum [1], I am.....    | <i>sum.</i> |
| (1) Es [2], thou art..... | <i>es.</i>  |
| (1) Est [3], he is.....   | <i>est.</i> |

PLURAL.

|                                       |               |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| (1) Sumus [pl. 1], we are.....        | <i>sumus.</i> |
| (1) Estis [pl. 2], ye or you are..... | <i>estis.</i> |
| (1) Sunt [pl. 3], they are.....       | <i>sunt.</i>  |



*"E." (2) Imperfect. I, &c., was.*

| SINGULAR.                    | Terminations. |
|------------------------------|---------------|
| (2) Eram [1], I was.....     | ram.          |
| (2) Eras [2], thou wast..... | ras.          |
| (2) Erat [3], he was.....    | rat.          |

## PLURAL.

|                                   |        |
|-----------------------------------|--------|
| (2) Eramus [pl. 1], we were.....  | ramus. |
| (2) Eratis [pl. 2], you were..... | ratis. |
| (2) Erant [pl. 3], they were..... | rant.  |

*"E." (3) Future. I, &c., shall or will be.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| (3) Ero [1], I shall be.....    | ro   |
| (3) Eris [2], thou wilt be..... | ris. |
| (3) Erit [3], he will be.....   | rit  |

## PLURAL.

|                                      |        |
|--------------------------------------|--------|
| (3) Erimus [pl. 1], we shall be..... | rimus. |
| (3) Eritis [pl. 2], you will be..... | ritis. |
| (3) Erunt [pl. 3], they will be..... | runt.  |

*"U." (4) Perfect. I, &c., have been.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                     |        |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| (4) Fui [1], I have been.....       | ui.    |
| (4) Fuisti [2], thou hast been..... | uisti. |
| (4) Fuit [3], he has been.....      | uit.   |

## PLURAL.

|                                                   |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| (4) Fuimus [pl. 1], we have been.....             | uimus.          |
| (4) Fuistis [pl. 2], you have been.....           | uistis.         |
| (4) Fuerunt or fuere [pl. 3], they have been..... | uerunt or uere. |

*"Ui." (5) Pluperfect. I, &c., had been.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                      |        |
|--------------------------------------|--------|
| (5) Fueram [1], I had been.....      | ueram. |
| (5) Fueras [2], thou hadst been..... | ueras. |
| (5) Fuerat [3], he had been.....     | uerat. |

## PLURAL.

|                                         |          |
|-----------------------------------------|----------|
| (5) Fueraimus [pl. 1], we had been..... | ueramus. |
| (5) Fueratis [pl. 2], you had been..... | ueratis. |
| (5) Fuerant [pl. 3], they had been..... | uerant.  |

"*Ui.*" (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have been.*

| SINGULAR.                                        | Terminations. |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| (6) <i>Fuero</i> [1], I shall have been .....    | <i>uero.</i>  |
| (6) <i>Fueris</i> [2], thou wilt have been ..... | <i>ueris.</i> |
| (6) <i>Fuerit</i> [3], he will have been .....   | <i>uerit.</i> |

| PLURAL.                                               |                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| (6) <i>Fuerimus</i> [pl. 1], we shall have been ..... | <i>uerimus.</i> |
| (6) <i>Fueritis</i> [pl. 2], you will have been ..... | <i>ueritis.</i> |
| (6) <i>Fuerint</i> [pl. 3], they will have been ..... | <i>uerint.</i>  |

There are only two principal parts in *sum*, name *y*: that denoted by *e*, and that denoted by *ui*; *sum* having no supine.

The present tense is so very irregular, that it can scarcely be considered as formed from *e*, the first part; the full verb is therefore given, in italics, in place of the terminations.

The imperfect may be considered as formed from the first principal part, *e*. This *e* is placed before the terminations denoting number and person, as given in the imperfect tense above.

The future, in like manner, is formed from the first principal part, *e*, by placing *e* before the terminations of the future.

The perfect is formed from the second principal part, *ui*, by placing *f* before the terminations of numbers and persons, as above given.

The pluperfect is also formed from the second principal part, *ui*; *f* being placed before the terminations of numbers and persons.

The future perfect is, in like manner, formed from *ui*; and *f* is placed before the terminations of numbers and persons, as above given.

## Lesson 53.

<sup>lx-igs.1</sup> Orgetorix <sup>deligitur</sup> ad <sup>ea.pl.4</sup> eas <sup>ei.pl.4</sup> res  
 Orgetorix | is-chosen to those things <sup>is.1</sup> Is  
 conficiendas. to-be-accomplished [is chosen to accomplish those things]. He  
<sup>suscepit</sup> <sup>sibi</sup> <sup>(3)...</sup> <sup>lo-onis.4</sup> legationem <sup>(f.)...</sup> ad  
 accepted for-himself an embassy to (the different)  
<sup>ae-atia.pl.4</sup> civitates. In <sup>id.6</sup> eo <sup>er-ineria.6</sup> itinere <sup>(n.)...</sup> <sup>persuadet</sup>  
 states. In that journey he-persuades  
<sup>s.3</sup> Castico <sup>s.3</sup> filio <sup>ae-ls.2</sup> Catamantaledis, <sup>s.3</sup> Sequano, <sup>ui.2</sup> cujus  
 Casticus (the) son of-Catamantaledes, a Sequanian, | whose  
<sup>ter-tris.1</sup> pater <sup>obtinnerat</sup> <sup>m.4</sup> regnum in <sup>s.pl.6</sup> Sequanis  
 father had-held (the) kingdom in (the) Sequani (for)  
<sup>s.pl.4</sup> multos <sup>s.pl.4</sup> annos,  
 many years [whose father had ruled over the Sequani for  
 et appellatus erat <sup>s.1</sup> amicus à <sup>ae.6</sup> senatu que  
 many years], and had-been-called friend by (the) senate and  
<sup>s.6</sup> Romano <sup>s.6</sup> populo, ut | <sup>ar-avi-atum.ab.(2)</sup> occuparet <sup>(3)...</sup>  
 Roman people, that he-would-seize  
<sup>m.4</sup> regnum in <sup>s.6</sup> suâ <sup>ae-atia.6</sup> civitate, <sup>od.4</sup> quod <sup>ter-tris.1</sup> pater  
 (the) sovereign-power in his state, which (his) father  
 habuerat antè. Que item persuadet <sup>s.3</sup> Æduo  
 had-had before (him). And 'he also 'persuades (the) Æduan  
<sup>lx-igs.2</sup> Dumnorigi, <sup>ter-tris.3</sup> fratri <sup>s.2</sup> Divitiaci, <sup>ui.1</sup> qui <sup>id.6</sup> eo  
 Dumnorig, (the) brother of-Divitiacus, who at-that  
<sup>ae-oris.6</sup> tempore obtinebat <sup>ae.4</sup> principatum in <sup>s.6</sup> suâ <sup>ae-atia.6</sup> civitate,  
 time obtained (the) command in his state,  
<sup>ac</sup> <sup>(num-esse)</sup> | <sup>e-ni.(2)</sup> erat <sup>(3)...</sup> <sup>s.1</sup> maximè <sup>s.1</sup> acceptus <sup>be-bis.3</sup> plebi,  
 and was chiefly acceptable 'to (the) 'people,  
 ut conaretur <sup>id.4</sup> idem, que  
 that he-should-attempt (the) same-thing, and  
 | <sup>ar-dedi-atum.(1)</sup> dat <sup>(3)...</sup> <sup>s.4</sup> suam <sup>s.4</sup> filiam in <sup>m.4</sup> matrimonium  
 he-gives his daughter in marriage  
<sup>ls.3</sup> ei. | <sup>ar-avi-atum.(1)</sup> Probat <sup>(3)...</sup> <sup>le.pl.3</sup> illis,  
 to-him. He-proves (it) to-them, (that it)  
<sup>(num-esse)</sup> | <sup>e-ni.(1)</sup> esse perfacile factu, perficere  
 "is very-easy to-be-done, to-execute  
<sup>m.pl.4</sup> conata, propterea quod <sup>ae.1</sup> ipse esset  
 (this) enterprise, because that he-himself was

|                                                                |                                                        |                                      |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| obtenturus                                                     | <sup>m.4</sup> imperium                                | <sup>2</sup> suæ                     | <sup>as-ath.2</sup> civitatis,               |
| about-to-obtain                                                | (the) empire                                           | of-his (own)                         | state, (that)                                |
| (num-esse)   e-ol.in.(1)                                       | esse non                                               | <sup>m.1</sup> dubium,               | quin <sup>a.pl.1</sup> Helvetii              |
|                                                                | there-is no                                            | doubt,                               | but-that (the) Helvetii                      |
| possent plurimum                                               | <sup>a-ius.2</sup> totius Galliæ."                     | <sup>ar-avi-atum.(1)</sup> Confirmat | <sup>(3)...</sup>                            |
| could-do the most                                              | of-all Gaul."                                          | He-affirms                           |                                              |
| <sup>4</sup> se <sup>(3)...</sup>                              | <sup>ar-avi-</sup>   <sup>atum.(2)</sup> conciliaturum | [part.]...                           | <sup>m.pl.4</sup> regna                      |
| (that)                                                         | he-was-about-to-procure                                |                                      | kingdoms                                     |
| <sup>le.pl.3</sup> illis                                       | <sup>pl.6</sup> suis                                   | <sup>pl.6</sup> copiis que           | <sup>a.6</sup> suo <sup>as.6</sup> exercitu. |
| for-them                                                       | with-his                                               | means and                            | with-his army.                               |
| <sup>a.pl.1</sup> Adducti                                      | [part.]...                                             | <sup>acc.6</sup> hâc                 | <sup>lo-ion.6</sup> oratione, (f.)...        |
| Induced                                                        | by-this                                                |                                      | oration,                                     |
| <sup>ar-decl-atum.(1)</sup> dant                               | <sup>(pl.3)...</sup>                                   | <sup>ei.4</sup> fidem et             | <sup>m.4</sup> jusjurandum inter             |
| they-give                                                      |                                                        | faith and                            | oath among                                   |
| <sup>4</sup> se; <sup>(3)...</sup>                             |                                                        | et                                   |                                              |
| themselves [they pledge themselves to one another by an oath]; |                                                        | and                                  |                                              |
| <sup>m.6</sup> regno                                           | <sup>m.6</sup> occupato, [part.]...                    | per                                  | <sup>pl.4</sup> tres                         |
| (the) sovereign-power                                          | being-possessed,                                       | by                                   | three                                        |
| <sup>a.pl.4</sup> potentissimos (s.)...                        | <sup>ac. 2.pl.4</sup> firmissimos (s.)...              | <sup>a.pl.4</sup> populos,           |                                              |
| most-powerful                                                  | and most-firm                                          | people,                              |                                              |
| <sup>ar-avi-atum.(1)</sup> sperant                             | <sup>(pl.3)...</sup>                                   | <sup>4</sup> sese <sup>(3)...</sup>  | posse potiri                                 |
| they-hope                                                      | (that) they                                            | would-be-able to-possess             |                                              |
| <sup>a-ius.2</sup> totius                                      | <sup>2</sup> Galliæ.                                   |                                      |                                              |
| (themselves)                                                   | of-all Gaul.                                           |                                      |                                              |

### Lesson 54.

Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur; is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico Catamantaledis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et à senatu populoque Romano amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate suâ occuparet, quod pater antè habuerat: itemque Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate suâ obtinebat, ac maximè plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet; eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. "Perfacile factu esse," illis probat, "conata perficere; propterea quòd ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent; se

suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum," confirmat. Hâc oratione adducti, inter se fidem, et jusjurandum dant; et regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos, totius Galliæ sese potiri posse sperant.

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 53 AND 54.

##### *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Jusjurandum. Do. Potentissimus. Sperat. Perfacile. Probavit. Propterea. Civitas. Esse. Totius. Dubium. Exercitu. Confirmant. Deligitur. Iter. Filius. Pater. Multi. Cujus. Amicus. Occupavit. Habuerat. Frater. Tempus. Plebs. Filia. Dedit.

##### *English words to be translated into Latin.*

Acceptable. He gives. Marriage. He will prove. To be. Enterprise. Daughter. He himself. State. The most. They affirm. Kingdom. Army. Faith. Most powerful. I shall hope. Years. Father. Had had. Persuades. Brother. Who. Time. For himself. Embassy. Journey. Whose.

##### *Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Non esse dubium. Perfacile esse probat. Ipse imperium obtenturus esset. Se suo exercitu illis regna conciliaturum. Inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant. Totius Galliæ sese potiri posse sperant. Ad eas res conficiendas ille deligitur. Cujus pater amicus appellatus erat. Maximè plebi acceptus est. Filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

##### *English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

He affirms that he has procured kingdoms for them. He hopes that he would be able. He was acceptable to the people. He gives his daughter in marriage to him. I have proved it to them. There is no doubt, but that the Helvetii

could do the most. Which his father had had before him. He persuades the brother of Divitiacus. Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish those things. He persuades the son of Catamantaledes.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF "SUM."

"Sim." sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may or can be.*

| SINGULAR.                           | Terminations. |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (1) Sim [1], I may be.....      | <i>sim.</i>   |
| sb. (1) Sis [2], thou mayst be..... | <i>sia.</i>   |
| sb. (1) Sit [3], he may be.....     | <i>sit.</i>   |

| PLURAL.                                |               |
|----------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (1) Simus [pl. 1], we may be.....  | <i>simus.</i> |
| sb. (1) Sitis [pl. 2], you may be..... | <i>sitis.</i> |
| sb. (1) Sint [pl. 3], they may be..... | <i>sint.</i>  |

"E." sb. (2) *Imperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should be.*

| SINGULAR.                               |               |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (2) Essem [1], I might be.....      | <i>essem.</i> |
| sb. (2) Esset [2], thou mightst be..... | <i>esset.</i> |
| sb. (2) Esset [3], he might be.....     | <i>eset.</i>  |

| PLURAL.                                    |                 |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| sb. (2) Essemus [pl. 1], we might be.....  | <i>essemus.</i> |
| sb. (2) Essetis [pl. 2], you might be..... | <i>essetis.</i> |
| sb. (2) Essent [pl. 3], they might be..... | <i>essent.</i>  |

"Ui." sb. (4) *Perfect. I, &c., may have been.*

| SINGULAR.                                     |               |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (4) Fuerim [1], I may have been.....      | <i>uerim.</i> |
| sb. (4) Fueris [2], thou mayst have been..... | <i>ueris.</i> |
| sb. (4) Fuerit [3], he may have been.....     | <i>uerit.</i> |

| PLURAL.                                          |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| sb. (4) Fuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been.....  | <i>uerimus.</i> |
| sb. (4) Fueritis [pl. 2], you may have been..... | <i>ueritis.</i> |
| sb. (4) Fuerint [pl. 3], they may have been..... | <i>uerint.</i>  |

*"U."* sb. (5) *Pluperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should have been.*

## SINGULAR.

## Terminations.

|                                                          |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| sb. (5) <i>Fuissem</i> [1], I might have been.....       | <i>uissem.</i> |
| sb. (5) <i>Fuisses</i> [2], thou mightest have been..... | <i>uisses.</i> |
| sb. (5) <i>Fuisset</i> [3], he might have been.....      | <i>uisset.</i> |

## PLURAL.

|                                                            |                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| sb. (5) <i>Fuissemus</i> [pl. 1], we might have been.....  | <i>uissemus.</i> |
| sb. (5) <i>Fuissetis</i> [pl. 2], you might have been..... | <i>uissetis.</i> |
| sb. (5) <i>Fuissent</i> [pl. 3], they might have been..... | <i>uissent.</i>  |

*"E."* IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

|                                                |                         |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| im. <i>Es</i> or <i>esto</i> [2], be thou..... | <i>e</i> or <i>sto.</i> |
| im. <i>Esto</i> [3], let him be.....           | <i>sto.</i>             |

## PLURAL.

|                                                       |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| im. <i>Este</i> or <i>estote</i> [pl. 2], by ye ..... | <i>ste</i> or <i>stote.</i> |
| im. <i>Sunto</i> [pl. 3], let them be.....            | <i>sunto.</i>               |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*"E."* in. (1) *Present Tense.*

|                                  |              |
|----------------------------------|--------------|
| in. (1) <i>Esse</i> , to be..... | <i>esse.</i> |
|----------------------------------|--------------|

*"U."* in. (4) *Perfect Tense.*

|                                           |               |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------|
| in. (4) <i>Fuisse</i> , to have been..... | <i>uisse.</i> |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------|

in. (3) *Future.*

|                                                      |                     |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| in. (3) <i>Futurus esse</i> , to be about to be..... | <i>uturus-esse.</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|

## PARTICIPLE [PART.].

(3) *Future Tense.*

|                                              |                |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------|
| (3) <i>Futurus</i> [part.], about to be..... | <i>uturus.</i> |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------|

The present tense, in the subjunctive, cannot be referred to the first principal part, *e*. All the numbers and persons of this tense are given entire, in italics, in place of the terminations.

The imperfect tense is formed from the first principal part, *e*. This *e* is placed before the terminations of the imperfect to form the different numbers and persons.

The perfect tense is formed from the second principal part, *ui*; *f* being placed before the terminations of the perfect in all the numbers and persons.

The pluperfect is formed from the second principal part, *ui*; *f* being placed before the terminations of the pluperfect in like manner.

The imperative mood, in the second and third persons singular, and second person plural, is formed from the first part, *e*, this *e* being placed before the terminations; but the third person plural cannot be referred to either the first or second principal parts; it is therefore given in full, in italics, in the terminations.

The infinitive mood in the present tense is derived from the first principal part, *e*; this *e* being placed before the termination. The perfect tense of the same is formed from the second principal part, *ui*; *f* being placed before the termination. The future is formed from a supposed supine and *esse*; *f* being placed before the termination.

*Sum* has properly no present participle ending in *ens*; but some of its compounds have: as, *absens*—being absent.

The future participle may be considered as formed from a supposed supine of *fuo*; *f* being placed before the termination.

The perfect, *fui*, is formed from the obsolete, *fuo*, from which are still in use the imperfect subjunctive: “<sup>(1)</sup> *forem* [<sup>1</sup>], *I might be*; “<sup>(2)</sup> *fores* [<sup>2</sup>], *thou mightst be*; “<sup>(3)</sup> *foret* [<sup>3</sup>], *he might be*; “<sup>(4)</sup> *foremus* [<sup>4.1</sup>], *we might be*; “<sup>(5)</sup> *foretis* [<sup>5.2</sup>], *you might be*; “<sup>(6)</sup> *forent* [<sup>6.3</sup>], *they might be*. The infinitive present, *fore*—to be, has generally a future signification of *about to be*.

The compounds of *sum* are conjugated like *sum*: as, *absum*—*I am absent*, *abes*, *abest*, &c., &c.; but *prosum*—*I am useful*, or *advantageous*, or *I profit*, has a *d* inserted between *pro* and those tenses and persons that begin with a



vowel: as, indicative present, <sup>(1)</sup>*prosum*<sup>(1)</sup>, *I am useful*; <sup>(1)</sup>*prodes*<sup>(2)</sup>, *thou art useful*; <sup>(1)</sup>*prodest*<sup>(3)</sup>, *he is useful*, &c., &c. Imperfect, <sup>(2)</sup>*proderam*<sup>(1)</sup>, *I was useful*; <sup>(2)</sup>*proderas*<sup>(3)</sup>, *thou wast useful*; <sup>(2)</sup>*proderat*<sup>(3)</sup>, *he was useful*, &c., &c.

The compound, *possum*—*I can*, or *am able*, compounded of *potis*—*able* and *sum*—*I am*, is more irregular. In composition, the *is* of *potis* is omitted, and the *t* of *pot* is changed into *s* before another *s*. The commencing *es* of the present infinitive, and of the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*, is omitted; the commencing *f* of *sum*, in those tenses formed from the second principal part, *ui*, is dropped. In other respects, *possum* is conjugated like *sum*; but it has no imperative, or future participle. It is conjugated as follows:

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|                |                   |                    |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Possum.</i> | <i>Posse</i> (e). | <i>Potui</i> (ui). |
| I-am-able.     | to-be-able.       | I-have-been-able.  |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Sum." "E." (1) *Present Tense.*

Terminations.

## SINGULAR.

|                                                  |               |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| (1) <i>Possum</i> [1], <i>I am able</i> .....    | <i>s</i> sum. |
| (1) <i>Potes</i> [2], <i>thou art able</i> ..... | <i>tes</i> .  |
| (1) <i>Potest</i> [3], <i>he is able</i> .....   | <i>test</i> . |

## PLURAL.

|                                                        |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| (1) <i>Possumus</i> [pl. 1], <i>we are able</i> .....  | <i>ss</i> umus. |
| (1) <i>Potestis</i> [pl. 2], <i>you are able</i> ..... | <i>testis</i> . |
| (1) <i>Possunt</i> [pl. 3], <i>they are able</i> ..... | <i>ss</i> unt.  |

"E." (2) *Imperfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                                     |                |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| (2) <i>Poteram</i> [1], <i>I was able</i> .....     | <i>ter</i> am. |
| (2) <i>Poteras</i> [2], <i>thou wast able</i> ..... | <i>teras</i> . |
| (2) <i>Poterat</i> [3], <i>he was able</i> .....    | <i>ter</i> at. |

## PLURAL.

|                                                          |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| (2) <i>Poteramus</i> [pl. 1], <i>we were able</i> .....  | <i>ter</i> amus. |
| (2) <i>Poteratis</i> [pl. 2], <i>you were able</i> ..... | <i>ter</i> atis. |
| (2) <i>Poterant</i> [pl. 3], <i>they were able</i> ..... | <i>ter</i> ant.  |

*"E."* (3) *Future.*

## SINGULAR.

## Termination.

|                                                |        |
|------------------------------------------------|--------|
| (3) <i>Potero</i> [1], I shall be able.....    | tero.  |
| (3) <i>Poteris</i> [2], thou wilt be able..... | teris. |
| (3) <i>Poterit</i> [3], he will be able.....   | terit. |

## PLURAL.

|                                                     |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------|
| (3) <i>Poterimus</i> [pl. 1], we shall be able..... | terimus. |
| (3) <i>Poteritis</i> [pl. 2], you will be able..... | teritis. |
| (3) <i>Poterunt</i> [pl. 3], they will be able..... | terunt.  |

*"U."* (4) *Perfect.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                                   |         |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------|
| (4) <i>Potui</i> [1], I have been able.....       | tui.    |
| (4) <i>Potuisti</i> [2], thou hast been able..... | tuisti. |
| (4) <i>Potuit</i> [3], he has been able.....      | tuit.   |

## PLURAL.

|                                                                          |                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| (4) <i>Potuimus</i> [pl. 1], we have been able.....                      | tuimus.           |
| (4) <i>Potulistis</i> [pl. 2], you have been able.....                   | tuistis.          |
| (4) <i>Potuerunt</i> or <i>potuere</i> [pl. 3], they have been able..... | tuerunt or tuere. |

*"U."* (5) *Pluperfect.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                                   |         |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------|
| (5) <i>Potueram</i> [1], I had been able.....     | tueram. |
| (5) <i>Potueras</i> [2], thou hast been able..... | tueras. |
| (5) <i>Potuerat</i> [3], he has been able.....    | tuerat. |

## PLURAL.

|                                                       |           |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| (5) <i>Potueramus</i> [pl. 1], we had been able.....  | tueramus. |
| (5) <i>Potueratis</i> [pl. 2], you had been able..... | tueratis. |
| (5) <i>Potuerant</i> [pl. 3], they had been able..... | tuerant.  |

*"U."* (6) *Future Perfect.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                                        |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| (6) <i>Poturo</i> [1], I shall have been able.....     | tuero.  |
| (6) <i>Potueris</i> [2], thou wilt have been able..... | tueris. |
| (6) <i>Potuerit</i> [3], he will have been able.....   | tuerit. |

## PLURAL.

|                                                             |           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| (6) <i>Potuerimus</i> [pl. 1], we shall have been able..... | tuerimus. |
| (6) <i>Potueritis</i> [pl. 2], you will have been able..... | tueritis. |
| (6) <i>Potuerint</i> [pl. 3], they will have been able..... | tuerint.  |

## SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

"Sim." sb. (1) *Present Tense*.

| SINGULAR.                                   | Terminations. |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (1) Possim [1], I may be able.....      | ssim.         |
| sb. (1) Possis [2], thou mayst be able..... | ssis.         |
| sb. (1) Possit [3], he may be able.....     | ssit.         |

## PLURAL.

|                                                |         |
|------------------------------------------------|---------|
| sb. (1) Possimus [pl. 1], we may be able.....  | ssimus. |
| sb. (1) Possitis [pl. 2], you may be able..... | ssitis. |
| sb. (1) Possint [pl. 3], they may be able..... | ssint.  |

"E." sb. (2) *Imperfect*.

## SINGULAR.

|                                               |       |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------|
| sb. (2) Possem [1], I might be able.....      | ssem. |
| sb. (2) Posses [2], thou mightst be able..... | sSES. |
| sb. (2) Posset [3], he might be able.....     | sset. |

## PLURAL.

|                                                  |         |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------|
| sb. (2) Possemus [pl. 1], we might be able.....  | ssemus. |
| sb. (2) Possetis [pl. 2], you might be able..... | ssetis. |
| sb. (2) Possent [pl. 3], they might be able..... | sSENT.  |

"Ui." sb. (4) *Perfect Tense*.

## SINGULAR.

|                                                      |         |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| sb. (4) Potuerim [1], I may have been able.....      | tuerim. |
| sb. (4) Potueris [2], thou mayst have been able..... | tueris. |
| sb. (4) Potuerit [3], he may have been able.....     | tuerit. |

## PLURAL.

|                                                         |           |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| sb. (4) Potuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been able.....  | tuerimus. |
| sb. (4) Potueritis [pl. 2], you may have been able..... | tueritis. |
| sb. (4) Potuerint [pl. 3], they may have been able..... | tuerint.  |

"Ui." sb. (5) *Pluperfect Tense*.

## SINGULAR.

|                                                  |          |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------|
| sb. (5) Potuissem [1], I had been able.....      | tuissem. |
| sb. (5) Potuisses [2], thou hadst been able..... | tuisSES. |
| sb. (5) Potuisset [3], he had been able.....     | tuisset. |

FLURAL.

Terminations.

|                                                     |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------|
| sb. (5) Potuissemus [pl. 1], we had been able.....  | tuissemus. |
| sb. (5) Potuissetis [pl. 2], you had been able..... | tuissetis. |
| sb. (5) PotuisSENT [pl. 3], they had been able..... | tuisSENT.  |

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"E." in. (1) *Present.*

|                                |       |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| in. (1) Posse, to be able..... | asse. |
|--------------------------------|-------|

"U." in. (4) *Perfect.*

|                                          |         |
|------------------------------------------|---------|
| in. (4) Potuisse, to have been able..... | tuisse. |
|------------------------------------------|---------|

All the moods, tenses, numbers and persons of *possum* may be considered, in the above conjugation, as formed by placing *po* before all of these terminations.

Lesson 55.

|                                                           |                                                                 |                                                       |                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <sup>a-pl.4</sup> Fractus [part.] ••                      | <sup>ui-pl.6</sup> quibus                                       | <sup>m-pl.6</sup> proliis                             | que.                   |
| Broken                                                    | by which                                                        | battles                                               | and                    |
| <sup>as-atia.pl.6</sup> calamitatibus,                    | <sup>ui-pl.1</sup> qui antè                                     | <sup>plurimum</sup>                                   |                        |
| calamities,                                               | (those) who before had- <sup>1</sup> been                       | most                                                  |                        |
| (num-ess). or -   <sup>ui-sh.6</sup> potuissent [pl.5] •• |                                                                 |                                                       |                        |
|                                                           | <sup>1</sup> able [those who before had been the most powerful] |                                                       |                        |
| in <sup>6</sup> Galliâ, et <sup>6</sup> suâ               | <sup>us-tute.6</sup> virtute (f.) ••                            | et <sup>m.6</sup> hospitio                            |                        |
| in Gaul, both by-their                                    | valor                                                           | and <sup>1</sup> by (the) <sup>1</sup> alliance       |                        |
| atque <sup>6</sup> amicitiâ                               | <sup>a.3</sup> Romani                                           | <sup>a.3</sup> populi                                 |                        |
| and friendship                                            | <sup>1</sup> of (the) <sup>1</sup> Roman                        | people (that they)                                    |                        |
| coactos esse                                              | <sup>ar-dedi-atum.in.(1)</sup> dare                             | <sup>a-pl.4</sup> nobilissimos                        |                        |
| have-been-forced                                          | to-give                                                         | the-most-noble                                        |                        |
| <sup>as-atia.3</sup> civitatis                            | <sup>es-idia.pl.4</sup> obsides                                 | <sup>a-pl.3</sup> Sequanis,                           | et                     |
| <sup>1</sup> of (the) <sup>1</sup> state (as)             | hostages                                                        | <sup>1</sup> to (the) <sup>1</sup> Sequani,           | and                    |
| obstringere                                               | <sup>as-atia.4</sup> civitatem                                  | <sup>ar-avi-atum.6</sup> jurejurando, [sw.] ••        |                        |
| to-bind                                                   | (the) state                                                     | <sup>1</sup> by (a) <sup>1</sup> swearing             | [by an                 |
|                                                           | <sup>pl.4</sup> sese (3) ••                                     | neque                                                 | repetituros            |
| oath], (that) they                                        | neither                                                         | would-hereafter-re-demand                             |                        |
| <sup>es-idia.pl.4</sup> obsides,                          | neque                                                           | <sup>ar-avi-   atum.(3)</sup> imploratuROS [part.] •• |                        |
| (their) hostages,                                         | nor                                                             | would-hereafter-implore                               |                        |
| <sup>m.4</sup> auxilium                                   | à                                                               | <sup>a.6</sup> Romano                                 | <sup>a.6</sup> populo, |
| aid                                                       | from                                                            | (the) Roman                                           | people,                |
|                                                           |                                                                 |                                                       | neque                  |
|                                                           |                                                                 |                                                       | nor                    |

|                                      |                           |                                     |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ar-avi-   stum. <sup>(3)</sup>       | recusatos, [part.] ●●     | quò                                 | minus                           |
|                                      | hereafter-refuse          | that they-' might                   | not                             |
| (num-ess)   e-ul.ab. <sup>(2)</sup>  | essent [pl.3] ●●          | perpetuò                            | sub                             |
|                                      | 'be                       | perpetually                         | under                           |
| io-ionia. <sup>6</sup>               | deditione (f.) ●●         | atque                               | imperio                         |
|                                      | (the) subjection          | and                                 | dominion                        |
|                                      |                           |                                     | of these (Germans).             |
|                                      | 'Se (3) ●●                | (num-ess)   e-ul.in. <sup>(1)</sup> | esse                            |
| (That) he-himself                    |                           | is (the only)                       | one out-of                      |
| io-in. <sup>6</sup>                  | omni                      | as-atin. <sup>6</sup>               | civitate                        |
|                                      | all                       | (the) state                         | 'of (the) 'Ædui,                |
|                                      |                           |                                     | who 'had not                    |
| (num-ess).o-   ul.ab. <sup>(4)</sup> | potuerit [3] ●●           | adduci                              | ut                              |
|                                      | 'been-able                | to-be-brought                       | that                            |
| ar-avi-stum.ab. <sup>(2)</sup>       | juraret, [3] ●●           | aut                                 | ar-dedi-stum.ab. <sup>(2)</sup> |
|                                      | he-should-swear,          | or                                  | daret                           |
|                                      |                           |                                     | give                            |
| r.pl. <sup>4</sup>                   | liberos                   | as-idia.pl. <sup>4</sup>            | obsides.                        |
|                                      | children (as)             | hostages.                           | (That) on-account-of            |
| ai. <sup>4</sup>                     | rem 'se (3) ●●            | profugisse                          | ex                              |
|                                      | thing he                  | fled                                | from (his own)                  |
|                                      |                           |                                     | state and                       |
| venisse                              | 'Romam ad                 | as. <sup>4</sup>                    | senatum                         |
|                                      | came to-Rome to           | (the) senate                        | postulatum [am] ●●              |
|                                      |                           |                                     | a-requesting                    |
| m. <sup>4</sup>                      | auxilium, quòd            | 'solus                              | teneretur                       |
|                                      | aid,                      | because 'he                         | alone                           |
|                                      |                           |                                     | 'was-held                       |
|                                      |                           |                                     | neque                           |
| ar-avi-stum. <sup>6</sup>            | jurejurando, [scr.] ●●    | neque                               | as-idia.pl. <sup>6</sup>        |
|                                      | 'by (a) 'swearing [oath], | nor                                 | by-hostages.                    |
| Sed                                  | accidisse                 | pejùs                               | 'to (the) 'Sequani              |
| But (that)                           | it-had-happened           | worse                               |                                 |
| or-oria.pl. <sup>3</sup>             | victoribus, quàm          | as-pl. <sup>3</sup>                 | Æduis                           |
|                                      | conquerors,               | than                                | 'to (the) 'Ædui                 |
|                                      |                           |                                     | conquered; because              |
| quòd                                 | 'Ariovistus,              | x-gr. <sup>1</sup>                  | rex                             |
|                                      | that Ariovistus,          | king                                | 'of (the) 'Germans              |
|                                      |                           |                                     | had-settled                     |
| in                                   | as-pl. <sup>3</sup>       | eorum                               | as-pl. <sup>6</sup>             |
|                                      | in                        | their                               | territories, and                |
|                                      |                           |                                     | had-occupied                    |
| 'tertiam                             | r-ria. <sup>4</sup>       | partem                              | 'of (the) 'Sequani              |
| (the) third                          | part                      |                                     | land, which                     |
| (num-ess)   e-ul.ab. <sup>(2)</sup>  | esset [3] ●●              | 'optimus (bonus, s.) ●●             | totius                          |
|                                      | was                       | (the) best                          | of-all                          |
| 'Galliæ; et nunc juberet             | as-pl. <sup>4</sup>       | Sequanos                            | decedere de                     |
| Gaul; and now he-ordered             | (the) Sequani             | to-depart                           | from                            |
| as-im. <sup>6</sup>                  | alterà                    | 'tertiam                            | parte.                          |
|                                      | another                   | third                               | part.                           |

## Lesson 56.

Quibus præliis calamitatibusque, fractos, qui et suâ virtute et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia, plurimum antè in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis, et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium à populo Romano imploratorios, neque recusatorios, quo minùs perpetuò sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Æduorum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut juraret aut suos liberos obsides daret; ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse, et Romam ad senatum venisse, auxilium postulatam; quòd solus neque jurejurando, neque obsidibus teneatur. Sed pejùs victoribus Sequanis, quàm Æduis victis accidisse; propterea quòd Ariovistus rex Germanorum in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Gallia, occupavisset, et nunc de alterâ parte tertiâ Sequanos decedere juberet.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 55 AND 56.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Civitas. Possit. Fuistis. Fuerint. Potes. Juravit. Liberi. Dabo. Obsides. Postulatum. Jurejurando. Pejùs. Victor. Rex. Ager. Esset. Totius. Optimus. Alter. Decedere. Prælium. Virtus. Amicitia. Dedi. Nobilis. Auxilium. Imperium.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

The best. To depart. Subjection. State. He might be able. They have sworn. Children. Valor. Hostages. Friendship. He gave. To bind. The most noble. Aid. Battle. Before. They might have been able. He was. He may have been.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Sed pejùs Sequanis, quàm Æduis accidisse. Ariovistus in eorum finibus consedisset. Tertiam partem agri Sequani occupâsset. Unum se adduci non potuerit. Ut juraret, aut obsides daret. Ob eam rem se profugisse. Se venisse auxilium postulatum. Qui suâ virtute plurimum antè in Galliâ potuissent. Se coactos esse obsides dare. Jurejurando civitatem obstringere. Quo minùs sub illorum imperio essent.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

He ordered them to depart. That he came to Rome a requesting aid. It had happened worse to the Sequani. Because the king of the Germans had settled in their territories. They gave the most noble of the state as hostages. He implored aid from the Romans. That he is the only one that did not give hostages. Those who before had been most powerful.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

"Ar." p. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am loved.*

| SINGULAR.                                       | Terminations. |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| p. (1) Amor [1], I am loved.....                | or.           |
| p. (1) Amaris or amare [2], thou art loved..... | aris or are.  |
| p. (1) Amatur [3], he is loved.....             | atur.         |

## PLURAL.

|                                                  |        |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------|
| p. (1) Amamur [pl. 1], we are loved.....         | amur.  |
| p. (1) Amamini [pl. 2], ye or you are loved..... | amini. |
| p. (1) Amantur [pl. 3], they are loved.....      | antur. |

"Ar." p. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was loved.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                                      |                  |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| p. (2) Amabar [1], I was loved.....                  | abar.            |
| p. (2) Amabaris or amabare [2], thou wast loved..... | abaris or abare. |
| p. (2) Amabatur [3], he was loved.....               | abatur.          |

PLURAL.

Terminations.

- p. (2) Amabamur [pl. 1], we were loved..... abamur.  
 p. (2) Amabamini [pl. 2], you were loved..... abamini.  
 p. (2) Amabantur [pl. 3], they were loved..... abantur.

*"Ar."* p. (3) Future. *I, &c., shall or will be loved.*

SINGULAR.

- p. (3) Amabor [1], I shall be loved..... abor.  
 p. (3) Amaberis or amabere [2], thou wilt be loved..... aberis or abere.  
 p. (3) Amabitur [3], he will be loved..... abitur.

PLURAL.

- p. (3) Amabimur [pl. 1], we shall be loved..... abimur.  
 p. (3) Amabimini [pl. 2], you will be loved ..... abimini.  
 p. (3) Amabuntur [pl. 3], they will be loved..... abuntur.

*"Atum."* p. (4) Perfect. *I, &c., have been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus—loved," and "sum—I am," or "fui—I have been."*

SINGULAR.

- p. (4) Amatus sum or fui [1], I have been loved.  
 p. (4) Amatus es or fuisti [2], thou hast been loved.  
 p. (4) Amatus est or fuit [3], he has been loved.

PLURAL.

- p. (4) Amati sumus or fuimus [pl. 1], we have been loved.  
 p. (4) Amati estis or fuistis [pl. 2], you have been loved.  
 p. (4) Amati sunt or fuerunt or fuere [pl. 3], they have been loved.

*"Atum."* p. (5) Pluperfect. *I, &c., had been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus—loved," and "eram—I was," or "fueram—I had been."*

SINGULAR.

- p. (5) Amatus eram or fueram [1], I had been loved.  
 p. (5) Amatus eras or fueras [2], thou hadst been loved.  
 p. (5) Amatus erat or fuerat [3], he had been loved.

PLURAL.

- p. (5) Amati eramus or fueramus [pl. 1], we had been loved.  
 p. (5) Amati eratis or fueratis [pl. 2], you had been loved.  
 p. (5) Amati erant or fuerant [pl. 3], they had been loved.



"*Atum.*" p. (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have been loved.*  
*Formed by the perfect participle "amatus—loved," and "ero—I shall be," or "fuero—I shall have been."*

## SINGULAR.

- p. (6) *Amatus ero or fuero* [1], I shall have been loved.  
 p. (6) *Amatus eris or fueris* [2], thou wilt have been loved.  
 p. (6) *Amatus erit or fuerit* [3], he will have been loved.

## PLURAL.

- p. (6) *Amati erimus or fuerimus* [pl. 1], we shall have been loved.  
 p. (6) *Amati eritis or fueritis* [pl. 2], you will have been loved.  
 p. (6) *Amati erunt or fuerint* [pl. 3], they will have been loved.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ar*; the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the third principal part, *atum*; or, rather, the perfect or passive past participle is formed from the third principal part.

In the present tense, singular, *ar* is changed into *or* in the first, into *aris* or *are* in the second, and into *atur* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *amur* in the first, into *amini* in the second, and into *antur* in the third person.

In the imperfect, in the singular, *ar* is changed into *abar* in the first, into *abarís* or *abare* in the second, and into *abatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *abamur* in the first, into *abamini* in the second, and into *abantur* in the third person.

In the future, in the singular, *ar* is changed into *abor* in the first, into *aberis* or *abere* in the second, and into *abitur* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *abimur* in the first, into *abimini* in the second, and into *abuntur* in the third person.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, have properly no termination, they being formed by the perfect or past passive participle, and the tenses of *sum*. The perfect participle is used in the nominative, in the three genders,

and in the singular and plural, according to the gender and number of the passive nominative: *as*, singular, *amatus*, *amata*, *amatum*; plural, *amati*, *amatæ*, *amata*.

In the perfect tense, either *sum*—*I am*, or *fui*—*I was*, may be used in the perfect sense, with the perfect or passive participle. So, also, *eram* or *fuera*, both in the pluperfect sense; likewise, *ero* or *fuero*, both in the perfect future sense.

### Lesson 57.

|                                                            |                                                          |                                                              |                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a.pl. <sup>1</sup> Nonnulli<br>Some                        | a.pl. <sup>1</sup> adducti [part.] ●●<br>induced         | or-oris. <sup>6</sup> pudore,<br>by-shame,                   | ut<br>that                                                                   |
| ar-avi-atum.sh.(3) vitarent [3] ●●<br>they-might-avoid     |                                                          | lo-ionk. <sup>4</sup> suspicionem (f.) ●●<br>(the) suspicion |                                                                              |
| or-oris. <sup>2</sup> timoris<br>of-fear                   | remanebant.<br>did-remain.                               | ic.pl. <sup>1</sup> Hi<br>These                              | neque<br>'were neither                                                       |
| (cum-esse)   e-ul.(2) poterant [pl.3] ●●<br>'able          |                                                          | ingere<br>to-compose (their)                                 | <sup>4</sup> vultum,<br>countenances,                                        |
| neque interdum tenere<br>nor sometimes to-restrain         | pl. <sup>4</sup> lacrymas;<br>(their) tears;             | a.pl. <sup>1</sup> abditii [part.] ●●<br>hidden              |                                                                              |
| in<br>in (their)                                           | m.pl. <sup>6</sup> tabernaculis,<br>tents,               | aut<br>'they either                                          | querebantur m. <sup>4</sup> suum<br>'did-bewail their                        |
| m. <sup>4</sup> fatum,<br>fate,                            | aut<br>or                                                | cum<br>with                                                  | a.pl. <sup>6</sup> suis<br>their                                             |
| ar-avi-atum.d.(2) miserabantur [pl.3] ●●<br>did-deplore    |                                                          | lo-is.pl. <sup>6</sup> familiaribus<br>intimate-friends      |                                                                              |
|                                                            | e-is. <sup>4</sup> commune<br>(their) common             | m. <sup>4</sup> periculum.<br>danger.                        |                                                                              |
| Vulgò m.pl. <sup>4</sup> testamenta<br>Generally   wills   | ar-avi-atum.p.(2) obsignabantur [pl.3] ●●<br>were sealed |                                                              | [wills were                                                                  |
| m.pl. <sup>6</sup> totis<br>made] 'in (the) 'whole         | m.pl. <sup>6</sup> castris.<br>camp.                     | x-cla.pl. <sup>6</sup> Vocibus<br>'By (the) 'words           | ac<br>and                                                                    |
| or-oris. <sup>6</sup> timore<br>'by (the) 'fear            | ic.pl. <sup>2</sup> horum etiam<br>of-these also         | ic.pl. <sup>1</sup> ii,<br>those,                            | ul.pl. <sup>1</sup> qui, in m.pl. <sup>6</sup> castris<br>who, in (the) camp |
| habebant <sup>4</sup> magnum<br>had great                  | m. <sup>4</sup> usum,<br>experience, (namely)            | m-itis. <sup>1</sup> milites<br>(the) soldiers               | que<br>and                                                                   |
| lo-ionk.pl. <sup>1</sup> centuriones,<br>centurions,       | que<br>and                                               | ul.pl. <sup>1</sup> qui<br>(those) who                       |                                                                              |
| (cum-esse)   e-ul.(2) præerant [pl.3] ●●<br>commanded      | m. <sup>3</sup> equitatu<br>(the) cavalry                | paulatim<br>'were gradually                                  |                                                                              |
| ar-avi-atum.p.(2) perturbabantur. [pl.3] ●●<br>'disturbed. | Ex<br>(Those) of                                         | ic.pl. <sup>6</sup> his<br>these                             | ul.pl. <sup>1</sup> qui<br>who                                               |

|                                                   |                               |                                         |                             |                                |          |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------|
| volebant                                          | <sup>4</sup> se (pl.3) **     | existimari                              | minùs                       | <sup>a-pl.4</sup> timidos,     | dicebant |
| wished                                            | themselves                    | to-be-thought                           | less                        | timid,                         | said     |
|                                                   | <sup>4</sup> se (pl.3) **     | non vereri                              | <sup>in-l.4</sup> hostem,   | sed                            |          |
| (that) they                                       | 'did not                      | 'dread                                  | (the) enemy,                | but (that they)                |          |
| timere                                            | <sup>pl.4</sup> angustias     | <sup>or-ineris.2</sup> itineris (n.) ** | et                          |                                |          |
| feared                                            | (the) defiles [difficulties]  | 'of (the) 'march                        | and                         |                                |          |
| <sup>do-dinis.4</sup> magnitudinem (f.) **        | <sup>pl.2</sup> sylvarum,     | <sup>um-pl.1</sup> quæ                  |                             |                                |          |
| (the) greatness                                   | 'of (the) 'woods,             | which                                   |                             |                                |          |
| intercederent                                     | inter                         | <sup>in-pl.4</sup> eos                  | et                          | <sup>a.4</sup> Ariovistum,     | aut, ut  |
| intervened                                        | between                       | them                                    | and                         | Ariovistus,                    | or, that |
| <sup>4</sup> frumentarium                         | <sup>al.4</sup> rem           | (num-coos)   o-ul.sh.(3)                | posset                      | <sup>(3)</sup> **              |          |
| corn                                              | affair [provisions]           | 'might (not)                            | 'be-able                    |                                |          |
|                                                   | commode                       | satis                                   | supportari.                 | <sup>a-pl.1</sup> Etiam        | nonnulli |
| to-'be                                            | conveniently                  | enough                                  | 'supplied.                  | Also                           | some     |
| <sup>ar-ovi-atum.(3)</sup>                        | renuntiabant                  | <sup>(pl.2)</sup> **                    | <sup>ar-aris.3</sup> Cæsari | quum                           |          |
|                                                   | reported                      |                                         | to-Cæsar                    | when                           |          |
| jussisset                                         | <sup>m-pl.4</sup> castra      | moveri,                                 | et                          | <sup>m-pl.4</sup> signa        |          |
| he-had-ordered                                    | (the) camp                    | to-be-moved,                            | and                         | (the) standards                |          |
| ferri,                                            |                               |                                         |                             | <sup>or-lit-pl.1</sup> milites |          |
| to-be-borne-forwards [and the troops to advance], | (that)                        | (the) soldiers                          |                             |                                |          |
|                                                   | non (num-coos)   o-ul.in.(1)  | fore audientes                          | <sup>m.2</sup> dicto,       |                                |          |
| 'would not                                        | 'be                           | obedient                                | 'to (the) 'word (of com-    |                                |          |
|                                                   | neque                         | <sup>a-pl.4</sup> luros [part.] **      | <sup>m-pl.4</sup> signa     |                                |          |
| mand), nor                                        | would-they-bear-forward       | (the) standards                         |                             |                                |          |
| propter                                           | <sup>or-oris.4</sup> timorem. |                                         |                             |                                |          |
| on-account-of                                     | fear.                         |                                         |                             |                                |          |

## Lesson 58.

Nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant: hi neque vultum fingere, neque interdum lacrymas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgò totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus, ac timore, paullatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites, centurionesque, quique equitatu præerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minùs timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris, et magnitudinem silvarum, quæ inter eos atque

Ariovistum intercederent, aut rem frumentariam, ut satia commodè supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsari renuntiabant, cùm castra moveri, ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites, neque propter timorem signa latus.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 57 AND 58.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Nonnulli. Renuntiavit. Signa. Dictum. Timor. Timidus. Volebant. Hostis. Iter. Silvæ. Posset. Dicebant. Vulgò. Testamentum. Vox. Paullatim. Castris. Miles. Equitatus. Perturbabantur. Pudor. Vitabo. Vultus. Lacrymas. Poterant. Tabernaculis. Periculum. Miserabantur.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Standards. Fear. The greatness. Between. Them. Might be able. To be supplied. He reported. Camp. To be removed. A soldier. Experience. The command. Gradually. Cavalry. They were disturbed. They wished. The enemy. He might avoid. He did remain. Countenance. Fears. Tents. Danger. Will. In camp. Shame.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum timore perturbabantur. Se minùs timidos existimari volebant. Se vereri angustias itineris. Silvæ, quæ intercederent. Se hostem timere dicebant. Nonnulli Cæsari renuntiabant. Castra moveri jussisset. Non fore dicto audientes milites. Ut timoris suspicionem vitarent. Neque vultum fingere poterant. Abditi in tabernaculis suum fatum querebantur. Commune periculum miserabantur.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

That the soldiers would not be obedient to the word of command. The woods which intervened between them.

Cæsar ordered the camp to be moved. The soldiers, who had great experience. They commanded the cavalry. He wished to be thought less timid. They said that they did not fear the enemy. That they might avoid suspicion. These were not able to restrain their tears. They deplored their common danger. Wills were made. Some induced by shame.

# SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—PASSIVE VOICE.

"Ar." p. sb. (1) *Present Tense.* I, &c., may or can be loved, if I be loved, &c.

## SINGULAR.

## Terminations.

p. sb. (1) Amer [1], I may or can, &c., be loved..... er.  
 p. sb. (1) Ameris or amere [2], thou mayst, &c., be loved..... eris or ere.  
 p. sb. (1) Ametur [3], he may, &c., be loved..... etur.

## PLURAL.

p. sb. (1) Amemur [pl. 1], we may, &c., be loved..... emur.  
 p. sb. (1) Amemini [pl. 2], you may, &c., be loved..... emini.  
 p. sb. (1) Amentur [pl. 3], they may, &c., be loved..... entur.

"Ar." p. sb. (2) *Imperfect.* I, &c., might, could, would, or should be loved.

## SINGULAR.

p. sb. (2) Amarer [1], I might, &c., be loved..... arer.  
 p. sb. (2) Amareris or amarere [2], thou mightst be loved... areris or arera.  
 p. sb. (2) Amaretur [3], he might be loved..... aretur.

## PLURAL.

p. sb. (2) Amaremur [pl. 1], we might be loved..... aremur.  
 p. sb. (2) Amaremini [pl. 2], you might be loved..... aremini.  
 p. sb. (2) Amarentur [pl. 3], they might be loved..... arentur.

"Atum." p. sb. (4) *Perfect.* I may have been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus," and "sim—I may be," or "fuerim—I may have been."

## SINGULAR.

p. sb. (4) Amatus sim or fuerim [1], I may have been loved.  
 p. sb. (4) Amatus sis or fueris [2], thou mayst have been loved.  
 p. sb. (4) Amatus sit or fuerit [3], he may have been loved.

PLURAL.

- p. sb. (4) *Amati simus or fuerimus* [pl. 1], we may have been loved.  
 p. sb. (4) *Amati sitis or fueritis* [pl. 2], you may have been loved.  
 p. sb. (4) *Amati sint or fuerint* [pl. 3], they may have been loved.

*"Atum."* p. sb. (5) *Pluperfect. I, &c., might, could, would, or should have been loved. Formed by the perfect participle "amatus," and "essem—I might be," or "fuissem—I might have been."*

SINGULAR.

- p. sb. (5) *Amatus essem or fuissem* [1], I might have been loved.  
 p. sb. (5) *Amatus esses or fuisses* [2], thou mightest have been loved.  
 p. sb. (5) *Amatus esset or fuisset* [3], he might have been loved.

PLURAL.

- p. sb. (5) *Amati essemus or fuissetus* [pl. 1], we might have been loved.  
 p. sb. (5) *Amati essetis or fuissetis* [pl. 2], you might have been loved.  
 p. sb. (5) *Amati essent or fuissent* [pl. 3], they might have been loved.

*"AR."* P. IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Terminations.

- p. im. *Amare or amator* [2], be thou loved ..... are or ator.  
 p. im. *Amator* [3], let him be loved ..... ator.

PLURAL.

- p. im. *Amamini* [pl. 2], be ye loved ..... amini.  
 p. im. *Amantor* [pl. 3], let them be loved ..... antor.

P. IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*"Ar."* p. in. (1) *Present Tense.*

- p. in. (1) *Amari*, to be loved ..... ari.

*"Atum."* p. in. (4) *Perfect Tense.*

- p. in. (4) *Amatus esse or fuisse*, to have been loved.

*"Atum."* p. in. (3) *Future Tense.*

- p. in. (3) *Amatum iri*, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES [PART.].

*"Atum."* p. (4) *Perfect Tense* [part.].

- p. (4) *Amatus* [part.], loved or having been loved ..... atus.

"*Ar.*" p. (3) *Future Tense* [part.].

Terminations.

p. (3) *Amandus* [part.], to be loved, or necessary to be loved.... andus.

"*ATUM.*" P. SUPINE IN U.

p. *Amatu* [u], to be loved..... u.

The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive passive, the imperative, and the present tense of the infinitive, and the future participle, are formed from the first principal part, *ar*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, the perfect and future infinitive, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are formed from the third principal part, *atum*; or, rather, the perfect participle and the supine in *u* are thus formed.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ar* is changed into *er* in the first person, into *eris* or *ere* in the second, and in the third person into *etur*; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *emur* in the first, into *emini* in the second, and into *entur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, singular, *ar* is changed into *arer* in the first person, into *areris* or *arere* in the second, and into *aretur* in the third person; in the plural, *ar* is changed into *aremur* in the first, into *aremini* in the second, and into *arentur* in the third person.

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive have properly no terminations; for the perfect is formed by adding *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, &c., or *fuerim*, *fueris*, &c., to the perfect participle, both in the sense of *I have been*; the pluperfect is, in like manner, formed by adding *essem* or *fuissem*, both in the sense of *I had been*.

The imperative mood is formed, in the second person singular, by changing *ar* into *are* or *ator*; in the third person singular, by changing *ar* into *ator*; the second person plural is formed by changing *ar* into *amini*; and the third person plural by changing *ar* into *antor*.

In the infinitive, present tense, *ar* is changed into *ari*.

The perfect tense of the same is formed by the perfect participle and *esse* or *fuisse*, both in the sense of *to have been*. The future is formed by the supine in *um* and *iri*—*to go*, in the sense of *to be about to be*.

The perfect participle is formed by changing the third principal part, *atum*, into *atus*; the future participle is formed by changing the first principal part, *ar*, into *andus*.

The supine in *u* is formed by changing *um* into *u*.

The syllable *er* is sometimes added to the end of the infinitive present passive: as, *amarier*—*to be loved*, for *amari*—*to be loved*. This may take place in all the conjugations.

The participles, which form the perfect and future infinitive, are used in all genders and numbers, but only in the nominative and accusative.

### *Deponent Verbs.*

There are many verbs of the first conjugation, that have the passive form, but with an active signification. There are, also, verbs in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, which also have the passive form, with an active signification. Such verbs are called *deponents*.

*Hortor*—*I exhort*, is a deponent verb. It has all the moods of the passive voice, with the participles and supine in *u* of the same: exactly like *amor*—*I am loved*. Besides these, it has the present and future participles of the active voice, the gerunds of the active voice, and the supine in *um*.

These deponents, in the lessons, are denoted by a *d*, in place of a *p*.

### Lesson 59.

|                 |                      |               |                     |
|-----------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| in.6 Eodem      | um-oria.6 tempore    | oc-pl.4 hæc   | m-pl.4 mandata      |
| 'At (the) 'same | time                 | these         | charges             |
| referebantur    | ar-aria.3 Cæsari; et | a-pl.1 legati | veniebant ab        |
| were-brought    | to-Cæsar; and        | ambassadors   | came from           |
| a-pl.6 Æduis et | r.6 Trevisis.        | a-pl.1 Ædúi   | questum, quòd       |
| (the) Ædúi and  | (the) Treviri.       | (The) Ædúi    | a-complaining, that |
| pl.1 " Harudes, | qui                  |               | nuper               |
| " The Harudes,  | who                  | 'had          | lately              |



|                            |                               |                           |                    |                     |               |           |         |     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|-----------|---------|-----|
| ar-avi-   atum.p.3b.(3)    | transportati essent [pl.3] ●● | in                        | 4                  | Galliam             |               |           |         |     |
|                            | 'been-carried-over            | into                      |                    | Gaul                |               |           |         |     |
| ar-avi-atum.d.3b.(3)       | popularentur [pl.3] ●●        | in-is.pl.4                | fines              | in.pl.3             | eorum ;       |           |         |     |
|                            | laid-waste                    | (the)                     | territories        |                     | of-them       |           |         |     |
|                            | pl.4 sese (3) ●●              | (num-esse).a-   ul.in.(4) |                    |                     | potuisse      |           |         |     |
| [their territories];       | (that) they                   |                           | 'have (not)'       | 'been-able          |               |           |         |     |
| redimere                   | 2-cl.4 pacem                  | 2.3                       | Ariovisti,         | ne                  | quidem        |           |         |     |
| to-purchase                | peace                         |                           | of-Ariovistus,     | not                 | even          |           |         |     |
| ar-dedi-   atum.p.(4).pl.6 | dati [part.] ●●               | co-idia.pl.6              | obsidibus."        |                     | Autem         |           |         |     |
|                            | having-given                  |                           | hostages."         |                     | But           |           |         |     |
| 2.pl.1                     | Treviri                       |                           | "centum            | 2.pl.4              | pagos         |           |         |     |
| (the) Treviri              | (complained, that a)          |                           | "hundred           |                     | cantons       |           |         |     |
| 2.pl.3                     | Suevorum                      | consedisse ad             | 4                  | ripam               | 2.3           | Rheni,    | ui.pl.1 | qui |
| 'of (the)'                 | 'Suevi                        | had-settled on            | (the) banks        | 'of (the)'          | 'Rhine,       | who       |         |     |
| ar-avi-atum.d.3b.(3)       | conarentur [pl.3] ●●          | transire                  | 2.4                | Rhenum ;            |               |           |         |     |
|                            | were-endeavoring              | to-cross-over             | (the) Rhine ;      | (that)              |               |           |         |     |
| ter-tris.pl.1              | fratres                       | 4                         | Nasuum             | et                  | 2.4           | Cimberium |         |     |
| (the) brothers             | Nasua                         |                           | and                |                     |               | Cimberius |         |     |
| (num-esse).a-   ul.in.(1)  | præesse                       | in.pl.3                   | iis."              | ui.pl.6             | Quibus        | 2.pl.6    | rebus   |     |
|                            | command                       | them."                    | By-which           |                     |               | things    |         |     |
| 2-tris.1                   | Cæsar                         | vehementer                | 2.1                | commotus [part.] ●● |               |           |         |     |
| Cæsar                      | 'being                        | exceedingly               |                    | 'moved              |               |           |         |     |
| ar-   avi-atum.(4)         | existimavit (3) ●●            |                           |                    | 2                   | sibi (3) ●●   |           |         |     |
|                            | thought                       | that-it-would-be-         | 'necessary         | for-himself         |               |           |         |     |
| ar-avi-atum.p.(3).m.6      | maturandum, [part.] ●●        | ne, si                    | 'nova              | 2.1                 | manus (f.) ●● |           |         |     |
|                            | 'to-hasten,                   | lest, if (a) new          | band               |                     |               |           |         |     |
| 2.pl.3                     | Suevorum                      | conjunxisset              | 4                  | sese (3) ●●         | cum           |           |         |     |
| 'of (the)'                 | 'Suevi                        | should-have-joined        |                    | itself              | with          |           |         |     |
| m-eris.pl.6                | veteribus                     | pl.6                      | copiis             | 2.3                 | Ariovisti,    | minus     |         |     |
| (the) old                  | forces                        | of-Ariovistus,            | it-might-'         | be                  | less          |           |         |     |
| (num-esse)   e-ul.3b.(3)   | posset (3) ●●                 | facile                    | resisti.           |                     |               |           |         |     |
|                            | 'able                         | easily                    | to-be-withstood    | [he might be the    |               |           |         |     |
|                            |                               | Itaque                    | 2                  | frumentaria         | 2.6           | re        |         |     |
| less able to resist them]. | Therefore                     | corn                      | thing [provisions] |                     |               |           |         |     |
| ar-avi-   atum.p.(4).6     | comparatâ, [part.] ●●         | quàm                      | celerrimè          |                     |               |           |         |     |
|                            | being-provided,               | as                        | most speedily (as) |                     |               |           |         |     |
| (num-esse).a-   ul.(4)     | potuit, (3) ●●                | contendit                 | m.pl.6             | magnis              |               |           |         |     |
|                            | he-could,                     | he-marched                | by-great           |                     |               |           |         |     |
| ter-tris.pl.6              | itineribus (n.) ●●            | ad                        | 2.4                | Ariovistum.         |               |           |         |     |
|                            | journeys                      | [by forced marches]       | to                 | Ariovistus.         |               |           |         |     |

## Lesson 60.

Hæc, eodē tempore, Cæsari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Æduis et Trevis veniebant; Ædúi, questum, quòd “Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese, ne obsidibus quidem datis, pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisset;” Treviri autem, “pagos centum Suevorum ad ripam Rheni consedissee, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; iis præesse Nasuam et Cimerium fratres.” Quibus rebus Cæsar vehementer commotus, maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suevorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minùs facilè resisti posset. Itaque re frumentariâ, quàm celerrimè potuit, comparatâ, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 59 AND 60.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Vehementer. Sibi. Existimavit. Manus. Vetus. Facilè. Possent. Celerrimè. Contendit. Tempus. Legati. Questum. Nuper. Transportati essent. Finis. Popularentur. Pax. Potuisset. Pagus. Ripa. Transire. Frater.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

They laid waste. To purchase. Territories. Peace. Hostages. Hundred. Banks. Canton. To cross over. Brothers. Time. Charges. They came. A complaining. Moved. He thought. New. Old. Less. Forces. Easily. Therefore. Journey. Most speedily. He marched.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quibus rebus commotus. Minùs facilè resisti posset. Re frumentariâ comparatâ. Ad Ariovistum contendit. Eodem tempore mandata referebantur. Legati veniebant. Nuper in Galliam veniebant. Harudes, fines eorum popularentur.

Obsidibus Ariovisto datis. Ad ripam Rheni consedissee.  
Germani transire conarentur.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Cæsar being exceedingly moved. He thought it would be necessary. Therefore provisions being provided. He marched by forced march. They laid waste their territories. To purchase peace. Hostages having been given. On the banks of the Rhine. Ambassadors came from the Treviri to Cæsar.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

The second conjugation has its principal parts in *er-~~ui~~-itum*; but they are more irregular than these principal parts in the first conjugation, especially in the second and third parts.

#### *Active Voice.*

##### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Present Indicative. | Present Infinitive. | Perfect Indicative. | Supine.         |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Moneo.              | Monēre (ēr).        | Monui (ui).         | Monitum (itum). |
| I-advise.           | to-advise.          | I-have-advised.     | an advising.    |

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*Ēr.*" (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., advise.*

| SINGULAR.                         | Terminations. |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| (1) Moneo [1], I advise.....      | eo.           |
| (1) Mones [2], thou advisest..... | es.           |
| (1) Monet [3], he advises.....    | et.           |

##### PLURAL.

|                                            |       |
|--------------------------------------------|-------|
| (1) Monemus [pl. 1], we advise.....        | emus. |
| (1) Monetis [pl. 2], ye or you advise..... | etis. |
| (1) Monent [pl. 3], they advise..          | ent.  |

"*Ēr.*" (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was advising, or did advise.*

##### SINGULAR.

|                                          |       |
|------------------------------------------|-------|
| (2) Monebam [1], I was advising.....     | ebam. |
| (2) Monebas [2], thou wast advising..... | ebas. |
| (2) Monebat [3], he was advising.....    | ebat. |

PLURAL.

Terminations.

- (2) Monebamus [pl. 1], we were advising..... ebamus.  
 (2) Monebatis [pl. 2], you were advising..... ebatis.  
 (2) Monebant [pl. 3], they were advising..... ebant.

"*Ēr.*" (3) *Future. I, &c., shall or will advise.*

SINGULAR.

- (3) Monebo [1], I shall advise..... ebo.  
 (3) Monebis [2], thou wilt advise..... ebis.  
 (3) Monebit [3], he will advise ..... ebit.

PLURAL.

- (3) Monebimus [pl. 1], we shall advise..... ebimus.  
 (3) Monebitis [pl. 2], you will advise..... ebitis.  
 (3) Monebunt [pl. 3], they will advise ..... ebunt.

"*Uī.*" (4) *Perfect. I, &c., have advised.*

SINGULAR.

- (4) Monui [1], I have advised..... ui.  
 (4) Monuisti [2], thou hast advised ..... uisti.  
 (4) Monuit [3], he has advised ..... uit.

PLURAL.

- (4) Monuimus [pl. 1], we have advised..... uimus.  
 (4) Monuistis [pl. 2], you have advised ..... uistis.  
 (4) Monuerunt or monuere [pl. 3], they have advised..... uerunt or uere.

"*Uī.*" (5) *Pluperfect. I, &c., had advised.*

SINGULAR.

- (5) Monueram [1], I had advised ..... ueram.  
 (5) Monueras [2], thou hadst advised..... ueras.  
 (5) Monuerat [3], he had advised..... uerat.

PLURAL.

- (5) Monueramus [pl. 1], we had advised ..... ueramus.  
 (5) Monueratis [pl. 2], you had advised ..... ueratis.  
 (5) Monuerant [pl. 3], they had advised..... uerant.

"*Uī.*" (6) *Future Perfect. I, &c., shall have advised.*

SINGULAR.

- (6) Monuero [1], I shall have advised..... uero.  
 (6) Monueris [2], thou wilt have advised..... ueris.  
 (6) Monuerit [3], he will have advised ..... uerit.

## PLURAL.

## Terminations.

- (6) Monuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have advised..... uerimus.  
 (6) Monueritis [pl. 2], you will have advised ..... ueritis.  
 (6) Monuerint [pl. 3], they will have advised..... uerint.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr*. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the second principal part, *ui*.

In the present tense, in the singular, the *ēr* is changed into *eo* in the first, into *es* in the second, and into *et* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *emus* in the first, into *etis* in the second, and into *ent* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, the *ēr* is changed into *ebam* in the first, into *ebas* in the second, and into *ebat* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *ebamus* in the first, into *ebatis* in the second, and into *ebant* in the third person.

In the future, in the singular, the *ēr* is changed into *ebo* in the first, into *ebis* in the second, and into *ebit* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *ebimus* in the first, into *ebitis* in the second, and into *ebunt* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *ui* in the first, into *uisti* in the second, and into *uit* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *uimus* in the first, into *uistis* in the second, and into *uerunt* or *uere* in the third person.

In the pluperfect, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *ueram* in the first person, into *ueras* in the second, and into *uerat* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *ueramus* in the first, into *ueratis* in the second, and into *uerant* in the third person.

In the future perfect, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *uero* in the first, into *ueris* in the second, and into *uerit* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *uerimus* in the first person, into *ueritis* in the second person, and into *uerint* in the third person.

## Lesson 61.

|                                |                              |                                  |                         |                                        |               |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------|
| Quare                          | quoniam                      | 8r-ausue-sum, (1)                | audeo <sup>(1) ●●</sup> | nondum                                 | facere        |
| Wherefore                      | because                      |                                  | I-dare                  | not-yet                                | do            |
| id. 4 id                       | od. 1 quod                   | (sum-esse)   e-ul. (1)           | est <sup>(3) ●●</sup>   | m. 1 primum                            | atque         |
| that,                          | which                        |                                  | is                      | (the) first                            | and           |
| m. 1 proprium                  | oc. 2 hujus                  | m. 2 imperii                     |                         |                                        | que-          |
| peculiar (duty)                | of-this                      | command [of this consular power] |                         |                                        | and           |
| 2 disciplinæ                   | or-oria. pl. 2               | majorum;                         | faciam                  | id. 4 id                               |               |
| 'of (the) 'institutions        |                              | 'of our 'ancestors;              | I-shall-do              | that                                   |               |
| od. 1 quod                     | (sum-esse)   e-ul. (1)       | est <sup>(3) ●●</sup>            | us-oria. 1              | lenius (c.) ●●                         | ad            |
| which                          |                              | is                               |                         | milder                                 | as-respects   |
| as-atia. 4                     | severitatem,                 | et                               | us-oria. 1              | utilius (c.) ●●                        | ad            |
| severity,                      |                              | and                              |                         | more-useful                            | as-respects   |
| is-is. 4                       | communem                     | us-atia. 4                       | salutem; (f.) ●●        | nam                                    | si            |
| (the) common                   |                              |                                  | safety;                 | for                                    | if            |
| (b) 8r-   ei-sum (6)           | jussero <sup>(1) ●●</sup>    | 2 te <sup>(2) ●●</sup>           | interfici               | 'reliqua                               |               |
| I-shall-have-ordered           |                              | you                              | to-be-slain             | (the) remaining                        |               |
| us. 1 manus (f.) ●●            |                              |                                  | or-oria. pl. 2          | conjuratorum                           |               |
| bands                          |                              |                                  |                         | 'of (the) 'conspirators                |               |
| (aid) 8r-sedi-cessum (3)       | residebit <sup>(3) ●●</sup>  | in ei-6 and 6                    | republicâ;              | sin <sup>(1) tu<sup>(2) ●●</sup></sup> |               |
|                                | will-settle                  | in                               | (the) republic;         | but-if you                             |               |
| exieris                        | (quod                        | jamdudum                         | ar-avi-atum. d. (1)     | hortor <sup>(1) ●●</sup>               |               |
| will-depart                    | (which                       | now-for-a-long-time              |                         | I exhort                               |               |
| 4 te, (3)                      | 1 magna                      | et 1 pernicioſa                  | 1 sentina               | ei. 2 and 2                            | reipublicæ    |
| you (to do),                   | (that) great                 | and pernicious                   | sink                    | 'of (the) 1                            | republic      |
| a. pl. 2                       | tuorum                       | es-itia. pl. 2                   | comitum                 | exhaustietur                           | ex            |
| (consisting)                   | of-your                      |                                  | companions              | will-be-drawn-off from                 |               |
| be-bis. 6                      | urbe.                        | uid. 1                           | Quid                    | (sum-esse)   e-ul                      | est, (3) ●●   |
| (the) city.                    | What                         |                                  | is-it,                  | 5 Catilina?                            | Num           |
| ar-avi-atum (1)                | dubitas <sup>(2) ●●</sup>    | facere                           | id. 4 id,               | 6 me <sup>(1)</sup>                    |               |
| do-you-hesitate                |                              | to-do                            | that                    | I                                      |               |
| ar-avi-atum (1)                | ne-atia. 6                   | imperante, [part.] ●●            | od. 4 quod              | jam                                    | faciebas      |
|                                |                              | commanding,                      |                         | which just-now                         | you-did       |
|                                | 6 tuâ                        | ne-atia. 6                       | sponde?                 | 1-is. 1                                | consul        |
| [were about to do] of-your-own |                              |                                  | accord?                 | (the) consul                           |               |
| (b) 8r-edi-essum (1)           | jubet <sup>(3) ●●</sup>      | is-is. 4                         | hostem                  | exire                                  | ex            |
| orders (you)                   | (an) enemy                   | to-go-out from                   | (the) city;             |                                        |               |
| ar-avi-atum (1)                | interrogas <sup>(2) ●●</sup> | 4 me <sup>(1) ●●</sup>           | num                     | in                                     | m. 4 exilium? |
| do-you-ask                     | me                           | whether                          | into                    | exile?                                 |               |

Non <sup>1</sup>(b)ŕ-ai-aum<sup>(1)</sup> jubeo; <sup>(1)</sup>•• sed si consulis 'me<sup>(1)</sup>••  
 I-'do not 'command but if you-consult me

<sup>1</sup>(a)ŕ-ai-aum<sup>(1)</sup> suadeo. <sup>(1)</sup>••

I-persuade (you to do so).

### Lesson 62.

Quare quoniam id, quod primum, atque hujus imperii disciplinæque majorum proprium est, facere nondum audeo; faciam id, quod est ad severitatem lenius, et ad communem salutem utilius; nam, si te interfici jussero, residebit in republicâ reliqua conjuratorum manus; sin tu (quod te jamdudum hortor), exieris, exhaurietur ex urbe tuorum comitum magna et perniciosa sentina reipublicæ. Quid est, Catilina? Num dubitas id, me imperante, facere, quod jam tuâ sponte faciebas? Exire ex urbe consul hostem jubet; interrogas me, num in exilium? Non jubeo; sed si me consulis, suadeo.

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 61 AND 62.

##### *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Num. Dubito. Imperavi. Urbs. Hostis. Interrogavit. Jussit. Suadeo. Facere. Audemus. Severitas. Salus. Lenius. Interfici. Residebo. Manus. Hortor. Comes. Disciplina. Utilius.

##### *English words to be translated into Latin.*

To go out. He will ask. He persuades. They will settle. But if. He has exhorted. Companions. City. They hesitate. He commands. He orders. Enemy. Because. He dares. Peculiar. Command. Milder. I shall have ordered. Hand or band.

##### *Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quod te hortor. Sin tu exieris ex urbe. Quid est? Dubitas id facere? Quod tuâ sponte faciebas. Non jubeo, sed suadeo. Quod proprium est, facere nondum audeo. Faciam

id, quod est ad communem salutem utilius. Si te interfici jussero. Residebit in republicâ reliqua conjuratorum manus.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Will you ask me. I do not command, but I persuade. He will settle in the republic. He exhorts me. What is it? Whether did you hesitate to do it. You did it of your own accord. The consul orders you. Because I dare to do it. Which is the first and peculiar duty of this command, which is more useful as respects the common safety.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—ACTIVE VOICE.

*“Ēr.” sb. (1) Present Tense. I, &c., may, &c., advise.*

| SINGULAR.                                        | Terminations. |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (1) Moneam [1], I may, &c., advise.....      | eam.          |
| sb. (1) Moneas [2], thou mayst, &c., advise..... | eas.          |
| sb. (1) Moneat [3], he may, &c., advise.....     | eat.          |

| PLURAL.                                             |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------|
| sb. (1) Moneamus [pl. 1], we may, &c., advise.....  | eamus. |
| sb. (1) Moneatis [pl. 2], you may, &c., advise..... | eatis. |
| sb. (1) Moneant [pl. 3], they may, &c., advise..... | eant.  |

*“Ēr.” sb. (2) Imperfect. I, &c., might, could, &c., advise.*

| SINGULAR.                                           |       |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------|
| sb. (2) Monerem [1], I might, &c., advise.....      | erem. |
| sb. (2) Moneres [2], thou mightst, &c., advise..... | eres. |
| sb. (2) Moneret [3], he might, &c., advise.....     | eret. |

| PLURAL.                                                |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| sb. (2) Moneremus [pl. 1], we might, &c., advise.....  | eremus. |
| sb. (2) Moneretis [pl. 2], you might, &c., advise..... | eretis. |
| sb. (2) Monerent [pl. 3], they might, &c., advise..... | erent.  |

*“Uī.” sb. (4) Perfect. I, &c., may have advised.*

| SINGULAR.                                          |        |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------|
| sb. (4) Monuerim [1], I may have advised.....      | uerim. |
| sb. (4) Monueris [2], thou mayst have advised..... | ueris. |
| sb. (4) Monuerit [3], he may have advised.....     | uerit. |



## PLURAL.

## Terminations.

|                                                       |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| sb. (4) Monuerimus [pl. 1], we may have advised.....  | uerimus. |
| sb. (4) Monueritis [pl. 2], you may have advised..... | ueritis. |
| sb. (4) Monuerint [pl. 3], they may have advised..... | uerint.  |

"*Ui.*" sb. (5) *Pluperfect.* *I, &c., might, could, &c., have advised.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                                             |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| sb. (5) Monuisssem [1], I might, &c., have advised.....     | uisssem. |
| sb. (5) Monuisses [2], thou mightst, &c., have advised..... | uisses.  |
| sb. (5) Monuisset [3], he might, &c., have advised.....     | uisset.  |

## PLURAL.

|                                                                |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| sb. (5) Monuisssemus [pl. 1], we might, &c., have advised..... | uisssemus. |
| sb. (5) Monuissetis [pl. 2], you might, &c., have advised..... | uissetis.  |
| sb. (5) Monuissent [pl. 3], they might, &c., have advised..... | uissent.   |

"*Er.*" IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

|                                          |           |
|------------------------------------------|-----------|
| im. Mone or moneto [2], advise thou..... | e or eto. |
| im. Moneto [3], let him advise.....      | eto.      |

## PLURAL.

|                                                |               |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| im. Monete or monetote [pl. 2], advise ye..... | ete or etote. |
| im. Moneto [pl. 3], let them advise.....       | ento.         |

## IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"*Er.*" in. (1) *Present Tense.*

|                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| in. (1) Monere, to advise..... | ere. |
|--------------------------------|------|

"*Ui.*" in. (4) *Perfect Tense.*

|                                        |        |
|----------------------------------------|--------|
| in. (4) Monuisse, to have advised..... | uisse. |
|----------------------------------------|--------|

"*Itum.*" in. (3) *Future.*

|                                                    |              |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| in. (3) Moniturus esse, to be about to advise..... | iturus esse. |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------|

## PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"*Er.*" (1) *Present Tense.*

|                                                 |      |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|
| (1) ens-entis. 1. Monens [part.], advising..... | ens. |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|

"*Itum.*" (3) *Future Tense.*

|                                                         |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| (3) us-a-um. 1. Moniturus [part.], about to advise..... | us-a-um. |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------|

"ER." GERUNDS [GER.].

|                                                            | Terminations. |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 2. <i>G. Monendi</i> [ger.], of advising.....              | endi.         |
| 3. <i>D. Monendo</i> [ger.], to advising.....              | endo.         |
| 4. <i>A. Monendum</i> [ger.], advising.....                | endum.        |
| 6. <i>Ab. Monendo</i> [ger.], in, with, &c., advising..... | endo.         |

UM. SUPINE.

|                                       |       |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>Monitum</i> [um], an advising..... | itum. |
|---------------------------------------|-------|

In the above, the present and imperfect subjunctive, with the imperative, and all their numbers and persons, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr*; also, the present infinitive, present participle, and the gerunds, are formed from the same *ēr*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive are formed from the second principal part, *ui*; also, the perfect infinitive is formed from the same. The future participle, the future infinitive, and the supine in *um*, are formed from the third principal part, *itum*.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *eam* in the first person, into *eas* in the second, and into *eat* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *eamus* in the first person, into *eatīs* in the second, and into *eant* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *erem* in the first person, into *eres* in the second, and into *eret* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *eremus* in the first person, into *eretis* in the second, and into *erent* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *uerim* in the first person, into *ueris* in the second, and into *uerit* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *uerimus* in the first person, into *ueritis* in the second, and into *uerint* in the third person.

In the pluperfect, in the singular, *ui* is changed into *uissem* in the first person, into *uisses* in the second, and into *uisset* in the third person; in the plural, *ui* is changed into *uissemus*

in the first person, into *uissetis* in the second, and into *uissent* in the third person.

In the imperative mood, *ēr* is changed, in the second person, into *e* or *eto*; in the third person, into *eto*. In the plural, *ēr*, in the second person, is changed into *ete* or *etote*; in the third person, into *ento*.

In the infinitive mood, present tense, *ēr* is changed into *ere*; in the perfect of the same, *ui* is changed into *uisse*; in the future of the same, *itum* is changed into *iturus esse*.

In the participles, in the present tense, *ēr* is changed into *ens*; in the future, *itum* is changed into *iturus*.

In the gerunds, *ēr* is changed, in the genitive, into *endi*; in the dative, into *endo*; in the accusative, into *endum*; in the ablative, into *endo*.

In the supine, *itum* is changed into *itum*.

The same omission of *ve* or *vi*, that has been indicated in the first conjugation, may also take place in this second, when *ve* or *vi* occurs, in the second principal part: as, *implērunt* for *impleverunt*—they have filled.

### Lesson 63.

|                            |                                 |                |                                      |                                  |                                            |                                               |              |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Ex <sup>od.6</sup>         | quo <sup>(sum-esse)</sup>       |                | a- <sup>ui</sup> .ab. <sup>(2)</sup> | posset <sup>[3] ●●</sup>         |                                            | ar- <sup>avi</sup> -atum.p.in. <sup>(1)</sup> | judicari     |
| From                       | which                           |                |                                      | it-might                         |                                            |                                               | be-judged    |
| quantum                    | m.2 boni,                       | '              | constantia                           |                                  | ēr- <sup>ui</sup> -itum.ab. <sup>(2)</sup> | haberet <sup>[3] ●●</sup>                     | in           |
| how-much                   | of-good,                        |                | constancy                            |                                  |                                            | might-have                                    | in           |
| 'se; <sup>(3) ●●</sup>     | propterea                       | quòd           | ui.pl.4                              | quos                             |                                            | aliquandiu                                    |              |
| itself;                    | because                         | that (those)   |                                      | whom they-'                      | had for-some-time                          |                                               |              |
| ar   ui.ab. <sup>(5)</sup> | timuissent <sup>[pl.3] ●●</sup> | sine           | '                                    | causa                            | is-is.pl.1                                 | inermes,                                      |              |
|                            | 'feared                         | without        |                                      | cause (when)                     |                                            | unarmed,                                      |              |
|                            | postea                          | ar-            | avi-atum.ab. <sup>(5)</sup>          | superassent <sup>[pl.3] ●●</sup> | is-is.pl.4                                 | hos                                           |              |
| they-'                     | had                             | afterwards     |                                      | 'conquered                       |                                            | those                                         |              |
|                            | a.pl.4                          | armatos et     | or-oris.pl.4                         | victores.                        |                                            | Denique,                                      |              |
| (same, when)               | armed and                       |                | conquerors.                          |                                  | In-fine, (that)                            |                                               |              |
| is-is.pl.4                 | hos                             | a.pl.4         | Germanos                             | (sum-esse)   e-fui               | esse                                       | is-is.pl.4                                    | eosdem, cum. |
| these                      | Germans                         |                | were                                 | (the) same,                      | with                                       |                                               |              |
| ui.pl.6                    | quibus.                         | a.pl.1         | Helvetii                             |                                  | sæpenumerò                                 |                                               |              |
|                            | whom                            | (the) Helvetii | '                                    | having                           | often                                      |                                               |              |

|                                                                                                                     |                                                   |                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| a.pl. <sup>1</sup> congressi [part.] ●●                                                                             | plerumque ar-   avi-atum.ab.(5)                   | superâssent [pl.3] ●● |
| 'engaged                                                                                                            | 'had mostly                                       | 'overcome             |
| non solum in a.pl. <sup>6</sup> suis,                                                                               | sed etiam in                                      |                       |
| (them) not only in their-own (territories),                                                                         | but also in                                       |                       |
| is-is.pl. <sup>6</sup> finibus ie.pl. <sup>3</sup> illorum;                                                         | ui.pl. <sup>1</sup> qui                           |                       |
| (the) territories   of-them [of these Germans],                                                                     | who [the Helvetii]                                |                       |
| tamen non (num-esse).a-   ui.ab.(4)                                                                                 | potuerint [pl.3] ●●                               |                       |
| however 'have not                                                                                                   | 'been-able                                        |                       |
| (num-esse)   e-uli.in.(1) esse r-ris.pl. <sup>1</sup> pares er. <sup>3</sup> nostro a.s. <sup>3</sup> exercitui. Si |                                                   |                       |
| to-be equal to-our army. If                                                                                         |                                                   |                       |
| m. <sup>1</sup> adversum m. <sup>1</sup> proelium et 'fuga a.pl. <sup>3</sup> Gallorum                              |                                                   |                       |
| (the) adverse battle and flight 'of (the) 'Gauls                                                                    |                                                   |                       |
| ↓ sr-i-tum.ab.(3) commoveret [3] ●●                                                                                 | ui.pl. <sup>4</sup> quos, ie.pl. <sup>4</sup> hos |                       |
| should-disturb any, (that) those                                                                                    |                                                   |                       |
| (num-esse)   e-uli.in.(1) posse reperire, si quærerent, (that)                                                      |                                                   |                       |
| would-be-able to-find, if they-inquired, (that)                                                                     |                                                   |                       |
| a.pl. <sup>6</sup> Gallis ar-avi-   atum.(4).a.pl. <sup>6</sup> defatigatis [part.] ●●                              | as-atia. <sup>6</sup> diuturnitate                |                       |
| (the) Gauls being-wearied 'by (the) 'long-duration                                                                  |                                                   |                       |
| m. <sup>3</sup> belli, 'of (the) 'war, (that)                                                                       | a. <sup>4</sup> Ariovistum, Ariovistus, quum      |                       |
| (in).sr-ui-entum.sub.(5) continuisset [3] ●●                                                                        | 'se [3] ●● a.pl. <sup>4</sup> multos              |                       |
| he-had-kept himself many                                                                                            |                                                   |                       |
| is-is.pl. <sup>4</sup> menses (m.) ●● m.pl. <sup>6</sup> castris ac us-udis.pl. <sup>6</sup> paludibus (f.) ●●      |                                                   |                       |
| months in-camps and marshes                                                                                         |                                                   |                       |
| neque fecisset as-atia. <sup>4</sup> potestatem 'sui [3] ●●                                                         |                                                   |                       |
| nor had-made power of-himself [nor had given an                                                                     |                                                   |                       |
| subitò a. <sup>4</sup> adortum [part.] ●●                                                                           |                                                   |                       |
| opportunity of battle] 'having suddenly 'attacked (the Gauls)                                                       |                                                   |                       |
| jam   ar-avi-atum.(1).as-atia.pl. <sup>4</sup> desperantes [part.] ●●                                               | de 'pugnâ et                                      |                       |
| now despairing of battle and                                                                                        |                                                   |                       |
| a.pl. <sup>4</sup> dispersos, [part.] ●● vicisse magis lo-lonis. <sup>6</sup> ratione ac                            |                                                   |                       |
| scattered, conquered more 'by (his) 'skill and                                                                      |                                                   |                       |
| m. <sup>6</sup> consilio quàm us-utia. <sup>6</sup> virtute (f.) ●●                                                 |                                                   |                       |
| 'by (his) 'counsel than 'by (his) 'courage.                                                                         |                                                   |                       |

#### Lesson 64.

Ex quo judicari posset, quantum haberet in se boni constantia; propterea quòd, quos aliquandiu inermes sine causâ timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superâssent. De-

nique hos esse eosdem Germanos, quibuscum sæpenumerò Helvetii congressi, non solùm in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superâssent, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint. Si quos adversum prœlium, et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos; si quærerent, reperire posse, diurnitate belli defatigatis Gallis, Ariovistum, quum multos menses castris ac paludibus se continuisset, neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugna, et dispersos, subitò adortum, magis ratione ac consilio, quàm virtute vicisse.

EXERCISES ON LESSONS 63 AND 64.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Prœlium. Fuga. Reperire. Diurnitas. Bellum. Mensis. Castris. Potestas. Palus. Desperavit. Pugna. Consilium. Virtute. Eosdem. Denique. Sæpenumerò. Finis. Superavissent. Tamen. Par. Exercitus.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Months. Marshes. Power. Suddenly. Despairing. Battle. Mostly. Only. Territories. Equal. Flight. To be able. Being fatigued. They inquired. War. He had kept. To be judged. Might have. Because. Without. Unarmed. They had conquered. Conquerors. In fine. Often.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Germanos sæpenumerò superâssent. Pares non sunt nostro exercitui. Quantum haberet in se boni constantia. Quos sine causâ timuissent. Hos armatos superâssent. Si quos fuga Gallorum commoveret. Hos reperire posse. Ariovistus castris se continuisset. Galli desperantes de pugna. Magis consilio quàm virtute.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

They had overcome them in their own territories. Who have not been able. They are not equal to our army. If

the flight of the Gauls should disturb any. They may be able to find. He kept himself many months in camp. He conquered more by counsel than by courage. From which it might be judged. Because they had feared them without cause.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*Er.*" p. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am advised.*

SINGULAR.

Terminations.

|                                                      |              |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| p. (1) Moneor [1], I am advised .....                | eor.         |
| p. (1) Moneris or monere [2], thou art advised ..... | eris or ere. |
| p. (1) Monetur [3], he is advised.....               | etur.        |

PLURAL.

|                                                 |        |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------|
| p. (1) Monemur [pl. 1], we are advised.....     | emur.  |
| p. (1) Monemini [pl. 2], you are advised.....   | emini. |
| p. (1) Monentur [pl. 3], they are advised ..... | entur. |

"*Ēr.*" p. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was advised.*

SINGULAR.

|                                                           |                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| p. (2) Monebar [1], I was advised .....                   | ebar.            |
| p. (2) Monebaris or monebare [2], thou wast advised ..... | ebaris or ebare. |
| p. (2) Monebatur [3], he was advised.....                 | ebatur.          |

PLURAL.

|                                                   |          |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------|
| p. (2) Monebamur [pl. 1], we were advised .....   | ebamur.  |
| p. (2) Monebamini [pl. 2], you were advised.....  | ebamini. |
| p. (2) Monebantur [pl. 3], they were advised..... | ebantur. |

"*Ēr.*" p. (3) *Future. I, &c., shall or will be advised.*

SINGULAR.

|                                                             |                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| p. (3) Monebor [1], I shall be advised .....                | ebor.            |
| p. (3) Moneberis or monebere [2], thou wilt be advised..... | eberis or ebere. |
| p. (3) Monebitur [3], he will be advised.....               | ebitur.          |

PLURAL.

|                                                      |          |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| p. (3) Monebimur [pl. 1], we shall be advised .....  | ebimur.  |
| p. (3) Monebimini [pl. 2], you will be advised.....  | ebimini. |
| p. (3) Monebuntur [pl. 3], they will be advised..... | ebuntur. |

*"Itum."* p. (4) *Perfect Tense.* *I, &c., have been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus—advised," and "sum—I am," or "fui—I have been."*

## SINGULAR.

- p. (4) *Monitus sum or fui* [1], I have been advised.  
 p. (4) *Monitus es or fuisti* [2], thou hast been advised.  
 p. (4) *Monitus est or fuit* [3], he has been advised.

## PLURAL.

- p. (4) *Moniti sumus or fuimus* [pl. 1], we have been advised.  
 p. (4) *Moniti estis or fuistis* [pl. 2], you have been advised.  
 p. (4) *Moniti sunt or fuerunt or fuere* [pl. 3], they have been advised.

*"Itum."* p. (5) *Pluperfect Tense.* *I, &c., had been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus—advised," and "eram—I was," or "fueram—I had been."*

## SINGULAR.

- p. (5) *Monitus eram or fueram* [1], I had been advised.  
 p. (5) *Monitus eras or fueras* [2], thou hadst been advised.  
 p. (5) *Monitus erat or fuerat* [3], he had been advised.

## PLURAL.

- p. (5) *Moniti eramus or fueramus* [pl. 1], we had been advised.  
 p. (5) *Moniti eratis or fueratis* [pl. 2], you had been advised.  
 p. (5) *Moniti erant or fuerant* [pl. 3], they had been advised.

*"Itum."* p. (6) *Future Perfect.* *I, &c., shall or will have been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus—advised," and "ero—I shall be," or "fuero—I shall have been."*

## SINGULAR.

- p. (6) *Monitus ero or fuero* [1], I shall have been advised.  
 p. (6) *Monitus eris or fueris* [2], thou wilt have been advised.  
 p. (6) *Monitus erit or fuerit* [3], he will have been advised.

## PLURAL.

- p. (6) *Moniti erimus or fuerimus* [pl. 1], we shall have been advised.  
 p. (6) *Moniti eritis or fueritis* [pl. 2], you will have been advised.  
 p. (6) *Moniti erunt or fuerint* [pl. 3], they will have been advised.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative passive, are formed from the first principal part *ēr*; the per-

fect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the third principal part, *itum*; or, rather, the perfect participle is formed from the third principal part.

In the present tense, in the singular, *er* is changed into *eor* in the first person, into *eris* or *ere* in the second, and into *etur* in the third person; in the plural, *er* is changed into *emur* in the first person, into *emini* in the second, and into *entur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *er* is changed into *ebar* in the first person, into *ebaris* or *ebare* in the second, and into *ebatur* in the third person; in the plural, *er* is changed into *ebamur* in the first person, into *ebamini* in the second, and into *ebantur* in the third person.

In the future tense, *er* is changed, in the singular, into *eber* in the first person, into *eberis* or *ebere* in the second, and into *ebitur* in the third person; in the plural, *er* is changed into *ebimur* in the first person, into *ebimini* in the second, and into *ebuntur* in the third person.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, have properly no terminations, they being formed by the perfect participle and the tenses of *sum*.

In the perfect tense, either *sum*—*I am*, or *fui*—*I was*, combined with the perfect participle, may be used to denote the perfect tense. So, likewise, *eram* or *fuera*m for the pluperfect, and *ero* or *fuero* for the perfect future.

### Lesson 65.

Verò nunc, <sup>um.1</sup> quæ <sup>(per-m-esse)</sup> | <sup>o-ul.(1)</sup> est <sup>ta.1</sup> ista <sup>1</sup> tua <sup>1</sup> vita?  
 But now, what is this your life?  
 Enim jam loquar cum.<sup>s</sup> te.<sup>(2)</sup> sic, ut videar non  
 For now I-will-speak with you so, that I-may-seem not  
<sup>(per-m-esse)</sup> | <sup>o-ul.in.(1)</sup> esse <sup>s.1</sup> permotus <sup>m.6</sup> odio, <sup>od.6</sup> quo  
 to-be moved 'with (the) 'hatred, with-which  
 | <sup>er-ul-itum.(1)</sup> debeo, <sup>(1)</sup> sed ut <sup>6</sup> misericordiâ,  
 I-ought, but that (I may seem to be moved) by-pity,  
<sup>1</sup> nulla <sup>um.1</sup> quæ | <sup>er-ul-itum.p.(1)</sup> debetur <sup>(3)</sup> <sup>s.1</sup> tibi. <sup>(2)</sup> Venisti  
 none (of) which is-due to-you. You-came  
 14 \*



paullo ante in <sup>acc.4</sup> senatum; <sup>uia.1</sup> quis ex <sup>acc.6</sup> hac  
 a-little before (this) into (the) senate; who out-of this  
<sup>6</sup> tantâ <sup>6</sup> frequentiâ ex tot <sup>acc.1.6</sup> tuis <sup>acc.1.6</sup> amicis  
 so-great (an) assemblage out-of so-many (of) your friends  
 ac <sup>acc.1.6</sup> necessariis <sup>ar-avi-atum.4</sup> salutavit <sup>3.1</sup> te? <sup>3.1</sup> Si  
 and acquaintances saluted you? If  
<sup>oc.1</sup> hoc contigit <sup>oc-1.6</sup> nemini post <sup>4</sup> memoriam  
 this (thing) has-happened to-no-one, since (the) memory  
<sup>oc-1.6</sup> hominum, <sup>ar-avi-atum.1</sup> expectas <sup>3.1</sup> contumeliam  
 of-man, do-you-wait (for the) reproaches  
<sup>acc.2</sup> vocis, <sup>cum</sup> <sup>acc-1.6</sup> sis <sup>3.1</sup> oppressus  
 of (their) voices, when you-are (already) oppressed  
<sup>acc.6</sup> gravissimo (s.) <sup>acc.6</sup> iudicio <sup>acc-1.6</sup> taciturnitatis?  
 'by (the) 'most-grave (condemning) judgments 'of (the) 'silence  
<sup>acc.1</sup> quid, <sup>quod</sup>  
 (of these here present)? | what [but what shall I say of this], that  
<sup>acc.6</sup> tuo <sup>acc.6</sup> adventu <sup>acc.1.1</sup> ista <sup>acc.1.1</sup> subsellia vacuefacta sunt?  
 at-your arrival these seats were-made-vacant?  
 Quod <sup>acc-1.6</sup> omnes <sup>acc-1.6</sup> consulares,  
 What all (the) consular (persons) [persons of consular  
 rank, or who had been consuls], <sup>ui.1.1</sup> qui <sup>persæpe</sup>  
 who very-often  
<sup>acc-1.6</sup> fuerunt <sup>acc.1.1</sup> constituti <sup>part.1</sup> tibi <sup>3.1</sup>  
 have-been assigned by-you  
 ad <sup>acc-1.6</sup> cædem <sup>re-1.6</sup> reliquerunt <sup>acc.1.1</sup> istam <sup>re-1.6</sup> partem  
 for slaughter left that part  
<sup>acc.1.2</sup> subselliorum <sup>4</sup> nudam atque <sup>acc-1.6</sup> inanem, simul atque  
 of-the-seats naked and empty, as-soon as  
<sup>acc-1.6</sup> assedisti? <sup>3.1</sup> Quo <sup>acc.6</sup> animo tandem  
 you-sat-near (them)? With-what mind in-fine  
<sup>ar-avi-atum.1</sup> putas <sup>3.1</sup> hoc <sup>oc.1</sup> ferendum <sup>3.1</sup> tibi? <sup>3.1</sup>  
 do-you-think this is-to-be-born by-you?  
<sup>acc.6</sup> Mehercule, si <sup>acc.1.1</sup> mei <sup>acc.1.1</sup> servi metuerent <sup>acc.1.1</sup> me <sup>acc.1.1</sup> isto  
 By-Hercules, if my slaves should-fear me in-that  
<sup>acc.6</sup> pacto, ut <sup>acc-1.6</sup> omnes <sup>acc.1.1</sup> tui <sup>acc-1.6</sup> oives metuunt  
 manner, that all your citizens fear  
<sup>3.1</sup> te <sup>3.1</sup> <sup>ar-avi-atum.1</sup> putarem <sup>3.1</sup> meam  
 you, I-would-think (that) my  
<sup>acc.4</sup> domum (f.) <sup>acc.4</sup> relinquendam: <sup>3.1</sup> tu <sup>3.1</sup> non  
 house (ought) to-be-left: 'do-you not

|                     |                   |            |                             |
|---------------------|-------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| ar-avi-atum, d. (1) | arbitraris (2) •• | ba. bis. 4 | urbem                       |
|                     | 'think            | (that)     | the-city (ought to be left) |
| s tibi. (2) ••      |                   |            |                             |
| by-you.             |                   |            |                             |

### Lesson 66.

Nunc vero, quæ tua est ista vita? Sic enim jam tecum loquar, non ut odio permotus esse videar, quo debeo, sed ut misericordiâ, quæ tibi nulla debetur. Venisti paullo ante in senatum; quis te ex hâc tantâ frequentiâ, ex tot tuis amicis ac necessariis salutavit? Si hoc post hominum memoriam contigit nemini, vocis expectas contumeliam, cùm sis gravissimo judicio taciturnitatis oppressus? Quid, quod adventu tuo ista subsellia vacuefacta sunt? Quod omnes consulares, qui tibi persæpe ad cædem constituti fuerunt, simul atque assedisti, partem istam subselliorum nudam atque inanem reliquerunt? Quo tandem animo hoc tibi ferendum putas? Servi mehercle mei si me isto pacto metuerent, ut te metuunt omnes cives tui, domum meam relinquendam putarem; tu tibi urbem non arbitraris?

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 65 AND 66.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Adventus. Subsellium. Consulares. Cædes. Nudus. Reliquerunt. Animus. Putavit. Servus. Pactum. Cives. Domus. Putassem. Urbs. Nunc. Vita. Tecum. Odium. Debet. Misericordia. Nullus. Tibi. Paullo. Frequentia. Amicus. Salutant. Nemo. Vox. Judicium.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Part. Slaughter. Empty. You sat near. In fine. Do you think. Slaves. They fear. I think. City. So many. Acquaintances. It has happened. Of men. No one. Reproaches. Silence. Arrival. Seats. Very often. Life. Moved. Hatred. City. Assemblage.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quo animo tibi ferendum putas? Servi mei si me metuerent. Tibi urbem relinquendam putares. Adventu tuo subsellia vacuefacta sunt. Ad cædem constituti fuerunt. Sic tecum loquar. Nulla misericordia tibi debetur. Quis te ex tuis amicis salutavit. Hoc contigit nemini.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

They left that part of the seats. As soon as you sat near them. All the citizens fear you. I would think that my house ought to be left. Who out of your friends saluted you? This has happened to no one. At your arrival these seats were made vacant. What! is this your life? That I may seem to be moved. Not with the hatred, with which I ought. The pity, which is due to you.

## SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—PASSIVE VOICE.

"*Êr.*" p. sb. (1) *Present Tense.* I, &c., may or can be advised.

## SINGULAR.

## Terminations.

|                                                                      |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| p. sb. (1) Monear [1], I may, &c., be advised.....                   | ear.           |
| p. sb. (1) Monearis or moneare [2], thou mayst, &c., be advised..... | earis or eare. |
| p. sb. (1) Moneatur [3], he may, &c., be advised.....                | eatur.         |

## PLURAL.

|                                                              |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| p. sb. (1) Moneamur [pl. 1], we may, &c., be advised.....    | eamur.  |
| p. sb. (1) Moneamini [pl. 2], you may, &c., be advised.....  | eamini. |
| p. sb. (1) Moneantur [pl. 3], they may, &c., be advised..... | eantur. |

"*Êr.*" p. sb. (2) *Imperfect Tense.* I, &c., might, could, would, &c., be advised.

## SINGULAR.

|                                                                        |                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| p. sb. (2) Monerer [1], I might, &c., be advised.....                  | erer.          |
| p. sb. (2) Moneris or Monerere [2], thou mightst, &c., be advised..... | eris or erere. |
| p. sb. (2) Moneretur [3], he might, &c., be advised.....               | eretur.        |

PLURAL.

Terminations.

- p. sb. (2) *Moneremur* [pl. 1], we might, &c., be advised..... *eremur*.  
 p. sb. (2) *Moneremini* [pl. 2], you might, &c., be advised..... *eremini*.  
 p. sb. (2) *Monerentur* [pl. 3], they might, &c., be advised..... *orentur*.

*"Itum."* p. sb. (4) *Perfect Tense*. *I, &c., may have been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus—advised," and "sim—I may be," or "fuerim—I may have been."*

SINGULAR.

- p. sb. (4) *Monitus sim or fuerim* [1], I may have been advised.  
 p. sb. (4) *Monitus sis or fueris* [2], thou mayst have been advised.  
 p. sb. (4) *Monitus sit or fuerit* [3], he may have been advised.

PLURAL.

- p. sb. (4) *Moniti simus or fuerimus* [pl. 1], we may have been advised.  
 p. sb. (4) *Moniti sitis or fueritis* [pl. 2], you may have been advised.  
 p. sb. (4) *Moniti sint or fuerint* [pl. 3], they may have been advised.

*"Itum."* p. sb. (5) *Pluperfect Tense*. *I, &c., might, could, would, or should have been advised. Formed by the perfect participle "monitus—advised," and "essem—I might be," or "fuissem—I might have been."*

SINGULAR.

- p. sb. (5) *Monitus essem or fuissem* [1], I might, &c., have been advised.  
 p. sb. (5) *Monitus esses or fuisses* [2], thou mightst have been advised.  
 p. sb. (5) *Monitus esset or fuisset* [3], he might have been advised.

PLURAL.

- p. sb. (5) *Moniti essemus or fuissemus* [pl. 1], we might have been advised.  
 p. sb. (5) *Moniti essetis or fuissetis* [pl. 2], you might have been advised.  
 p. sb. (5) *Moniti essent or fuissent* [pl. 3], they might have been advised.

"ER." P. IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Terminations.

- p. im. *Monere or monetor* [2], be thou advised..... *ere or etor*.  
 p. im. *Monetor* [3], let him be advised..... *etor*.

PLURAL.

- p. im. *Monemini* [pl. 2], be ye advised..... *emini*.  
 p. im. *Monentor* [pl. 3], let them be advised..... *entor*.

## P. IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*"Ēr."* p. in. (1) *Present Tense. To be advised.*

Terminations.

p. in. (1) *Moneri, to be advised.....* eri.*"Itum."* p. in. (4) *Perfect Tense. To have been advised.*p. in. (4) *Monitus esse or fuisse, to have been advised.**"Itum."* p. in. (3) *Future Tense. To be about to be advised.*p. in. (3) *Monitum iri, to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES [PART.].

*"Itum."* p. (4) *Perfect Tense [part.]. Advised.*p. (4) *Monitus [part.], advised.....* itus.*"Ēr."* p. (3) *Future Tense [part.]. To be advised, or necessary to be advised.*p. (3) *Monendus [part.], to be advised, or necessary to be advised, endus.**"ITUM."* P. SUPINE IN [U].p. *Monitu [u], to be advised.....* u.

The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive passive, the imperative passive, the present tense of the infinitive passive, and the future participle passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive, the perfect and future infinitive passive, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are formed from the third principal part, *itum*; or, rather, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are thus formed.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *ear* in the first person, into *earis* or *eare* in the second, and into *eatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *eamur* in the first person, into *eamini* in the second, and into *eantur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, *ēr* is changed into *erer* in the first person, into *ereri* or *erere* in the second, and into *eretur* in

the third person; in the plural, *er* is changed into *eremur* in the first person, into *eremini* in the second, and into *erentur* in the third person.

The perfect and pluperfect tenses, subjunctive passive, have properly no terminations; for the perfect is formed by the perfect participle *monitus*, and *sim* or *fuero*, either forming the perfect subjunctive, *I, &c., may have advised*. The pluperfect is formed by the same participle and *essem* or *fuisset*, either in the sense of *I, &c., might, &c., have been advised*.

In the imperative mood, *er* is changed into *ere* or *etor*, in the singular, second person, and into *etor* in the third person; in the plural, *er*, in the second person, is changed into *emini*; in the third person, *er* is changed into *entor*.

In the infinitive, in the present tense, *er* is changed into *eri*. The perfect tense of the same is formed by the perfect participle and *esse* or *fuisse*. The future by the supine in *um* and *iri*.

The perfect participle is formed by changing the third principal part, *itum*, into *itus*; the future participle is formed by changing *er* into *endus*.

The supine in *u* is formed by changing *um* into *u*.

### Lesson 67.

|                      |                     |                            |                     |                  |                        |                      |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Ubi                  | r-rit. <sup>1</sup> | Cæsar                      | intellexit,         | is. <sup>4</sup> | eum                    |                      |
| When                 |                     | Cæsar                      | understood, (that)  | he               | [Ariovistus]           |                      |
| er-ai-ium.in.(1)     | tenere              | <sup>4</sup> sese (3) ● ●  | m.pl.6              | castris,         | ne                     |                      |
|                      | kept                | himself                    |                     | in-camp, (that)  | he- <sup>1</sup> might | no                   |
| diutius              | er-ai-ium.p.ab.(2)  | prohiberetur (3) ● ●       | is. <sup>6</sup>    | commeatu,        |                        |                      |
| longer               |                     | <sup>1</sup> be-prohibited |                     | from-provisions, |                        |                      |
| delegit              | <sup>4</sup> locum  | <sup>4</sup> idoneum       | m.pl.3              | castris          | ultra                  | is. <sup>4</sup> eum |
| he-chose             | (a) place           | suitable                   |                     | for-camps        | beyond                 | that                 |
| <sup>4</sup> locum   | circiter            | <sup>4</sup> sexcentos     | is.pl.4             | passus ab        | is.pl.6                | eis, in              |
| place                | about               | six-hundred                |                     | paces from       | them,                  | in                   |
| is. <sup>6</sup> quo | <sup>4</sup> loco   | <sup>4</sup> Germani       | (d)er-   di-uum.(5) | consederant,     | [pl.3] ● ●             |                      |
| which                | place               | (the) Germans              |                     | had-encamped,    |                        |                      |

168 VERBS—SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE.

que<sup>ex-icis.6</sup> triplici<sup>ci.6</sup> acie<sup>ci.6</sup> instructa, venit ad<sup>in.4</sup> eum  
and (a) triple line being-drawn-up, he-came to that  
a<sup>4</sup> locum. (b) <sup>er-</sup> | <sup>si-um.</sup>(4) Jussit<sup>(3) ●●</sup> 'primam et 'secundam  
place. He-ordered (the) first (line) and (the) second  
ei<sup>4</sup> aciem (sum-esse) | e-<sup>al.</sup>in.<sup>(1)</sup> esse in m.<sup>pl.6</sup> armis, 'tertiam  
line to-be under arms, (the) third (line)  
munire m.<sup>pl.4</sup> castra. <sup>le.1</sup> Hic <sup>a.1</sup> locus, uti dictum est,  
to-fortify (the) camp. This place, as has-been-said,  
(sum-esse) | e-<sup>al.</sup>(2) aberat<sup>(3) ●●</sup> ab <sup>le-in.8</sup> hoste circiter <sup>a-pl.4</sup> sexcentos  
was-distant from (the) enemy about six-hundred  
<sup>ta-pl.4</sup> passus. Eò <sup>a.1</sup> Ariovistus misit <sup>a.4</sup> numerum  
paces. Thither Ariovistus sent (a) number  
e-in.<sup>pl.3</sup> hominum circiter sexdecim <sup>le-pl.4</sup> millia m.<sup>pl.4</sup> expedita,  
of-men about sixteen thousand light-armed,  
cum <sup>le-in.6</sup> omni <sup>ta.6</sup> equitatu; <sup>um-pl.1</sup> quæ <sup>pl.1</sup> copiæ  
with all (the) cavalry; which forces  
| <sup>er-al-ium.ab.</sup>(3) perterrerent <sup>[pl.3] ●●</sup> <sup>er-pl.4</sup> nostros, et  
should-frighten our (men), and  
| <sup>er-al-ium.ab.</sup>(3) prohiberet<sup>[pl.3] ●●</sup> <sup>le-onia.6</sup> munitione.(f.) ●●  
prohibit (them) from-fortifying.  
m.<sup>6</sup> Nihilo secius <sup>r-ria.1</sup> Cæsar, ut  
| By-nothing otherwise [nevertheless] Cæsar, as he-<sup>4</sup> had  
antè constituerat, (b) <sup>er-</sup> | <sup>si-um.</sup>(4) jussit<sup>(3) ●●</sup> <sup>pl.4</sup> duas <sup>ci-pl.4</sup> acies  
before 'determined, ordered (the) two lines  
| <sup>ar-avi-atum.in.</sup>(1) propulsare <sup>le-le.4</sup> hostem, 'tertiam perficere  
to-repel (the) enemy, (the) third to-complete  
m-<sup>eria.4</sup> opus. m.<sup>pl.6</sup> Castris m.<sup>pl.6</sup> munitis, [part.] ●● reliquit ibi  
(the) work. (The) camp being-fortified, he-left there  
<sup>pl.4</sup> duas <sup>le-ionia.pl.4</sup> legiones(f.) ●● et <sup>r-ria.4</sup> partem  
two legions and (a) part  
m.<sup>pl.2</sup> auxiliorum; reduxit quatuor <sup>pl.4</sup> reliquas  
'of (the) 'auxiliaries; he-brought-back (the) four remaining  
in <sup>us-oria.pl.4</sup> majora m.<sup>pl.4</sup> castra.  
(legions) into (the) greater camp.

Lesson 68.

Ubi eum castris sese tenere Cæsar intellexit, ne diutius  
commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Ger-  
mani conederant circiter passus sexcentos ab eis, castris ido-

neum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructâ, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat; eò circiter hominum numerum sexdecim millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quæ copiae nostros perterrerent, et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo seciùs Cæsar, ut antè constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit, et partem auxiliorum: quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 67 AND 68.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Passus. Abest. Homo. Expedita. Equitatus. Misit. Copiæ. Prohibeo. Acies. Duo. Hostis. Opus. Jubet. Reliquit. Reduxit. Teneo. Diutiùs. Commeatus. Ultra. Locus. Idoneus. Delegit. Venit. Munire.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Thither. He sent. About. Light armed. Forces. They prohibit. He determined. He ordered. Before. He has repelled. The works. The enemy. He left. Two. He led back. The remaining. He holds. He would be prohibited. Suitable. Beyond. He came. They have ordered. To fortify. Is distant.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Hic locus ab hoste passus sexcentos aberat. Eò hominum numerum sexdecim millia misit. Quæ copiae munitione prohiberent. Duas acies hostem propulsare jussit. Reliquas legiones in castra reduxit. Castris sese tenent. Ne com-  
meatu prohiberetur. Quo in loco consederant. Castris idoneum locum delegit. Ad eum locum venit. Tertiam aciem castra munire jussit.



*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Caesar, as he had before determined. He ordered the two lines to repel the enemy. He left there a part of the auxiliaries. He led back the legions into camp. He ordered the two legions to be under arms. As has been said. This place was distant from the enemy six hundred paces. Who should frighten our men. Caesar chose a suitable place for the camp. In which place the Germans had encamped. He came to that place.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

The third conjugation has its principal parts in *ēr-i-tum*; but they are more irregular than in any of the four conjugations.

#### Active Voice.

##### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Present Indicative. | Present Infinitive. | Perfect Indicative. | Supine.       |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| Rego,               | Regere (ēr),        | Rexi (i),           | Rectum (tum), |
| I-rule.             | to-rule.            | I-have-ruled.       | a-ruling.     |

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

"(G)ēr." (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., rule.*

##### SINGULAR.

##### Terminations.

|                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| (1) Rego [1], I rule.....       | go.  |
| (1) Regis [2], thou rulest..... | gis. |
| (1) Regit [3], he rules.....    | git. |

##### PLURAL.

|                                    |        |
|------------------------------------|--------|
| (1) Regimus [pl. 1], we rule.....  | gimus. |
| (1) Regitis [pl. 2], you rule..... | gitis. |
| (1) Regunt [pl. 3], they rule..... | gunt.  |

"(G)ēr." (2) *Imperfect Tense. I ruled, or was ruling, or did rule.*

##### SINGULAR.

|                                                |        |
|------------------------------------------------|--------|
| (2) Regebam [1], I was ruling or did rule..... | gebam. |
| (2) Regebas [2], thou wast ruling, &c.....     | gebas. |
| (2) Regebat [3], he was ruling, &c.....        | gebat. |

PLURAL.

Terminations.

|                                                 |          |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------|
| (2) Regebamus [pl. 1], we were ruling, &c.....  | gebamus. |
| (2) Regebatis [pl. 2], you were ruling, &c..... | gebatis. |
| (2) Regebant [pl. 3], they were ruling, &c..... | gebant.  |

"(G)&c." (3) *Future Tense.* I, &c., shall or will rule.

SINGULAR.

|                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| (3) Regam [1], I shall rule.....   | gam. |
| (3) Reges [2], thou wilt rule..... | ges. |
| (3) Reget [3], he will rule.....   | get. |

PLURAL.

|                                         |        |
|-----------------------------------------|--------|
| (3) Regemus [pl. 1], we shall rule..... | gemus. |
| (3) Regetis [pl. 2], you will rule..... | getis. |
| (3) Regent [pl. 3], they will rule..... | gent.  |

"Xi." (4) *Perfect Tense.* I have ruled.

SINGULAR.

|                                       |        |
|---------------------------------------|--------|
| (4) Rexi [1], I have ruled.....       | xi.    |
| (4) Rexisti [2], thou hast ruled..... | xisti. |
| (4) Rexit [3], he has ruled.....      | xit.   |

PLURAL.

|                                                      |                 |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| (4) Reximus [pl. 1], we have ruled.....              | ximus.          |
| (4) Rexistis [pl. 2], you have ruled.....            | xistis.         |
| (4) Rexerunt or rexere [pl. 3], they have ruled..... | xerunt or xere. |

"Xi." (5) *Pluperfect Tense.* I, &c., had ruled.

SINGULAR.

|                                        |        |
|----------------------------------------|--------|
| (5) Rexeram [1], I had ruled.....      | xeram. |
| (5) Rexeras [2], thou hadst ruled..... | xeras. |
| (5) Rexerat [3], he had ruled.....     | xerat. |

PLURAL.

|                                           |          |
|-------------------------------------------|----------|
| (5) Rexeramus [pl. 1], we had ruled.....  | xeramus. |
| (5) Rexeratis [pl. 2], you had ruled..... | xeratis. |
| (5) Rexerant [pl. 3], they had ruled..... | xerant.  |

"Xi." (6) *Future Perfect.* I, &c., shall or will have ruled.

SINGULAR.

|                                            |        |
|--------------------------------------------|--------|
| (6) Rexero [1], I shall have ruled.....    | xero.  |
| (6) Rexeris [2], thou wilt have ruled..... | xeris. |
| (6) Rexerit [3], he will have ruled.....   | xerit. |

## PLURAL.

## Terminations.

- (6) *Rexerimus* [pl. 1], we shall have ruled..... *xerimus*.  
 (6) *Rexeritis* [pl. 2], you will have ruled..... *xeritis*.  
 (6) *Rexerint* [pl. 3], they will have ruled..... *xerint*.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr*. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the second principal part, *i*.

In the present tense, in the singular, the *ēr* is changed, in this particular word, in the singular, into *go* in the first person, into *gis* in the second, and into *gīt* in the third person; the terminations *o*, *is*, and *it*, in the first, second, and third persons, in the singular, always remain the same in the words of this conjugation; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gimus* in the first person, into *gitis* in the second, and into *gunt* in the third person. The terminations *imus*, *itis*, and *unt*, in the first, second, and third persons plural, are always the same.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, the *ēr* of this word is changed into *gebam* in the first person, into *gebas* in the second, and into *gebat* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gebamus* in the first person, into *gebatis* in the second person, and into *gebant* in the third person. The terminations *ebam*, *ebas*, *ebat*, in the singular, and *ebamus*, *ebatis*, *ebant*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the future tense, in the singular, the *ēr* of this word is changed into *gam* in the first person, into *ges* in the second, and into *get* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gemus* in the first person, into *getis* in the second, and into *gent* in the third person. The terminations *am*, *es*, *et*, in the singular, and *emus*, *etis*, *ent*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the perfect tense, in this word, in the singular, *i* is changed into *xi* in the first person, into *xisti* in the second, and into *xit* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *ximus* in the first person, into *xistis* in the second, and

into *xerunt* or *xere* in the third person. The terminations, *i*, *isti*, *it*, in the singular, and *imus*, *istis*, *erunt* or *ere*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the pluperfect tense, in this word, in the singular, *i* is changed into *xeram* in the first person, into *xeras* in the second, and into *xerat* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *xeramus* in the first person, into *xeratis* in the second, and into *xerant* in the third person. The terminations *eram*, *eras*, *erat*, in the singular, and *eramus*, *eratis*, *erant*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the future perfect tense, in this word, in the singular, *i* is changed into *xero* in the first person, into *xeris* in the second, and into *xerit* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *xerimus* in the first person, into *xeritis* in the second, and into *xerint* in the third person. The terminations *ero*, *eris*, *erit*, in the singular, and *erimus*, *eritis*, *erint*, in the plural, are permanent.

### Lesson 69.

|                                      |                         |                               |                         |                         |             |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| <sup>1</sup> Tu (1) ●●               | er-itis d. (2)          | verebere (3) ●●               | neque                   | no-ctis.4               | autoritatem |
| <sup>1</sup> Will-you                |                         | <sup>1</sup> reverence        | neither                 | (the)                   | authority   |
| no-2                                 | hujus,                  | neque                         | sequere                 | no-4                    | judicium,   |
|                                      | of-this (your country), | nor                           | will-you-follow (her)   |                         | judgment,   |
| neque (no) 2a-2a. (3)                | pertimesces (3) ●●      | is-is.4                       | vim?                    | Quæ                     |             |
| nor                                  | will-you-fear           | (her)                         | power?                  | Which (country          |             |
|                                      | sic (2) 2a-2a-ctum. (1) | agit (3) ●●                   | cum                     | <sup>1</sup> te. (3) ●● |             |
| of yours)                            | thus                    | acts                          | [pleads]                | with                    | you,        |
| Catilina, et quodammodo              |                         | <sup>1</sup> tacita loquitur. | no-1                    | Nullum                  |             |
| O-Catiline, and in-a-manner (though) |                         | silent                        | speaks.                 | No                      |             |
| no-oris.1                            | facinus                 | jam                           | 2a-   1st-ctum. (4)     | exstitit (3) ●●         | aliquot     |
| wicked-deed                          | 'has now                | 'appeared                     | (for)                   | some                    |             |
| no-pl.6                              | annis, nisi             | per                           | <sup>1</sup> te. (3) ●● | no-1                    | flagitium   |
| years, unless                        | through you             | no                            | scandalous-act          |                         |             |
| sine                                 | <sup>1</sup> te; (3) ●● | <sup>1</sup> tibi (3) ●●      | no-2                    | uni                     |             |
| without you;                         | for-you                 | one                           | [in your case alone]    |                         |             |

174 VERBS—THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE.

<sup>x-cla.pl.1</sup> neces <sup>a.pl.2</sup> multorum <sup>le-in.pl.3</sup> civium, <sup>3</sup> tibi <sup>(3) ●●</sup>  
 (the) violent-death of-many citizens, | for-you [in your  
<sup>lo-ionis.1</sup> vexatio <sup>(f) ●●</sup> <sup>que</sup> <sup>lo-ionis.1</sup> direptio <sup>(f) ●●</sup>  
 case alone] (the) harassing and plundering  
<sup>a.pl.3</sup> sociorum <sup>(num-esse).e- | ul.(4)</sup> fuit <sup>(3) ●●</sup> <sup>1</sup> impunita ac <sup>1</sup> libera;  
<sup>1</sup> of (the) <sup>1</sup> allies has-been unpunished and free;  
<sup>1</sup> tu <sup>(3) ●●</sup> <sup>er- | ul.-itum.(4)</sup> valuisti <sup>(3) ●●</sup> non solum ad <sup>x-gis.pl.4</sup> leges  
 | you have-been-able not only for laws  
<sup>ac</sup> <sup>lo-ionis.pl.4</sup> quaestiones <sup>(f) ●●</sup> <sup>pl.4</sup> negligendas, <sup>[part.] ●●</sup>  
 and public-prosecutions to-be-neglected [you have been  
 verum  
 able not only to evade the laws and public prosecutions], | but  
 etiam ad <sup>pl.4</sup> evertendas <sup>[part.] ●●</sup> <sup>que</sup> <sup>pl.4</sup> perfringendas.  
 also for (them) to-be-subverted and broken  
 [but also to subvert and break them]. Quamquam <sup>ind.pl.4</sup> illa  
 Although those  
<sup>m.pl.4</sup> superiora non <sup>(num-esse).e- | ul.(4)</sup> fuerunt <sup>[pl.3] ●●</sup>  
 former (villanies) <sup>1</sup> ought not <sup>1</sup> to-have-been  
<sup>pl.4</sup> ferenda, <sup>[part.] ●●</sup> tamen tuli ut  
 borne, yet I-have-borne (them) (as far) as  
<sup>(num-esse).e- | ul.(4)</sup> potui; verò nunc <sup>4</sup> totam me  
<sup>I</sup>-was-able; but now every (part of) me  
<sup>(num-esse) | e-ul.in.(1)</sup> esse in <sup>6a.6</sup> metu propter <sup>4</sup> te <sup>(3) ●●</sup> <sup>4</sup> unum;  
 is in fear on-account-of you alone;  
<sup>id.1</sup> quidquid <sup>ar-ul or svi-itur or atum.sh.(4)</sup> increpuerit,  
 whatever may-have-made-a-noise (or alarm),  
 Catilinam | <sup>er-ul.p.in.(1)</sup> timeri; <sup>m.4</sup> nullum <sup>m.4</sup> consilium  
 Catiline is-to-be-feared; (that) no design  
 | <sup>(4)er-di-num.p.in.(1)</sup> videri <sup>(num-esse) | e-ul.in.(1)</sup> posse iniri contra  
 seems to-be-able to-be-entered-on against  
 me, <sup>od.1</sup> quod | <sup>er-ul.sh.(1)</sup> abhorreat <sup>(3) ●●</sup> à  
 me, which may-be-abhorrent from (or unconnected  
<sup>m.6</sup> tuo <sup>m.6</sup> scelere, <sup>(num-esse) | e-ul.(1)</sup> est <sup>(3) ●●</sup> non  
 with) your criminal-participation, is not  
 ferendum. . Quamobrem <sup>(d)er-essi-essum.im.</sup> discede, <sup>(3) ●●</sup> atque  
 to-be-borne. Wherefore depart, and  
<sup>eripio-(1p)er-ipui-ereptum.im.</sup> eripe <sup>(3) ●●</sup> <sup>ic.4</sup> hunc <sup>or-oria.4</sup> timorem <sup>3</sup> mihi, <sup>(1) ●●</sup>  
 take-away this fear from-me,  
 ne opprimar, si <sup>(num-esse) | e-ul.(1)</sup> est <sup>(3) ●●</sup> <sup>a.1</sup> verus,  
 lest I-may-be-oppressed, if it-is (a) true

|           |                  |                        |        |           |
|-----------|------------------|------------------------|--------|-----------|
| (fear),   | sin              | <sup>2.1</sup> falsus, | ut     | tandem    |
|           | but-if (it is a) | false                  | (one), | that      |
| aliquando | desinam          | <sup>2.1</sup> timere. |        | at-length |
| some-time | I-may-cease      | to-fear.               |        |           |

### Lesson 70.

Hujus tu neque auctoritatem verebere, neque judicium sequere, neque vim pertimesces? Quæ tecum, Catilina, sic agit, et quodammodo tacita loquitur. Nullum aliquot jam annis facinus exstitit, nisi per te; nullum flagitium sine te: tibi uni multorum civium necesse, tibi vexatio direptioque sociorum impunita fuit ac libera; tu non solum ad negligendas leges ac quaestiones, verum etiam ad evertendas perfringendasque valuisti. Superiora illa, quamquam ferenda non fuerunt, tamen, ut potui, tuli; nunc vero me totam esse in metu propter te unum; quidquid increpuerit, Catilinam timeri; nullam videri contra me consilium iniri posse, quod a tuo scelere abhorreat non est ferendum. Quamobrem discede, atque hunc mihi timorem eripe; si est verus, ne opprimar; sin falsus, ut tandem aliquando timere desinam.

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 69 AND 70.

##### *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Ferenda. Potuit. Metus. Timeo. Scelus. Timor. Discede. Verus. Opprimar. Falsus. Desinam. Verebere. Vis. Ago. Tacitus. Nullus. Annus. Facinus. Multus. Civis. Vexatio. Liberus. Lex. Solum. Valuisti. Etiam.

##### *English words to be translated into Latin.*

Tear. True. False. Some time. To fear. They are able. Against. Wherefore. Take away. Depart. Scandalous act. Many. Plundering. Unpunished. Laws. Yet. Public prosecutions. Will you reverence. Will you follow. Will you fear. To act. Speaks. Year.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quamobrem mihi timorem eripe. Non est verum. Ut timere desinam. Illa ferenda non fuerunt. Ut potui tuli. Nunc me esse in metu. Non est ferendum. Vim pertimesces. Quæ tecum sic agit. Nullum facinus exstitit, nisi per te. Tu solùm ad leges perfringendas valuisti.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Lest I may be oppressed, if it is a true fear. That I may cease to fear. The violent death of so many citizens. The plundering of the allies. You have been able to evade the laws and public prosecutions. Yet I have borne them as far as I was able. Catiline is to be feared. It is not to be borne. Take away this fear from me. But it if is a false fear.

## SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—ACTIVE VOICE.

"Êr." sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may, &c., rule.*

| SINGULAR.                               | Terminations. |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (1) Regam [1], I may rule.....      | gam.          |
| sb. (1) Regas [2], thou mayst rule..... | gas.          |
| sb. (1) Regat [3], he may rule.....     | gat.          |

## PLURAL.

|                                            |        |
|--------------------------------------------|--------|
| sb. (1) Regamus [pl. 1], we may rule.....  | gamus. |
| sb. (1) Regatis [pl. 2], you may rule..... | gatis. |
| sb. (1) Regant [pl. 3], they may rule..... | gant.  |

"Êr." sb. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., might, could, would or should rule.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                                    |        |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------|
| sb. (2) Regerem [1], I might, &c., rule .....      | gerem. |
| sb. (2) Regeres [2], thou mightst, &c., rule ..... | geres. |
| sb. (2) Regeret [3], he might, &c., rule .....     | geret. |

## PLURAL.

|                                                       |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| sb. (2) Regeremus [pl. 1], we might, &c., rule .....  | geremus. |
| sb. (2) Regeretis [pl. 2], you might, &c., rule ..... | geretis. |
| sb. (2) Regerent [pl. 3], they might, &c., rule ..... | gerent.  |

"Xi." sb. (4) *Perfect Tense.* *I, &c., may have ruled.*

SINGULAR.

Termination.

|                                                  |        |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------|
| sb. (4) Rexerim [1], I may have ruled .....      | xerim. |
| sb. (4) Rexeris [2], thou mayst have ruled ..... | xeris. |
| sb. (4) Rexerit [3], he may have ruled .....     | xerit. |

PLURAL.

|                                                     |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------|
| sb. (4) Rexerimus [pl. 1], we may have ruled .....  | xerimus. |
| sb. (4) Rexeritis [pl. 2], you may have ruled ..... | xeritis. |
| sb. (4) Rexerint [pl. 3], they may have ruled ..... | xerint.  |

"Xi." sb. (5) *Pluperfect Tense.* *I, &c., might, could, would or should have ruled.*

SINGULAR.

|                                                           |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| sb. (5) REXISSEM [1], I might, &c., have ruled .....      | xissem. |
| sb. (5) REXISSES [2], thou mightst, &c., have ruled ..... | xisses. |
| sb. (5) REXISSET [3], he might, &c., have ruled .....     | xisset. |

PLURAL.

|                                                              |           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| sb. (5) REXISSEMUS [pl. 1], we might, &c., have ruled .....  | xissemus. |
| sb. (5) REXISSETIS [pl. 2], you might, &c., have ruled ..... | xissetis. |
| sb. (5) REXISSENT [pl. 3], they might, &c., have ruled ..... | xissent.  |

"Er." IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

|                                         |             |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------|
| im. Rege or regito [2], rule thou ..... | ge or gito. |
| im. Regito [3], let him rule .....      | gito.       |

PLURAL.

|                                               |                 |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| im. Regite or regitote [pl. 2], rule ye ..... | gite or gitote. |
| im. Regunto [pl. 3], let them rule .....      | gunto.          |

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Er." in. (1) *Present Tense.*

|                               |       |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| in. (1) Regere, to rule ..... | gere. |
|-------------------------------|-------|

"Xi." in. (4) *Perfect Tense.*

|                                      |        |
|--------------------------------------|--------|
| in. (4) REXISSE, to have ruled ..... | xisse. |
|--------------------------------------|--------|

"Cum." in. (3) *Future Tense.*

|                                                 |              |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| n. (3) Recturus esse, to be about to rule ..... | oturus esse. |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------|



## PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"Ēr." (1) *Present Tense*.

Terminations.

(1) *gens-gentis*. 1. *Regens* [part.], ruling..... *gens*."Ctūm." (3) *Future Tense*.(3) *cturus-a-um*. *Recturus* [part.], to be about to rule..... *cturus-a-um*.

## "Ēr." GERUNDS [GER.].

2. *G*. *Regendi* [ger.], of ruling ..... *gendi*.  
 3. *D*. *Regendo* [ger.], to ruling ..... *gendo*.  
 4. *A*. *Regendum* [ger.], ruling ..... *gendum*.  
 6. *Ab*. *Regendo* [ger.], by, &c., ruling ..... *gendo*.

## CTUM. SUPINE [UM] IN UM.

*Rectum* [um], a ruling..... *ctum*.

In the above, the present and imperfect subjunctive, and the imperative, also the present infinitive, present participle, and the gerunds, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and also the perfect infinitive, are formed from the second principal part, *i* (but here *xi*). The future participle, the future infinitive, and the supine in *um*, are formed from the third principal part, *tum* (here *ctum*).

In the present tense, in the singular, *ēr*, of this word, is changed into *gam* in the first person, in the second, into *gas*, and in the third person into *gat*; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gamus* in the first person, into *gatis* in the second person, and into *gant* in the third person. The terminations, *am*, *as*, *at*, in the singular, and *amus*, *atis*, *ant*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ēr* of this word is changed into *gerem* in the first person, into *geres* in the second, and into *geret* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *geremus* in the first person, into *geretis* in the second, and into *gerent* in the third person. The termina-

tions, *erem, eres, eret*, in the singular, and *eremus, eretis, erent*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *i*, of this word, is changed into *xerim* in the first person, into *xeris* in the second, and into *xerit* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *xerimus* in the first person, into *xeritis* in the second, and into *xerint* in the third person. The terminations, *erim, eris, erit*, in the singular, and *erimus, eritis, erint*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the pluperfect tense, in the singular, *i*, of this word, is changed into *xissem* in the first person, into *xisses* in the second, and into *xisset* in the third person; in the plural, *i* is changed into *xissemus* in the first person, into *xissetis* in the second, and into *xissent* in the third person. The terminations *issem, isses, isset*, in the singular, and *issemus, issetis, issent*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the imperative mood, *er*, in this word, is changed, in the singular, in the second person, into *ge* or *gito*; in the third person, into *gito*; in the plural, in the second, into *gite* or *gitote*; in the third person, into *gunto*. The terminations *e* or *ito, ito*, in the singular, and *ite* or *itote, unto*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the infinitive mood of this word, in the present tense, *er* is changed into *gère*; in the perfect tense, *i* is changed into *xisse*; in the future, *tum* is changed into *cturus esse*. The terminations *ère, isse, turus*, are permanent.

In the participles, in the present, *er* is, in this word, changed into *gens*; in the future, *tum* is changed into *cturus*. The terminations *ens* and *turus*, are permanent.

In the gerunds, in this word, *er* is changed into *gendi* in the genitive, into *gendo* in the dative, into *gendum* in the accusative, and into *gendo* in the ablative. The terminations *endi, endo, endum, endo*, are permanent.

In the supine, in this word, *tum* is changed into *ctum*. The termination, *um*, is permanent.

In the tenses and persons formed from the second prin-

cipal part, (i), is, iss, and sis, are sometimes omitted after s or x: as, *evasti* for *evasisti*—*thou hast escaped*?; *extinxisti* for *extinxisti*—*thou hast extinguished*.

## Lesson 71

<sup>m.6</sup> Proximo <sup>cl.6</sup> die, (m.) •• <sup>p.ria.1</sup> Caesar <sup>m.6</sup> suo  
 'On (the) 'next day, Caesar (according to) his  
<sup>m.6</sup> instituto <sup>(duc)dr- | duxi-ductum.(4)</sup> eduxit [3] •• <sup>pl.4</sup> suas <sup>pl.4</sup> copias ex  
 custom led-forth his forces from  
<sup>m.pl.6</sup> utrisque <sup>m.pl.6</sup> castris; <sup>que</sup> <sup>a.1</sup> progressus [part.] ••  
 each camp; and having-advanced  
<sup>paululum</sup> à <sup>m.ori.pl.6</sup> majoribus <sup>dr- | xi-ctum.(4)</sup> instruxit [3] ••  
 (a) little from (the) greater (camp) he-drew-up  
<sup>cl.4</sup> aciem <sup>que</sup> <sup>(cio)dr- | feci-ctum.(4)</sup> fecit [3] ••  
 (his) line-of-battle | and he-made  
<sup>is-la.pl.6</sup> hostibus <sup>as-ctis.4</sup> potestatem <sup>| ar-avi-ctum.(3)</sup> pugnandi. [ger.] ••  
 'to (the) 'enemy (the) power of-fighting [and  
 he offered battle to the enemy]. Ubi <sup>lig(dr)-lexi-lectum.(4)</sup> intellexit [3] ••  
 When he-understood  
 ne quidem tum <sup>is.p.4</sup> eos prodire, circiter  
 (that) not even then they come-forth, about  
<sup>cl.4</sup> meridiem (m.) •• <sup>(duc)dr-duxi-ductum.(4)</sup> reduxit [3] •• <sup>pl.4</sup> exercitum  
 noon he-led-back (his) army  
 in <sup>m.pl.4</sup> castra. Tum demum <sup>a.1</sup> Ariovistus  
 into (the) camp. Then at-last Ariovistus  
<sup>(it)dr- | ini-ctum.(4)</sup> misit [3] •• <sup>ra-rtis.4</sup> partem <sup>pl.3</sup> suarum <sup>pl.2</sup> copiarum,  
 sent (a) part of-his forces,  
 quæ <sup>| ar-avi-ctum.ab.(3)</sup> oppugnaret <sup>m.ori.pl.4</sup> minora (c.) •• <sup>m.pl.4</sup> castra.  
 which might-attack (the) smaller camp.  
<sup>ar-avi- | ctum.p.(4)</sup> Pugnatum est [3] •• acriter utrinquè usque  
 It-was-fought sharply on-both-sides until  
 ad <sup>a.4</sup> vesperum. <sup>cl.6</sup> Occasu <sup>1-is.3</sup> solis <sup>a.1</sup> Ariovistus  
 towards evening. 'At (the) 'setting 'of (the) 'sun Ariovistus  
<sup>(duc)dr- | duxi-ductum.(4)</sup> reduxit [3] •• <sup>pl.4</sup> suas <sup>pl.4</sup> copias in <sup>m.pl.4</sup> castra  
 led-back his forces 'into (the) 'camp  
<sup>m.pl.6</sup> multis <sup>m.ori.pl.6</sup> vulneribus et <sup>m.pl.6</sup> illatis [part.] •• et  
 many wounds 'being both 'given and  
<sup>(accipio-accipere).dr-accipi-acceptum.(4).</sup> acceptis. [part.] •• Quum  
 received. When

|                      |                                 |                            |                             |                          |                         |                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| r.-ris. <sup>1</sup> | Cæsar                           | ðr-æri-ctum.ab.(2)         | quæreret [3] ●●             | ex                       | a.pl. <sup>6</sup>      | captivis,       |
|                      | Cæsar                           |                            | inquired                    |                          | of                      | (the) captives, |
|                      | quamobrem                       | a. <sup>1</sup> Ariovistus | non                         | ar-avi-ctum.ab.(2)       | decertaret [3] ●●       |                 |
|                      | why                             | Ariovistus                 | 'did not                    |                          | 'contend                |                 |
|                      | in                              | m. <sup>6</sup> prælio     | reperiebat                  | mc. <sup>4</sup> hanc    | 'causam.                | Quòd            |
|                      | in                              | battle                     | he-found                    | this (to be)             | (the) cause.            | Because         |
|                      | ea. <sup>1</sup> ea             | do-dinle. <sup>1</sup>     | consuetudo (f.) ●●          | (sum-esse)   o-ul.ab.(2) | esset [3] ●●            |                 |
|                      | (that) this                     |                            | custom                      |                          | might-be                |                 |
|                      |                                 | apud                       | a.pl. <sup>4</sup> Germanos | ut                       | ia.pl. <sup>2</sup>     | eorum           |
|                      | [obtained]                      | with                       | (the) Germans               | that                     |                         | their           |
|                      | pl. <sup>1</sup> matresfamilias | ar-avi-ctum.ab.(2)         | declararent [pl.3] ●●       | m.-ris.pl. <sup>6</sup>  | sortibus                |                 |
|                      | mothers-of-families             |                            | should-declare              |                          | by-casting-of-lots      |                 |
|                      | et                              | io-onia.pl. <sup>6</sup>   | vaticinationibus,           | utrùm                    | m. <sup>4</sup> prælium |                 |
|                      | and                             |                            | by-prophecies,              | whether                  | battle                  |                 |
|                      | (sum-esse)   o-ul.ab.(2)        | esset [3] ●●               | committi                    | ex                       | ûs. <sup>6</sup> usu    | necne;          |
|                      |                                 | was                        | to-be-engaged-in            | with                     | advantage               | or-not;         |
|                      | ea.pl. <sup>4</sup> eas         | (c)ðr-xi-ctum.in.(1)       | dicere, ita                 | (sum-esse)   o-ul.in.(1) | 'esse                   |                 |
|                      | (that) they                     |                            | say, thus                   | '(that)                  | it-is                   |                 |
|                      | non                             | fas                        | a.pl. <sup>4</sup> Germanos | ar-avi-ctum.in.(1)       | superare,               |                 |
|                      | not                             | lawful [permitted for]     | (the) Germans               |                          | to-conquer,             |                 |
|                      | si                              | (ð)ðr-   di-tum.ab.(2)     | contendissent [pl.3] ●●     | m. <sup>6</sup> prælio   | ante                    |                 |
|                      | if                              |                            | they-engaged                | in-battle                | before                  |                 |
|                      | 'novam                          | 'lunam."                   |                             |                          |                         |                 |
|                      | (the) new                       | moon."                     |                             |                          |                         |                 |

## Lesson 72.

Proximo die, instituto suo, Cæsar ex castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paululumque à majoribus progressus aciem instruxit, hostibusque pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quæ castra minora oppugnaret misit; acriter utrinque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. Quum ex captivis quæreret Cæsar, quamobrem Ariovistus prælio non decertaret hanc reperiebat causam; quòd apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamilias eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus

declarent, utrūm prœlium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere, "non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam prœlio contendissent.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 71 AND 72.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Sol. Vultus. Occasus. Reduco. Quamobrem. Prœlium. Reperiebat. Consuetudo. Matresfamilias. Sors. Usus. Dixerunt. Fas. Superavit. Luna. Dies. Majus. Instruere. Pugnandi. Facio. Prodire. Intelligo. Meredies. Oppugnavit.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

He will say. Lawful. You may conquer. New. They may lead back. Wound. They inquire. You may contend. Custom. Thou mightst have declared. Prophecies. They make. Power. I understand. Noon. He will send. It was fought. Evening. Sun. Setting. You may lead forth.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Suas copias Ariovistus in castra reduxit. Quum quæreret, hanc reperiebat causam. Apud Germanos consuetudo esset. Matresfamilias declararent. Si ante novam lunam prœlio contendissent. Proximo die Cæsar copias suas eduxit. Paululum à majoribus castris aciem instruxit. Hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Tum exercitum in castra reduxit. Partem copiarum mittit. Acriter usque ad vesperum pugnatum est.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

That it is not permitted for the Germans to conquer, if they engage in battle before the new moon. Ariovistus led back his forces into the camp. When Cæsar inquired why

Ariovistus did not contend in battle. This custom obtained with the Germans. Having advanced a little from the greater camp. And he offered battle to the enemy. About noon he led back his army into camp. Ariovistus sent a part of his forces. It was fought sharply on both sides. Cæsar, according to his custom, led forth his forces.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### *Passive Voice.*

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

*"Ēr."* p. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am ruled.*

##### SINGULAR.

##### Terminations.

|                                                   |                |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| p. (1) Regor [1], I am ruled.....                 | gor.           |
| p. (1) Regeris or regere [2], thou art ruled..... | geris or gere. |
| p. (1) Regitur [3], he is ruled.....              | gitur.         |

##### PLURAL.

|                                              |         |
|----------------------------------------------|---------|
| p. (1) Regimur [pl. 1], we are ruled.....    | gimur.  |
| p. (1) Regimini [pl. 2], you are ruled.....  | gimini. |
| p. (1) Reguntur [pl. 3], they are ruled..... | guntur. |

*"Ēr."* p. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was ruled.*

##### SINGULAR.

|                                                        |                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| p. (2) Regebar [1], I was ruled.....                   | gebar.             |
| p. (2) Regebaris or regebare [2], thou wast ruled..... | gebaris or gebare. |
| p. (2) Regebatur [3], he was ruled.....                | gebatur.           |

##### PLURAL.

|                                                 |           |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| p. (2) Regebamur [pl. 1], we were ruled.....    | gebamur.  |
| p. (2) Regebamini [pl. 2], you were ruled.....  | gebamini. |
| p. (2) Regebantur [pl. 3], they were ruled..... | gebantur. |

*"Ēr."* p. (3) *Future Tense. I, &c., shall or will be ruled.*

##### SINGULAR.

|                                                       |                |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| p. (3) Regar [1], I shall be ruled.....               | gar.           |
| p. (3) Regeris or regere [2], thou wilt be ruled..... | geris or gere. |
| p. (3) Regetur [3], he will be ruled.....             | getur.         |

PLURAL.

Terminations.

- p. (3) Regemur [pl. 1], we shall be ruled..... gemur.  
 p. (3) Regemini [pl. 2], you will be ruled..... gemini.  
 p. (3) Regentur [pl. 3], they will be ruled..... gentur.

*"Cum." p. (4) Perfect Tense. I, &c., have been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle "rectus—ruled," and "sum—I am," or "fui—I was."*

SINGULAR.

- p. (4) Rectus sum or fui [1], I have been ruled.  
 p. (4) Rectus es or fuisti [2], thou hast been ruled.  
 p. (4) Rectus est or fuit [3], he has been ruled.

PLURAL.

- p. (4) Recti sumus or fuimus [pl. 1], we have been ruled  
 p. (4) Recti estis or fuistis [pl. 2], you have been ruled.  
 p. (4) Recti sunt or fuerunt or fuere [pl. 3], they have been ruled.

*"Cum." p. (5) Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., had been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle "rectus—ruled," and "eram—I was," or "fueram—I had been."*

SINGULAR.

- p. (5) Rectus eram or fueram [1], I had been ruled.  
 p. (5) Rectus eras or fueras [2], thou hadst been ruled.  
 p. (5) Rectus erat or fuerat [3], he had been ruled.

PLURAL.

- p. (5) Recti eramus or fueramus [pl. 1], we had been ruled.  
 p. (5) Recti eratis or fueratis [pl. 2], you had been ruled.  
 p. (5) Recti erant or fuerant [pl. 3], they had been ruled.

*"Cum." p. (6) Future Perfect. I, &c., shall or will have been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle "rectus—ruled," and "ero—I shall be," or "fuero—I shall have been."*

SINGULAR.

- p. (6) Rectus ero or fuero [1], I shall have been ruled.  
 p. (6) Rectus eris or fueris [2], thou wilt have been ruled.  
 p. (6) Rectus erit or fuerit [3], he will have been ruled.

PLURAL.

- p. (6) Recti erimus or fuerimus [pl. 1], we shall have been ruled.  
 p. (6) Recti eritis or fueritis [pl. 2], you will have been ruled.  
 p. (6) Recti erunt or fuerint [pl. 3], they will have been ruled.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative passive, are formed from the first principal part *ēr*; the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, are formed from the third principal part, *tum*; or, rather, the perfect participle is formed from the third principal part.

In the present tense, in this word, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *gor* in the first person, into *geris* or *gere* in the second, and into *gītūr* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gīmūr* in the first person, into *gīmīni* in the second, and into *guntūr* in the third person. The terminations *or*, *eris* or *ere*, *itur*, in the singular, and *imur*, *imīni*, *untur*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, in this word, *ēr* is changed into *gebar* in the first person, into *gebaris* or *gebare* in the second, and into *gebatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gebamur* in the first person, into *gebamīni* in the second, and into *gebantur* in the third person. The terminations *ebar*, *ebaris* or *ebare*, *ebatur*, in the singular, and *ebamur*, *ebamīni*, *ebantur*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the future tense, in the singular, in this word, *ēr* is changed into *gar* in the first person, into *geris* or *gere* in the second, and into *getūr* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gemūr* in the first person, into *gemīni* in the second, and into *gentūr* in the third person. The terminations *ar*, *eris* or *ere*, *etur*, in the singular, and *emur*, *emīni*, *entur*, in the plural, are permanent.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, have properly no terminations, they being formed by the perfect participle and the tenses of *sum*.

In the perfect tense, either *sum*—*I am*, or *fui*—*I was*, combined with the perfect participle, may be used to denote the perfect passive tense. So, likewise, *eram* or *fueram* for the pluperfect tense, and *ero* or *fuero* for the perfect future.



## Lesson 73.

|                                 |                        |                     |                |                          |                      |                                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Interim                         | co-itis.pl.1           | milites             | pl.2           | duarum                   | io-ions.pl.2         | legionum,                                    |
| In-the-mean-time                |                        | (the) soldiers      | 'of (the)      | 'two                     |                      | legions,                                     |
| um.pl.1                         | quæ                    | (sum-esse)-i ul.(2) | fuerant        | [pl.2] ●●                | in                   | s.6 novissimo (3) ●●                         |
|                                 | which                  |                     | had-been       |                          | in                   | (the) last                                   |
| non-ia.s.6                      | agmine,                | m.6                 | præsidio       | m.pl.2                   | impedimentis,        |                                              |
|                                 | troop [in the rear],   |                     | for-protection |                          | 'to (the)            | 'baggage,                                    |
| m.6                             | proelio                | ar-avi-1            | atum.(4).      | m.6                      | nunciato,            | [part.] ●●                                   |
| (the) battle                    |                        |                     |                |                          | being-announced,     | (and their)                                  |
| ta.s.6                          | cursu                  | ar-avi-1            | atum.(4).      | s.6                      | incitato             | [part.] ●●                                   |
|                                 | march                  |                     |                |                          | being-accelerated    |                                              |
| (icio-icere).fr-eri-ectum.p.(3) | conspiciebantur        | [pl.2] ●●           |                | in                       | s.6                  | summo                                        |
|                                 | were-seen              |                     |                |                          | on                   | (the) top (of)                               |
| ia.s.6                          | colle(m) ●●            | ab                  | ia.s.pl.2      | hostibus;                | et                   | s.1 Titus                                    |
| (the) hill                      |                        | by                  | (the) enemy;   | and                      |                      | Titus                                        |
| a.1                             | potitus                | [part.] ●●          | m.pl.2         | castris                  | ia.s.pl.2            | hostium,                                     |
|                                 | possessed              |                     | 'of (the)      | 'camp                    |                      | of (the) enemy, and                          |
| ar-avi-1                        | atum.(4).              | a.1                 | conspicatus    | [part.] ●●               | ex                   | or-oria.s.6                                  |
|                                 | having-beheld          |                     |                |                          | from                 | (the) higher                                 |
| s.6                             | loco                   | um.pl.1             | quæ            | ei.pl.1                  | res                  | gererentur                                   |
|                                 | place                  |                     | what           |                          | things               | were-carried-on                              |
| m.pl.2                          | castris                | (ti)fr-1            | si-atum.(4)    | misit                    | (3) ●●               |                                              |
|                                 | camp                   |                     |                |                          | sent                 | 'decimam                                     |
| io-onia.4                       | legionem (f.) ●●       | m.2                 | subsidio       | er.pl.2                  | nostris;             | ui.pl.1                                      |
|                                 | legion                 |                     | 'to (the)      | 'aid (of)                | our                  | (men); who                                   |
| quum                            | (nooc).fr-1            | novi-aitum.ab.(2)   | cognovissent   | [pl.2] ●●                | ex                   | s.6 fugâ                                     |
| when                            |                        |                     | they-had-known |                          | 'from (the)          | 'fight                                       |
| co-itis.pl.2                    | equitum                | et                  | o-onia.pl.2    | calonum                  | in                   | ui.6                                         |
|                                 | 'of (the)              | 'cavalry            | and            | 'of (the)                | 'camp-followers      | in                                           |
| s.6                             | loco                   | ei.1                | res            | (sum-esse)   o-ul.ab.(2) | esset,               | [3.] ●●                                      |
|                                 | situation (the) affair |                     |                |                          | was,                 | and in-what-great                            |
| m.6                             | periculo et            | m.pl.1              | castra         | et                       | io-ions.pl.1         | legiones (f.) ●●                             |
|                                 | danger both            |                     | (the) camp     | and                      |                      | (the) legions                                |
| or-oris.1                       | imperator              |                     |                |                          | ar-avi-atum.d.ab.(2) | versaretur,                                  |
|                                 | (the) commander        |                     |                |                          |                      | were,                                        |
| (ci).fr-1                       | fecit-ctum.(4)         | fecerunt            | [pl.2] ●●      | nihil                    | m.2                  | reliqui                                      |
|                                 |                        |                     | made           |                          | nothing              | of-left                                      |
| ad                              | as-atis.4              | celeritatem.        |                |                          |                      |                                              |
| to                              |                        | speed               |                |                          |                      | [left nothing undone to hasten their march]. |

|                                     |                          |                             |                                     |                         |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <sup>1</sup> Tanta<br>So-great      | io-ionia.1<br>(a) change | commutatio (f.) **          | ei-pl.3<br>of-things                | rerum                   |
| (facio-facere).ēn-feci-factum.p.(4) | facta est (3) **         | ad.6<br>by (the)            | adventu                             | ic-pl.3<br>of-these,    |
| ut etiam<br>that even               | er-pl.1<br>our (men)     | ui-pl.1<br>who              | procubuissent (pl.3) **             |                         |
| a-pl.1<br>spent                     | confecti (part.) *       | ue-cria-pl.6<br>with-wounds | vulneribus                          | a-pl.1<br>having-leaned |
| m-pl.3<br>'on (their)               | scutis,<br>'shields,     | ar-avi-atum.ab-(2)          | redintegrarent (pl.3) **            |                         |
| m.4<br>(the) battle.                | proelium.                | Tum<br>Then                 | o-onia-pl.1<br>(the) camp-followers | calones                 |
| ar-avi- atum(4)a-pl.1               | conspicati (part.) **    | is-is-pl.4<br>(the) enemy   | a-pl.4<br>dismayed,                 | hostes<br>perterritos,  |
| etiam<br>even                       | is-is-pl.1<br>unarmed    | l (rr).ēn-eri-erant.ab.3    | occurrerent (pl.3) **               |                         |
| ar-avi- atum.(4)a-pl.3              | armatis. (part.) **      |                             | opposed                             |                         |
|                                     | armed (men).             |                             |                                     |                         |

### Lesson 74.

Interim milites legionum duarum, quæ in novissimo agmine præsidio impedimentis fuerant, præliò nunciato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur: et T. Labienus castris hostium potitus, et ex loco superiore, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit; qui quum ex equitum et calonum fugâ, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones, et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi, prælium redintegrarent. Tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati, etiam inermes armatis occurrerent.

### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 73 AND 74.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Adventus. Commutatio. Vulnus. Scutum. Redintegrarent. Calones. Conspicatus. Inermis. Armatis. In-

terim. Miles. Agnen. Impedimentum. Nuntiavit.  
Cursus. Conspexerunt. Mitto. Eques. Fuga. Pericu-  
lum. Celeritas.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Armed. Dismayed. Camp-follower. Spent or exhausted.  
Arrival. Higher. Were carried on. He sends. He has  
known. Danger. In the mean time. Two. Protection.  
Baggage. They were seen. Will.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Qui quum quanto in periculo, imperator versaretur, cog-  
novissent. Horum adventu rerum commutatio est facta.  
Ut nostri, qui procubuissent. Hostes proelium redintegra-  
rent. Calones inermes armatis occurrerent. Interim mitites,  
in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Labienus, quæ  
res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus. Legionem  
subsidio misit.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

So great a change was made by their arrival. Our men  
renewed the battle. The camp followers, unarmed, opposed  
armed men. Having beheld what things were carried on in  
our camp. When they had known from the flight of the  
cavalry. They left nothing undone to hasten their march.  
The soldiers of the legions which were in the rear. They  
were seen on the top of the hill by the enemy.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — PASSIVE VOICE.

"*Ēr.*" p. sb. (1) *Present Tense.* I, &c., may or can be ruled.

SINGULAR.

Terminations.

p. sb. (1) Regar [1], I may, &c., be ruled ..... gar.  
p. sb. (1) Regaris or regare [2], thou mayst be ruled ..... garis or gare.  
p. sb. (1) Regatur [3], he may be ruled ..... gatur.

PLURAL.

Terminations.

- p. sb. (1) Regamur [pl. 1], we may be ruled..... gamur.  
 p. sb. (1) Regamini [pl. 2], you may be ruled..... gamini.  
 p. sb. (1) Regantur [pl. 3], they may be ruled..... gantur.

“*Ēr.*” p. sb. (2) *Imperfect Tense.* I, &c., might, could, would or should be ruled.

SINGULAR.

- p. sb. (2) Regerer [1], I might, &c., be ruled..... gerer.  
 p. sb. (2) Regereris or regerere [2], thou mightst be ruled.....gereris or gerere.  
 p. sb. (2) Regeretur [3], he might be ruled..... geretur.

PLURAL.

- p. sb. (2) Regeremur [pl. 1], we might be ruled..... geremur.  
 p. sb. (2) Regeremini [pl. 2], you might be ruled.....geremini.  
 p. sb. (2) Regerentur [pl. 3], they might be ruled..... gerentur.

“*Ctum.*” p. sb. (4) *Perfect Tense.* I may have been ruled. Formed by the perfect participle “rectus—ruled,” and “sim—I may be,” or “fuerim—I may have been.”

SINGULAR.

- p. sb. (4) Rectus sim or fuerim [1], I may have been ruled.  
 p. sb. (4) Rectus sis or fueris [2], thou mayst have been ruled.  
 p. sb. (4) Rectus sit or fuerit [3], he may have been ruled.

PLURAL.

- p. sb. (4) Recti simus or fuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been ruled.  
 p. sb. (4) Recti sitis or fueritis [pl. 2], you may have been ruled.  
 p. sb. (4) Recti sint or fuerint [pl. 3], they may have been ruled.

“*Ctum.*” p. sb. (5) *Pluperfect Tense.* I, &c., might, could, would or should have been ruled. Formed by the perfect participles “rectus—ruled,” and “essem—I might be,” or “fuissem—I might have been.”

SINGULAR.

- p. sb. (5) Rectus essem or fuissem [1], I might, &c., have been ruled.  
 p. sb. (5) Rectus esses or fuisses [2], thou mightst have been ruled.  
 p. sb. (5) Rectus esset or fuisset [3], he might have been ruled.

PLURAL.

- p. sb. (5) Recti essemus or fuissemus [pl. 1], we might have been ruled.  
 p. sb. (5) Recti essetis or fuissetis [pl. 2], you might have been ruled.  
 p. sb. (5) Recti essent or fuissent [pl. 3], they might have been ruled.

## "Ēr." P. IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## 'Terminations.

|                                                  |                |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| p. im. Regere or regitor [2], be thou ruled..... | gere or gitor. |
| p. im. Regitor [3], let him be ruled.....        | gitor.         |

## PLURAL.

|                                                 |         |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------|
| p. im. Regimini [pl. 2], be ye ruled.....       | gemini. |
| p. im. Reguntor [pl. 3], let them be ruled..... | guntor. |

## P. IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

"Ēr." p. in. (1) *Present Tense. To be ruled.*

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| p. in. (1) Regi, to be ruled..... | gi. |
|-----------------------------------|-----|

"Ēum." p. in. (4) *Perfect Tense. To have been ruled.*

|                                                       |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--|
| p. in. (4) Rectus esse or fuisse, to have been ruled. |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--|

"Ēum." p. in. (3) *Future Tense. To be about to be ruled.*

|                                                 |  |
|-------------------------------------------------|--|
| p. in. (3) Rectum iri, to be about to be ruled. |  |
|-------------------------------------------------|--|

## PARTICIPLES [PART.].

"Ēum." p. (4) *Perfect Tense [part.]. Ruled.*

|                                   |       |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| p. (4) Rectus [part.], ruled..... | ctus. |
|-----------------------------------|-------|

"Ēr." p. (3) *Future Tense [part.]. To be ruled, or necessary to be ruled.*

|                                                                     |        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| p. (3) Regendus [part.], to be ruled, or necessary to be ruled..... | endus. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|

## "CTUM." P. SUPINE IN [U]. TO BE RULED.

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| p. Rectu [u], to be ruled..... | u. |
|--------------------------------|----|

The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive passive, the imperative passive, the present tense of the infinitive passive, and the future participle passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ēr*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive, the perfect and future infinitive passive, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are formed from the third principal part, *tum*; or, rather, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are thus formed.

In the present tense, in this word, in the singular, *ēr* is changed into *gar* in the first person, into *garis* or *gare* in the second, and into *gatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gamur* in the first person, into *gaminī* in the second, and into *gantur* in the third person. The terminations *ar*, *aris* or *are*, *atur*, in the singular, and *amur*, *amini*, *antur*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the imperfect tense, *ēr*, in this word, in the singular, is changed into *gerer* in the first person, into *gereris* or *gerere* in the second, and into *geretur* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *geremur* in the first person, into *geremini* in the second, and into *gerentur* in the third person. The terminations *erer*, *ereris* or *erere*, *eretur*, in the singular, and *eremur*, *eremini*, *erentur*, in the plural, are permanent.

The perfect and pluperfect tenses, subjunctive passive, have properly no terminations; for the perfect is formed by the perfect participle *rectus*, and *sim* or *fuerim*, either forming the perfect subjunctive passive, *I, &c., may have been ruled*. The pluperfect is formed by the same participle and *essem* or *fuissem*, either in the sense of *I, &c., might, &c., have been ruled*.

In the imperative mood, in this word, *ēr*, in the singular, is changed into *gere* or *gitor* in the second person, and into *gitor* in the third person; in the plural, *ēr* is changed into *gimini* in the second person, and into *guntor* in the third person. The terminations *ere* or *itor*, *itor*, in the singular, and *imini*, *untor*, in the plural, are permanent.

In the infinitive mood, in the present tense, *ēr*, in this word, is changed into *gi*, *i* being permanent. The perfect tense of the same is formed by the perfect participle and *esse* or *fuisse*. The future by the supine in *um* and *iri*.

The perfect participle is formed by changing, in this word, the third principal part, *tum*, into *ctus*; *tus* being permanent. The future participle passive is formed by changing *ēr* into *gendus*; *endus* being permanent.

The supine in *u* is formed, in this word, by changing *um* into *ctu*; *tu* being permanent.

In verbs of this third conjugation, ending in *io*, in the first person singular, present tense, indicative mood, the moods and tenses derived from the first principal part do not exactly correspond, in their terminations, with the form above given, in some of their numbers and persons, both in the active and passive voices; for in *capio*—*I take*, in the present indicative, the *i* is dropped in the second and third persons singular, and first and second persons plural: as, *capio*, *capis*, &c., in place of *capis*; but, in the third person plural, this *i* is retained as a part of the verb: as, *capiunt*, and not *capunt*. The same also takes place in the passive: as, *caperis*, &c., *capitur*, and *capiuntur*.

In the imperfect tense, the *i* is retained as a part of the root of the verb; so, likewise, it is retained in the future tense, and in the subjunctive present tense, both in the active and passive voices: but, in both voices of the imperfect subjunctive, this *i* is omitted.

The imperative, in the second persons, singular and plural, ends as in the above form of *reŕo*; but, in the third person plural, it has *capiunto* and *capiuntor*.

The infinitive has, in the present tense, *capere* and *capi*.

The present active and future passive participles, and the gerunds, retain the *i*: as, *capiens*, *capiendus*, *capiendi*, &c.

All the other numbers, persons, tenses, &c., formed from the second and third principal parts, are regularly formed from such parts.

### Lesson 75.

|                    |                          |         |                              |                  |         |
|--------------------|--------------------------|---------|------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| Quŕm               | r-ris.1                  | Cæsar   | (r-ris-esset)   e-uis.ab.(3) | esset (3) ●●     | in      |
| When               |                          | Cæsar   |                              | was              | in      |
| ce-oris.6          | citeriore (c.) ●●        | *Galliâ | in                           | m.pl.6 hibernis, | ita uti |
|                    | hither                   | Gaul    | in                           | winter-quarters, | so as   |
| ar-   avi-alum.(4) | demonstravimus (pl.1) ●● |         | supra,                       | ar.pl.1 crebri   |         |
|                    | we-have-shown            |         | above,                       | frequent         |         |

|                                     |                                                      |                                       |                        |                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| or-ori.pl.1                         | rumores                                              | (affero-afferre).attuli-allatum.p.(3) | afferebantur           | ad                 |
|                                     | rumors                                               |                                       | were-brought           | to                 |
| eum, que                            | item                                                 | fiabat                                | or-ori.1 certior(c.)** |                    |
| him, and                            | also                                                 | he-was-made                           | more-sure              | [he was            |
|                                     | pl.6 literis,                                        | a.2 Labieni,                          | is.is.pl.4 omnes       |                    |
| informed]                           | 'by (the) 'letters                                   | of-Labienus, (that)                   |                        | all                |
| pl.4 Belgas,                        | acc.4 quam                                           | (c).8r-   xi-ctum(4)                  | dixeramus [pl.1]**     |                    |
| (the) Belgas,                       | whom                                                 |                                       | we-had-said            |                    |
| (num-esse)   a-ul.in(1)             | esse                                                 | 4 tertiam                             | re-rit.4 partem        |                    |
|                                     | to-be [to have constituted]                          | (the) third                           | part                   |                    |
| 2 Gallias,                          | ar-avi-atum.in.(1)                                   | conjurare                             | contra                 | a.4 Romanum        |
| of-Gaul,                            |                                                      | conspire                              | against                | (the) Roman        |
| a.4 populum, que                    | ar-dedi-atum.in.(1)                                  | dare                                  | ca-idi.pl.4 obsides    |                    |
| people, and (that they)             |                                                      | give                                  | 'hostages              |                    |
| inter 'se (3)**                     | acc.pl.4 Has                                         | (num-esse)   a-ul.in(1)               | esse                   | pl.4 causas        |
| among themselves. (That)            | these                                                |                                       | were (the) reasons     |                    |
| ar-avi-atum.2                       | conjurandi, [ger.]**                                 | primum,                               | quod                   |                    |
|                                     | of-conspiring;                                       | firstly,                              | because                |                    |
| ex-itur.d.ab.(3)                    | vererentur, [pl.3]**                                 | ne,                                   | is.is.2 omni           | 2 Gallia           |
|                                     | they-feared,                                         | lest,                                 | all                    | Gaul               |
| ar-avi-   atum.(4).6                | pacata [part.]**                                     | ar.1 noster                           | 6a.1 exercitus         |                    |
|                                     | being-subdued                                        | our                                   | army                   |                    |
| (c).8r-xi-ctum.p.ab.(2)             | adduceretur [3]**                                    | ad                                    | is.pl.4 eos.           |                    |
|                                     | might-be-led                                         | to                                    | them [our army might   |                    |
|                                     |                                                      | Deinde                                | quod                   |                    |
| be marched into their territories]. |                                                      | Next                                  | because                |                    |
| ar-avi-atum.p.ab.(2)                | sollicitarentur [pl.3]**                             | ab                                    | a.pl.6 nonnullis       | pl.6 Gallis,       |
|                                     | they-were-solicited                                  | by                                    | some                   | Gauls,             |
| partim                              | ui.pl.1 qui, ut                                      | noluerant                             | a.pl.4 Germanos        |                    |
| partly                              | who, as they-had-been-unwilling (that) (the) Germans |                                       |                        |                    |
| ar-avi-atum.d.in.(1)                | versari diutius in                                   | 2 Gallia,                             | ita ferebant           |                    |
|                                     | should-remain longer in                              | Gaul,                                 | so they-bore           |                    |
| molestè                             | a.4 Romanum                                          | 2a.4 exercitum                        | ar-avi-atum.in.(1)     | hiemare            |
| grievously (that) (the) Roman       |                                                      | army (should)                         | winter                 |                    |
| atque                               | (rasc)8r-ravi.in.(1)                                 | inveterascere                         | in                     | Gallia,            |
| and (should)                        |                                                      | grow-old                              | in                     | Gaul,              |
| partim                              | ui.pl.1 qui                                          | as-atia.6 mobilitate                  | et                     | as-atia.6 levitate |
| partly (those) who                  |                                                      | by-fickleness and                     |                        | lightness          |
| a.3 animi                           | 8r-ul.(2)                                            | studebant                             | m.pl.3 novis           | m.pl.3 imperiis;   |
| of-mind                             | studied                                              | for-new                               | governments [desired   |                    |



# 194 VERBS—THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE.

|                          |                     |             |            |             |          |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|------------|-------------|----------|
| a change of government]; | etiam               | ab          | nonnullis, | quòd        | in       |
| Galliâ regna             | vulgò               |             |            |             |          |
| Gaul kingdoms            | ' were commonly     |             |            |             |          |
| à                        | potentioribus (c.)  | atque       | iis        | qui         |          |
| by                       | (the) more-powerful | and         | by-those   | who         |          |
| habebant                 |                     | facultates  |            | ad          |          |
| had                      |                     | (the) means |            | for         |          |
| homines                  | conducendos,        |             |            |             |          |
| men                      | to-be-hired         |             |            |             | [to hire |
| qui                      | poterant            | minùs       | facilè     |             |          |
| men], (and)              | who                 | could       | less       | easily      |          |
| consequi                 | eam                 | rem         | nostro     | imperio.    |          |
| obtain                   | that                | thing       | under-our  | government. |          |

## Lesson 76.

Quum esset Cæsar in citeriore Galliâ in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, literisque item Labieni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliæ partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum conjurare, obsidesque inter se dare. Conjurandi has esse causas; primum, quòd vererentur, ne, omni pacatâ Galliâ, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quòd ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur; partim, qui ut Germanos diutius in Galliâ versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Galliâ molestè ferebant; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate animi, novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quòd in Galliâ à potentioribus, atque iis qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgò regna occupabantur; qui minùs facilè eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 75 AND 76.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Diutius. Hiemavit. Inveterascere. Molestè. Mobilitate. Studeo. Nonnulli. Facultas. Occupaverant. Con-

sequi. Citerior. Demonstravisset. Creber. Dico. Conjurasset. Dabo. Conjuraverunt. Vereor. Pacatus. Ad-  
duxit. Sollicito.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

He has said. To conspire. He will give. Reason.  
Hostages. Army. Might be marched. He did solicit.  
Some. Longer. He bore. To winter. Fickleness. He  
studies. New. Kingdom. I shall have. Easily. To ob-  
tain. Winter quarters. Frequent. Also. By letters.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quòd in Galliâ à potentioribus vulgò regna occupabantur.  
Qui minùs faciliè eam rem consequi poterant. Qui noluerant  
exercitum in Galliâ hiemare. Nonnulli novis imperiis stude-  
bant. Quum Cæsar in hibernis esset. Literis certior fiebat.  
Omnes Belgas contra populum Romanum conjurare. Obsides  
inter se dant.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Who could less easily obtain that thing. They bore griev-  
ously that the Roman army should winter in Gaul. They  
desired a change of government. Kingdoms were occupied  
by the most powerful. They give hostages among them-  
selves. They feared lest our army might be marched into  
their territories. He was informed.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The fourth conjugation has its principal parts in  
*ir-ivi-itum*.

*Active Voice.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Present Indicative. | Present Infinitive. | Perfect Indicative. | Supine.         |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Audio,              | Audire (ir),        | Audivi (ivi),       | Auditum (itum), |
| I-hear.             | to-hear.            | I-have-heard.       | a-hearing.      |

# 196      VERBS — FOURTH CONJUGATION — ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

“*Ir.*” (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., hear.*

| SINGULAR.                        | Terminations. |
|----------------------------------|---------------|
| (1) Audio [1], I hear.....       | io.           |
| (1) Audis [2], thou hearest..... | is.           |
| (1) Audit [3], he hears.....     | it.           |

| PLURAL.                             |       |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| (1) Audimus [pl. 1], we hear.....   | imus. |
| (1) Auditis [pl. 2], you hear.....  | itis. |
| (1) Audiunt [pl. 3], they hear..... | iunt. |

“*Ir.*” (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was hearing, or did hear.*

| SINGULAR.                                |        |
|------------------------------------------|--------|
| (2) Audiebam [1], I was hearing.....     | iebam. |
| (2) Audiebas [2], thou wast hearing..... | iebas. |
| (2) Audiebat [3], he was hearing.....    | iebat. |

| PLURAL.                                       |          |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| (2) Audiebamus [pl. 1], we were hearing.....  | iebamus. |
| (2) Audiebatis [pl. 2], you were hearing..... | iebatis. |
| (2) Audiebant [pl. 3], they were hearing..... | iebant.  |

“*Ir.*” (3) *Future Tense. I, &c., shall or will hear.*

| SINGULAR.                           |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| (3) Audiam [1], I shall hear.....   | iam. |
| (3) Audies [2], thou wilt hear..... | ies. |
| (3) Audiet [3], he will hear.....   | iet. |

| PLURAL.                                  |        |
|------------------------------------------|--------|
| (3) Audiemus [pl. 1], we shall hear..... | iemus. |
| (3) Audietis [pl. 2], you will hear..... | ietis. |
| (3) Audient [pl. 3], they will hear..... | ient.  |

“*Ivi.*” (4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., have heard.*

| SINGULAR.                               |         |
|-----------------------------------------|---------|
| (4) Audivi [1], I have heard.....       | ivi.    |
| (4) Audivisti [2], thou hast heard..... | ivisti. |
| (4) Audivit [3], he has heard.....      | ivit.   |

| PLURAL.                                                  | Terminations.     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| (4) Audivimus [pl. 1], we have heard.....                | ivimus.           |
| (4) Audivistis [pl. 2], you have heard.....              | ivistis.          |
| (4) Audiverunt or audivere [pl. 3], they have heard..... | iverunt or ivero. |

"Ivi." (5) *Pluperfect Tense.* I, &c., had heard.

| SINGULAR.                                 |         |
|-------------------------------------------|---------|
| (5) Audiveram [1], I, &c., had heard..... | iveram. |
| (5) Audiveras [2], thou hadst heard ..... | iveras. |
| (5) Audiverat [3], he had heard.....      | iverat. |

| PLURAL.                                     |           |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|
| (5) Audiveramus [pl. 1], we had heard.....  | iveramus. |
| (5) Audiveratis [pl. 2], you had heard..... | iveratis. |
| (5) Audiverant [pl. 3], they had heard..... | iverant.  |

"Ivi." (6) *Future Perfect.* I, &c., shall or will have heard.

| SINGULAR.                                    |         |
|----------------------------------------------|---------|
| (6) Audivero [1], I shall have heard.....    | ivero.. |
| (6) Audiveris [2], thou wilt have heard..... | iveris. |
| (6) Audiverit [3], he will have heard .....  | iverit. |

| PLURAL.                                           |           |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| (6) Audiverimus [pl. 1], we shall have heard..... | iverimus. |
| (6) Audiveritis [pl. 2], you will have heard..... | iveritis. |
| (6) Audiverint [pl. 3], they will have heard..... | iverint.  |

The present, imperfect, and future tenses, are formed from the first principal part, *ir*. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are formed from the second principal part, *ivi*.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *io* in the first person, into *is* in the second, and into *it* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *imus* in the first person, into *itis* in the second, and into *iunt* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iebam* in the first person, into *iebas* in the second, and into *iebat* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iebamus* in the first person, into *iebatis* in the second, and into *iebant* in the third person.

In the future tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iam* in the first person, into *ies* in the second, and into *iet* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iemus* in the first person, into *ietis* in the second, and into *ient* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *ivi* in the first person, into *ivisti* in the second, and into *ivit* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *ivimus* in the first person, into *ivistis* in the second, and into *iverunt* or *ivere* in the third person.

In the pluperfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *iveram* in the first person, into *iveras* in the second, and into *iverat* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *iveramus* in the first person, into *iveratis* in the second, and into *iverant* in the third person.

In the future perfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *ivero* in the first person, into *iveris* in the second, and into *iverit* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *iverimus* in the first person, into *iveritis* in the second, and into *iverint* in the third person.

### Lesson 77.

|                   |                   |                          |                       |               |                     |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| Neque             | le.pl.1           | hi                       | solùm,                | as-at.1       | auctoritas          |
| Neither (do)      |                   | these (senators)         | only (do so),         |               | (the) authority     |
| ut.pl.2           | quorum            | videlicet                | (cum-esse)   e-ul.(1) | est (s.)**    | 1 cara              |
| of-whom           |                   | indeed (it seems)        |                       | is            | dear                |
| s.tibi,(s)**      |                   | 1 vita                   | 1 vilissima; (s.)**   |               | sed                 |
| to-you,           |                   | (though their) life (is) | most-cheap;           |               | but                 |
| etiam             | le.pl.1           | illi                     | ap.1                  | Romani        | es-it.1             |
| also              | those             | Roman                    | equites               | ap.1          | honestissimi (s.)** |
|                   |                   |                          | knight                | (the)         | most-honorable      |
| atque             | ap.1              | optimi (bonus, s.)**     | r.pl.1                | virì,         | que                 |
| and               | best              |                          | (of)                  | men,          | and                 |
|                   |                   |                          |                       |               | ap.1                |
|                   |                   |                          |                       |               | ceteri.             |
|                   |                   |                          |                       |               | (the)               |
|                   |                   |                          |                       |               | other               |
| ap.1              | fortissimi (s.)** | is-is.pl.1               | cives,                | ul.pl.1       | qui                 |
| most-brave        |                   |                          | citizens,             |               | who                 |
| 1 or-eti-ctum.(1) | circumstant       | [pl.2]**                 | as.4                  | senatum,      | et                  |
|                   | stand-around      |                          |                       | (the) senate, | and                 |
|                   |                   |                          |                       | (the)         | concourse           |
|                   |                   |                          |                       | frequentiam   |                     |

|                                                                                                   |                                                                   |                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| ul.pl.3 quorum<br>of-whom                                                                         | <sup>1</sup> tu (2) ●●<br>you                                     | (sum-esse).e-   ul.(4) potuisti (3) ●●<br>have-been-able |
| <sup>1</sup> (d)ē-di-sum.in.(1) videre, et<br>to-see, and                                         | (icio-icere).ē-exi-ectum.in.(2) perspicere<br>to-perceive (their) |                                                          |
| m.pl.4 studia, et paulo ante<br>desires, and (a) little before (this)                             | ir-ī-i-ītum.in.(1) exaudire<br>to-hear (their)                    |                                                          |
| x-cla.pl.4 voces :<br>shouts :                                                                    | ul.pl.3 quorum<br>whose                                           | ca.pl.4 manus (f) ●● ac m.pl.4 tela<br>hands and weapons |
| jam<br>already                                                                                    | diu<br>long-since                                                 | <sup>1</sup> ego (1) ●●<br>I (could) scarcely            |
| (tineo-tinere).ē-tineui-tentum.(1) contineo (1) ●●<br>restrain                                    | abs<br>from                                                       | <sup>4</sup> te, (2) ●●<br>you, I-'can                   |
| facile   (e)ē-xi-ctum.ab.(1) adducam (1) ●●<br>easily <sup>1</sup> lead                           | is.pl.4 eosdem<br>(the) same (citizens) that                      | ut                                                       |
| (quor-ī).ē-entus.d.ab.(1) prosequantur [pl.3] ●●<br>they-may-follow                               | usque ad<br>unto —                                                | pl.4 portas,<br>(the) gates,                             |
| <sup>4</sup> te (2) ●●   (inquo)ē-iqui-ictum.(1).ne-ctis.4 relinquentem [part.] ●●<br>you leaving | oc.pl.4 hæc,<br>these                                             |                                                          |
| od.pl.4 quæ   ē-ūi.(1) studes (2) ●●<br>(things), which you-study                                 | jampridem<br>for-a-long-time-since                                |                                                          |
| ar-avi-atum.in.(1) vastare.<br>to-lay-waste.                                                      | Quamquam<br>And-yet                                               | id.4 quid<br>what                                        |
| (quor-ī).ē-entus.d.(1) loquor ? (1) ●●<br>do-I-say ?                                              | ut<br>  that                                                      | <sup>1</sup> ulla<br>any ei.1 res<br>thing               |
| (ang)ē-agi-actum.ab.(1) frangat (3) ●●<br>can-break                                               | <sup>4</sup> te ? (2) ●●<br>you                                   | [that any thing could curb                               |
| your wicked spirit] ?                                                                             | ut<br>  that                                                      | <sup>1</sup> tu (2) ●●<br>you <sup>1</sup> can ever      |
| (q)ē-exi-ectum.ab.(1) corrigas (2) ●●<br><sup>1</sup> correct                                     | <sup>4</sup> te (2) ●●<br>you                                     | [that you can ever amend]                                |
| ut tu<br>that you (ever)                                                                          | (or-ari).ar-avi-atum.d.ab.(1) meditere (2) ●●<br>meditate         | <sup>4</sup> ullam<br>any                                |
| <sup>4</sup> fugam ? ut tu<br>flight ? that you (ever)                                            | ar-avi-atum.ab.(1) cogites (2) ●●<br>think-of                     | m.4 ullum<br>any                                         |
| m.4 exsilium ?<br>exile ?                                                                         | Utinam<br>O-that                                                  | is-pl.1 immortales<br>(the) immortal                     |
| is-pl.1 istam<br>this                                                                             | ne-ctis.4 mentem<br>mind                                          | pl.1 Dii<br>Gods may-give                                |
|                                                                                                   | s tibi ! (2) ●●<br>to-you !                                       |                                                          |

## Lesson 78.

Neque hi solūm, quorum tibi auctoritas est videlicet cara, vita vilissima; sed etiam illi equites Romani, honestissimi atque optimi viri, ceterique fortissimi cives, qui circumstant senatum, quorum tu et frequentiam videre, et studia perspicere, et voces paulo ante exaudire potuisti; quorum ego vix abs te jam diu manus ac tela contineo, eosdem facile adducam, ut te hæc, quæ jampridem vastare studes, relinquentem, usque ad portas prosequantur. Quamquam quid loquor? te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut unquam te corrigas? tu ut ullam fugam meditare? tu ut ullum exsilium cogites? Utinam tibi istam mentem Dii immortales duint.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 77 AND 78.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Loquor. Frango. Unquam. Fuga. Meditor. Cogitamus. Mens. Vix. Manus. Telum. Adduco. Vastavit. Relinquens. Porta. Prosequar. Cara. Vita. Equites. Vilissima. Civis. Fortis. Optimus. Circumsto. Frequentia. Perspicere. Video. Vox. Exaudio. Honestus.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

You meditate. O that. Mind. Shouts. He has heard. Hand. Voice. I. Weapons. He restrains. To lead to. To follow. Gates. I study. They will lay waste. I speak. He breaks. Neither. Dear. Life. Cheap. Knights. The best. Other. Brave. They stood around. I saw. I perceive.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quid loquor. Te ut unquam corriges. Ullam fugam cogites. Quorum tela vix abs te contineo. Facile adducam, ut te ad portas prosequantur. Hæc, quæ vastare studes. Illi equites Romani optimi viri. Ceteri cives, qui circumstant. Voces exaudire potuisti.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

You meditate flight. O that the immortal gods would give this mind to you! Whose hands I could scarcely restrain. I can easily lead the same. They follow you to the gates. You study to lay those things waste. What do I say? Can any thing curb your wicked spirit? That you can ever amend. The authority of whom is dear to you. Though their life is most cheap. Those Roman knights, the best of men. The other citizens, who stand around. You have been able to perceive their desires.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—ACTIVE VOICE.

"*Ir.*" sb. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may hear.*

| SINGULAR.                                 | Terminations. |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (1) Audiam [1], I may hear .....      | iam.          |
| sb. (1) Audias [2], thou mayst hear ..... | ias.          |
| sb. (1) Audiat [3], he may hear .....     | iat.          |

| PLURAL.                                      |        |
|----------------------------------------------|--------|
| sb. (1) Audiamus [pl. 1], we may hear .....  | iamus. |
| sb. (1) Audiatis [pl. 2], you may hear ..... | iatis. |
| sb. (1) Audiant [pl. 3], they may hear ..... | iant.  |

"*Ir.*" sb. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I might, could, would or should hear.*

| SINGULAR.                                     |       |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------|
| sb. (2) Audirem [1], I might, &c., hear ..... | irem. |
| sb. (2) Audires [2], thou mightst hear .....  | ires. |
| sb. (2) Audiret [3], he might hear .....      | iret. |

| PLURAL.                                         |         |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------|
| sb. (2) Audiremus [pl. 1], we might hear .....  | iremus. |
| sb. (2) Audiretis [pl. 2], you might hear ..... | iretis. |
| sb. (2) Audirent [pl. 3], they might hear ..... | irent.  |

"*Ivi.*" sb. (4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., may have heard.*

| SINGULAR.                                         |         |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------|
| sb. (4) Audiverim [1], I may have heard. ....     | iverim. |
| sb. (4) Audiveris [2], thou mayst have heard..... | iveris. |
| sb. (4) Audiverit [3], he may have heard .....    | iverit. |



## 202      VERBS—FOURTH CONJUGATION—ACTIVE.

### PLURAL.

### Terminations.

|                                                       |           |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| sb. (4) Audiverimus [pl. 1], we may have heard.....   | iverimus. |
| sb. (4) Audiveritis [pl. 2], you may have heard.....  | iveritis. |
| sb. (4) Audiverint [pl. 3], they may have heard ..... | iverint.  |

*"Ivi."* sb. (5) *Pluperfect Tense.* *I might, could, would or should have heard.*

### SINGULAR.

|                                                       |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| sb. (5) Audivissem [1], I might have heard.....       | ivissem. |
| sb. (5) Audivisses [2], thou mightst have heard ..... | ivisses. |
| sb. (5) Audivisset [3], he might have heard.....      | ivisset. |

### PLURAL.

|                                                          |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| sb. (5) Audivissemus [pl. 1], we might have heard.....   | ivissemus. |
| sb. (5) Audivissetis [pl. 2], you might have heard.....  | ivissetis. |
| sb. (5) Audivissent [pl. 3], they might have heard ..... | ivissent.  |

### "IR." IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### SINGULAR.

|                                         |           |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------|
| im. Audi or audito [2], hear thou ..... | i or ito. |
| im. Audito [3], let him hear .....      | ito.      |

#### PLURAL.

|                                              |               |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------|
| im. Audite or auditote [pl. 2], hear ye..... | ite or itote. |
| im. Audiunto [pl. 3], let them hear .....    | iunto.        |

### IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### *"Ir."* in. (1) *Present Tense.*

|                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| in. (1) Audire, to hear ..... | ire. |
|-------------------------------|------|

#### *"Ivi."* in. (4) *Perfect Tense.*

|                                        |         |
|----------------------------------------|---------|
| in. (4) Audivisse, to have heard ..... | ivisse. |
|----------------------------------------|---------|

#### *"Itum."* in. (3) *Future Tense.*

|                                                  |              |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| in. (3) Auditorus esse, to be about to hear..... | iturus esse. |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|

### PARTICIPLES [PART.].

#### *"Ir."* (1) *Present Tense.*

|                                               |       |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------|
| (1) ns-ntis. 1. Audiens [part.], hearing..... | iens. |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------|

#### *"Itum."* (3) *Future Tense.*

|                                                       |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| (3) us-a-um. 1. Auditorus [part.], about to hear..... | us-a-um. |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------|

"IR." GERUNDS [GER.].

|                                                      | Terminations. |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 2. <i>G.</i> Audiendi [ger.], of hearing .....       | iendi.        |
| 3. <i>D.</i> Audiendo [ger.], to hearing .....       | iendo.        |
| 4. <i>A.</i> Audiendum [ger.], hearing .....         | iendum.       |
| 6. <i>Ab.</i> Audiendo [ger.], by, &c., hearing..... | iendo.        |

ITUM. SUPINE [UM] IN UM.

|                              |       |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Auditum [um], a hearing..... | itum. |
|------------------------------|-------|

In the above, the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive, and the imperative, also the present infinitive, present participle, and the gerunds, are formed from the first principal part, *ir*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and also the perfect infinitive, are formed from the second principal part, *ivi*. The future participle, the future infinitive, and the supine in *um*, are formed from the third principal part, *itum*.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iam* in the first person, into *ias* in the second, and into *iat* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iamus* in the first person, into *iatis* in the second person, and into *iant* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *irem* in the first person, into *ires* in the second, and into *iret* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iremus* in the first person, into *iretis* in the second, and into *irent* in the third person.

In the perfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *iverim* in the first person, into *iveris* in the second, and into *iverit* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *iverimus* in the first person, into *iveritis* in the second, and into *iverint* in the third person.

In the pluperfect tense, in the singular, *ivi* is changed into *ivissem* in the first person, into *ivisses* in the second, and into *ivisset* in the third person; in the plural, *ivi* is changed into *ivissemus* in the first person, into *ivissetis* in the second, and into *ivissent* in the third person.

In the imperative mood, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *i* or *ito* in the second person, and into *ito* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *ite* or *itote* in the second person, and into *iunto* in the third person.

In the infinitive mood, in the present tense, *ir* is changed into *ire*; in the perfect tense, *ivi* is changed into *ivisse*; and, in the future tense, *itum* is changed into *iturus*, with *esse*.

In the participles, in the present tense, *ir* is changed into *iens*; and, in the future tense, *itum* is changed into *iturus*.

In the gerunds, *ir* is changed into *iendi* in the genitive, into *iendo* in the dative, into *iendum* in the accusative, and into *iendo* in the ablative.

In the supine in *um*, *itum* is changed into *itum*.

In the tenses formed from *ivi*, *vi* is sometimes omitted, when followed by *s*: as, *audissem* for *audivissem*. Sometimes *v* alone is omitted: as, *audiero* for *audivero*.

### Lesson 79.

|                                     |                               |                               |                              |                           |                               |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Quum                                | <sup>1</sup> prima            | io-onm. <sup>1</sup>          | legio (f.) <sup>1</sup> ●●   | ir-   i-tum.ab.(5)        | venisset <sup>[3]</sup> ●●    |
| When                                | (the) first                   |                               | legion                       |                           | should-have-come              |
| in                                  | m-pl. <sup>4</sup> castra,    | que-                          | pl. <sup>1</sup> reliquæ-    | io-ionis.pl. <sup>1</sup> | legiones (f.) <sup>1</sup> ●● |
| into                                | (the) camp,                   | and                           | (the) remaining              |                           | legions                       |
| (sum-esse)   a-ai.ab.(3)            | abessent <sup>[Pl.3]</sup> ●● | m. <sup>1</sup> magnum        | m. <sup>1</sup> spatium,     |                           |                               |
|                                     | might-be-distant              | (a) great                     | space,                       | (they                     |                               |
|                                     | adoriri                       | ac. <sup>4</sup> hanc         | sub                          |                           |                               |
| were advised)                       | to-attack                     | this (first legion)           | under (their load of)        |                           |                               |
| pl. <sup>6</sup> sarcinis;          | um. <sup>6</sup> quæ          | pl. <sup>6</sup> pulsâ,       | [part.] ●●                   | que-                      |                               |
| baggage;                            | which                         | (legion)                      | being-routed,                | and                       |                               |
| m-pl. <sup>6</sup> impedimentis-    |                               | m-pl. <sup>6</sup> direptis   | [part.] ●●                   |                           |                               |
| (the) camp-equipage                 |                               | being-plundered               |                              |                           |                               |
| (sum-esse).o-ai.(3).m. <sup>1</sup> | futurum [part.] ●●            | ut                            | pl. <sup>1</sup> reliquæ     |                           |                               |
|                                     | it-would-be                   | that (the)                    | remaining (legions)          | <sup>1</sup> would        |                               |
| non                                 | ēr-aurus-sum.ab.(3)           | auderent <sup>[pl.3]</sup> ●● | (sist)ēr-stiti-stitum.in.(1) | consistere                |                               |
| not                                 | <sup>1</sup> dare             |                               |                              | to-stand                  |                               |
| contrâ.                             | Etiam                         | ar-avi-atum.(3)               | adjuvabat <sup>[3]</sup> ●●  |                           |                               |
| against (them).                     | Also                          | (this)                        | did-assist                   |                           |                               |

|                                                                      |                                                                 |                                                            |                                                         |                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| m. <sup>4</sup> consilium<br>(the) advice                            | is.pl. <sup>2</sup> eorum,<br>of-those                          | ul.pl. <sup>1</sup> qui<br>who                             |                                                         |                                                                |
| (fero-ferre)-tuli-latum(2)                                           | deferebant [pl.3] ●●                                            | ei. <sup>4</sup> rem,<br>[reported] (this) thing, (namely) |                                                         |                                                                |
| quod<br>that                                                         | a.pl. <sup>1</sup> Nervii<br>(the) Nervi                        | antiquitus,<br>anciently, quum<br>when                     |                                                         |                                                                |
| (sum-esse)   e-ul.ab.(3)                                             | possent [pl.3] ●●                                               | nihil<br>nothing                                           | is. <sup>6</sup> equitatu,<br>by-cavalry, (enim<br>(for |                                                                |
| neque<br>neither                                                     | ad<br>to                                                        | oc. <sup>4</sup> hoc<br>this                               | us.oria. <sup>4</sup> tempus<br>time                    | sr-ul.(1) student [pl.3] ●●<br>do-they-study                   |
| is. <sup>3</sup> ei<br>this                                          | ei. <sup>3</sup> rei,<br>thing,                                 | sed<br>but                                                 | id. <sup>4</sup> quidquid<br>whatever                   | (sum-esse)   e-ul.(1) possunt [pl.3] ●●<br>they-are-able-to-do |
| sr-ul-ium.(1)                                                        | valent [pl.3] ●●                                                | is.is.pl. <sup>6</sup> pedestribus<br>by-foot              | pl. <sup>6</sup> copiis;<br>soldiers; (in order)        |                                                                |
| quod   ir-ivi-ium.ab.(2)                                             | impedirent [pl.3] ●●                                            | facilius<br>(the) more-easily                              | is. <sup>4</sup> equitatum<br>(the) cavalry             |                                                                |
| a.pl. <sup>1</sup> finitimorum,<br>'of (their) 'neighbours,          | si<br>if                                                        | ir-   i-tum.ab.(5)                                         | venisset[3] ●●                                          | ad eos<br>to them                                              |
| <sup>6</sup> causâ<br>'for (the) 'purpose                            | ar-avi-atum.2                                                   | prædandi, [scr.] ●●                                        | pl. <sup>6</sup> incisîs [part.] ●●<br>having-cut-into  |                                                                |
| <sup>6</sup> teneris<br>tender                                       | or-oria.pl. <sup>6</sup> arboribus,<br>trees,                   | (f.) ●●                                                    | atque<br>and (these) being-bent                         | <sup>6</sup> inflexis, [part.] ●●                              |
| que<br>and (having)                                                  | er.pl. <sup>6</sup> crebris<br>thick                            | a.pl. <sup>6</sup> ramis<br>boughs                         | a.pl. <sup>6</sup> enatis [part.] ●●<br>springing-forth | in<br>in                                                       |
| do-dinis. <sup>4</sup> latitudinem,(f.) ●●<br>(a) lateral-direction, | et<br>and                                                       | a.pl. <sup>6</sup> rubis<br>brambles                       | que<br>and                                              |                                                                |
| is-is.pl. <sup>6</sup> sentibus (m.) ●●<br>thorns                    | a.pl. <sup>6</sup> interjectis, [part.] ●●<br>'cast-in-between, |                                                            |                                                         |                                                                |
| (ic)sr-   oci-ectum.(5)                                              | effecerant, [pl.3] ●●                                           | ut<br>that                                                 | mc.pl. <sup>1</sup> hæc<br>these                        |                                                                |
| they-had-accomplished                                                | (so much),                                                      |                                                            |                                                         |                                                                |
| es-is.pl. <sup>1</sup> sepes<br>hedges                               | er-ul-ium.ab.(2)                                                | præberent [pl.3] ●●                                        | m.pl. <sup>4</sup> munimenta<br>fortifications          |                                                                |
| instar<br>like                                                       | a. <sup>2</sup> muri;<br>'of (a) 'wall;                         | quod<br>whither                                            | non<br>it-' was not                                     |                                                                |
| (sum-esse)   e-ul.ab.(3)                                             | posset non modò<br>'possible not only (not)                     | ar-avi-atum.p.in.(1)                                       | intrari,<br>to-enter,                                   |                                                                |
| sed non quidem<br>but not indeed (even)                              | (ic)sr-eri-ectum.p.in.(1)                                       | perspici.<br>to-see-through (them).                        |                                                         |                                                                |

## Lesson 80.

Quum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquæque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: quâ pulsâ, impedimentisque direptis, futurum ut reliquæ contrâ consistere non auderent. Adjuvabat etiam eorum consilium, qui rem deferebant, quòd Nervii antiquitûs, quum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student sed, quidquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), quòd facilius finitimorum equitatum si prædandi causâ ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis, et rubis sentibusque interjectis, effecerant, ut, instar muri, hæ sepes munimenta præberent; quòd non modò non intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 79 AND 80.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Tener. Inflexus. Arbor. Creber. Latitudo. Ramus.  
 Rubus. Instar. Murus. Sepes. Intrat. Perspicio.  
 Venio. Absum. Sarcinæ. Consisto. Audeo. Adjuvabo.  
 Antiquitûs. Tempus. Studeo. Pedestris. Faciliûs.  
 Finitimus. Impedirent.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

To enter. He might hinder. Cavalry. Neighbor.  
 Should he have come. Tender. Being bent. Tree.  
 Bough. Brambles. Thorns. Did present. Like. Wall.  
 To dare. Personal baggage. Camp equipage. He will  
 assist. Time. I study. I come.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Teneris arboribus inflexis. Rubis sentibusque interjectis.  
 Ut, instar muri, hæ sæpes munimenta præberent. Quòd non  
 intrari posset. Qui rem deferebant. Nervii equitatu nihil  
 possent. Neque ei rei student. Quo faciliûs equitatum

impedirent. Quum legio in castra venisset. Reliquæ magnum spatium abessent. Hanc sub sarcinis adoriri. Consistere non auderent.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

It was not possible to enter. Whatever they were able to do, they accomplished by foot soldiers. In order that they might more easily hinder the cavalry. If he should come to them. Tender trees being cut into. Having boughs springing forth in a lateral direction. Branches and thorns being cast in between. The hedges presented a fortification like a wall. The camp equipage being plundered. They dared not stand against them. The Nervii could do nothing by cavalry. They do not study this thing. The remaining legions were distant.

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

##### *Passive Voice.*

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

*"Ir."* p. (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., am heard.*

##### SINGULAR.

##### Terminations.

|                                                   |              |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| p. (1) Audior [1], I am heard .....               | ior.         |
| p. (1) Audiris or audire [2], thou art heard..... | iris or ire. |
| p. (1) Auditur [3], he is heard .....             | itur.        |

##### PLURAL.

|                                               |         |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------|
| p. (1) Audimur [pl. 1], we are heard.....     | imur.   |
| p. (1) Audimini [pl. 2], you are heard.....   | imini.  |
| p. (1) Audiuntur [pl. 3], they are heard..... | iuntur. |

*"Ir."* p. (2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., was heard.*

##### SINGULAR.

|                                                          |                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| p. (2) Audiebar [1], I was heard.....                    | iebar.             |
| p. (2) Audiebaris or audiebare [2], thou wast heard..... | iebaris or iebare. |
| p. (2) Audiebatur [3], he was heard.....                 | iebatũr.           |

208      VERBS—FOURTH CONJUGATION—PASSIVE.

PLURAL.

Terminations.

- p. (2) Audiebamur [pl. 1], we were heard..... iebamur.  
 p. (2) Audiebamini [pl. 2], you were heard..... iebamini.  
 p. (2) Audiebantur [pl. 3], they were heard ..... iebantur.

*"Ir."* p. (3) *Future Tense.* *I, &c., shall or will be heard.*

SINGULAR.

- p. (3) Audiar [1], I shall be heard ..... iar.  
 p. (3) Audieris or audiers [2], thou wilt be heard..... ieris or iere.  
 p. (3) Audietur [3], he will be heard..... ietur.

PLURAL.

- p. (3) Audiemur [pl. 1], we shall be heard..... iemur.  
 p. (3) Audiemini [pl. 2], you will be heard ..... iemini.  
 p. (3) Audientur [pl. 3], they will be heard..... ientur.

*"Itum."* p. (4) *Perfect Tense.* *I, &c., have been heard.*

SINGULAR.

- p. (4) Auditus sum or fui [1], I have been heard.  
 p. (4) Auditus es or fuisti [2], thou hast been heard.  
 p. (4) Auditus est or fuit [3], he has been heard.

PLURAL.

- p. (4) Auditi sumus or fuimus [pl. 1], we have been heard.  
 p. (4) Auditi estis or fuistis [pl. 2], you have been heard.  
 p. (4) Auditi sunt or fuerunt or fuere [pl. 3], they have been heard.

*"Itum."* p. (5) *Pluperfect Tense.* *I, &c., had been heard.*

SINGULAR.

- p. (5) Auditus eram or fueram [1], I had been heard.  
 p. (5) Auditus eras or fueras [2], thou hadst been heard.  
 p. (5) Auditus erat or fuerat [3], he had been heard.

PLURAL.

- p. (5) Auditi eramus or fueramus [pl. 1], we had been heard.  
 p. (5) Auditi eratis or fueratis [pl. 2], you had been heard.  
 p. (5) Auditi erant or fuerant [pl. 3], they had been heard.

*"Itum."* p. (6) *Future Perfect.* *I, &c., shall or will have been heard.*

SINGULAR.

- p. (6) Auditus ero or fuero [1], I shall have been heard.  
 p. (6) Auditus eris or fueris [2], thou wilt have been heard.  
 p. (6) Auditus erit or fuerit [3], he will have been heard.

PLURAL.

p. (6) *Auditi erimus or fuerimus* [pl. 1], we shall have been heard.

p. (6) *Auditi eritis or fueritis* [pl. 2], you will have been heard.

p. (6) *Auditi erunt or fuerint* [pl. 3], they will have been heard.

The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ir*; the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, are formed from the third principal part, *itum*; or, rather, the perfect participle is formed from the third principal part.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *ior* in the first person, into *iris* or *ire* in the second, and into *itur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *imur* in the first person, into *imini* in the second, and into *iuntur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iebar* in the first person, into *iebaris* or *iebare* in the second, and into *iebatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iebamur* in the first person, into *iebamini* in the second, and into *iebantur* in the third person.

In the future tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iar* in the first person, into *ieris* or *iere* in the second, and into *ietur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iemur* in the first person, into *iemini* in the second, and into *ientur* in the third person.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive, have properly no terminations, as they are formed by the perfect participle and the tenses of *sum*.

In the perfect tense, either *sum*—*I am*, or *fui*—*I was*, combined with the perfect participle, may be used to denote the perfect passive tense. So, likewise, *eram* or *fueram* for the pluperfect tense, and *ero* or *fuero* for the future perfect tense.



## Lesson 81.

Post<sup>2</sup>ridie <sup>in.2</sup>ejus <sup>et.2</sup>diei, pri<sup>us</sup> qu<sup>am</sup> <sup>in-pl.1</sup>hostes  
 (The) day-after that day, before that (the) enemy  
 | (recipio-recipere). 3r-(rec)-epl-(rec)-eptum.ab.(3) recip<sup>erent</sup> [pl.3] ●● <sup>4se</sup>ex ●●  
 might-recover themselves from  
<sup>or-oris.6</sup>terrore ac <sup>6</sup>fugā <sup>r-ris.1</sup>Cæsar (c)3r- | xi-ctum.(4) duxit [3] ●●  
 (their) terror and flight Cæsar led  
<sup>in.4</sup>exercitum in <sup>in-pl.4</sup>fines <sup>in-pl.2</sup>Successionum  
 (his) army into (the) territories <sup>1</sup>of (the) <sup>1</sup>Successiones  
<sup>ul-pl.1</sup>qui (num-case) | o-ul.(3) erant [pl.3] ●● <sup>apl.1</sup>proximi (s.) ●●  
 who were (the) nearest  
<sup>apl.2</sup>Rhemis; et <sup>m.6</sup>magno <sup>or-ineris.6</sup>itinere  
<sup>1</sup>to (the) <sup>1</sup>Rhemi; and (a) great march  
 (icio-icere). 3r-ect- | ectum.p.(4).s.6 confecto, [part.] ●● (d)3r- | di-tum.(4) contendit [3] ●●  
 having-been-accomplished, he-hastened  
 ad <sup>m.4</sup>oppidum <sup>m.4</sup>Noviodunum. ar-avi- | atum.d.(4).s.1 Conatus [part.] ●●  
 to (the) town (of) Noviodunum. Having-attempted  
 | ar-avi-atum.in.(1) oppugnare <sup>id.4</sup>id ex <sup>or-ineris.6</sup>itinere, quod  
 to-assault it on (his) march, because  
 | in-ivi-tum.(3) audiebat [3] ●● (num-case) | o-ul.in.(1) esse <sup>m.1</sup>vacuum  
 he-heard (that it) was destitute  
 ab <sup>or-oris.pl.6</sup>defensoribus, non (num-case) o- | ui.(4) potuit [3] ●●  
 of defenders, (yet) he-<sup>1</sup> was not <sup>1</sup>able  
 | ar-avi-atum.in.(1) expugnare, propter <sup>do-dinia.4</sup>latitudinem (f.) ●●  
 to-storm (it), on-account-of (the) breadth  
<sup>2</sup>fossæ, que <sup>do-dinia.4</sup>altitudinem (f.) ●● <sup>s.2</sup>muri,  
<sup>1</sup>of (the) <sup>1</sup>ditch, and (the) height <sup>1</sup>of (the) <sup>1</sup>wall,  
<sup>apl.6</sup>paucis | (d)3r-di-sum.(1).m.2tis.pl.6 defendentibus. [part.] ●●  
 few (men) (however) defending (it).  
<sup>m.pl.6</sup>Castris in-ivi or li- | itum.(4).m.pl.6 munitis [part.] ●●  
 (The) camp having-been-fortified  
 (capio-capere). 3r- | (comp)t-(comp)tum.(4) cœpit [3] ●● (ago-agere) | 3r-agi-(s)atum.in.(3) agere  
 he-began to-move-forward  
<sup>pl.4</sup>vincas | ar-avi-atum.in.(1) comparare <sup>uid-pl.4</sup>quæque  
 (the) mantlets, (and) to-prepare whatever  
 (num-case) | o-ul.(3) erant [3] ●● <sup>s.2</sup>usui ad  
 (things) were (of) use for  
 | ar-avi-atum.(4) oppugnandum. [3r.] ●● Interim  
 assaulting (the town). In-the-mean-time

|                                                                     |                                                              |                                                                  |                                               |                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| is-is <sup>1</sup> omnis<br>all                                     | do-dinis. <sup>1</sup><br>(the) multitudo                    | (f.) <sup>••</sup>                                               | is-is.pl. <sup>2</sup><br>of (the) Suessiones | ex<br>from                     |
| 6 fugâ<br>(the) flight                                              | ir-   i-tum. <sup>(1)</sup><br>came                          | convenit <sup>(3)</sup> ••                                       | in m. <sup>4</sup> oppidum<br>(the) town      | 6 proximâ<br>on (the) next     |
| x-ctis. <sup>6</sup><br>night.                                      | pl. <sup>6</sup> Vineis<br>(The) mantlets                    | (ago-agers) ir-ag-   (s)ctum.p. <sup>(4)</sup> .pl. <sup>6</sup> | actis [part.] ••                              | being-moved-forward            |
| celeriter<br>quickly                                                | ad<br>to                                                     | m. <sup>4</sup> oppidum,<br>(the) town,                          | r-ris. <sup>8</sup><br>(a) mound              | aggere                         |
| (jacio-jacers).ir-jaci-   (ja)ctum. <sup>(4)</sup> .s. <sup>6</sup> | jacto, [part.] ••                                            | que-                                                             | is-is.pl. <sup>8</sup><br>towers              | turribus.                      |
| ir-i-   tum. <sup>(4)</sup> .pl. <sup>6</sup>                       | constitutis, [part.] ••                                      | and                                                              | s.pl. <sup>1</sup> Galli<br>(the) Gauls       |                                |
| ir-vi-   tum. <sup>(4)</sup> .s.pl. <sup>6</sup>                    | permoti [part.] ••                                           | alarmed                                                          | do-dinis. <sup>6</sup><br>by (the) greatness  | magnitudine (f.) <sup>••</sup> |
| us-eris.pl. <sup>3</sup><br>of (the) works,                         | ed.pl. <sup>4</sup> quæ<br>which                             | they- had                                                        | neque<br>neither                              |                                |
| ir-   i-erisum. <sup>(5)</sup>                                      | viderant [pl.3] ••                                           | ante<br>before                                                   | neque<br>nor                                  |                                |
| is-   i-vi or ii-Itum. <sup>(5)</sup>                               | audierant, [pl.3] ••                                         | et<br>and                                                        | se-atis. <sup>8</sup><br>by (the) celerity    | celeritate                     |
| s.pl. <sup>2</sup> Romanorum,<br>of (the) Romans,                   | ir-misi-missum. <sup>(1)</sup>                               | mittunt [pl.3] ••                                                | s.pl. <sup>4</sup> legatos<br>ambassadors     |                                |
| ad r-ris. <sup>4</sup> Cæsarem<br>to Cæsar                          | de<br>about                                                  | is-ionis. <sup>8</sup><br>(a) surrender,                         | et<br>and                                     |                                |
| s.pl. <sup>6</sup> Rhemis<br>(the) Rhemi                            | ir-i-vi or ii-Itum. <sup>(1)</sup> .na-atis.pl. <sup>6</sup> | petenibus, [part.] ••                                            | ut<br>that                                    |                                |
| ar-avi-atum.p.ab. <sup>(3)</sup>                                    | conservarentur [pl.3] ••                                     | ar-avi-atum. <sup>(1)</sup>                                      | impetrant [pl.3] ••                           | they-might-be-preserved        |
|                                                                     |                                                              |                                                                  |                                               | they-obtain (it).              |

## Lesson 82.

Postridie ejus diei Cæsar, prius quàm se hostes ex terrore ac fugâ reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Rhemis erant, exercitum duxit: et magno itinere confecto, ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quòd vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat; propter latitudinem fossæ murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, vineas agere, quæque ad oppugnandum usui erant, comparare cœpit. Interim

omnis ex fugâ Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto, turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quæ neque viderant antè Galli, neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Cæsarem de deditione mittunt; et petentibus Rhemis, ut conservarentur, impetrant.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 81 AND 82.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Vinea. Agger. Turris. Opus. Magnitudo. Video. Audierant. Celeritas. Deditio. Conservabam. Impetratis. Munitus. Ago. Oppugnant. Usus. Nox. Postridæ. Finis. Proximus. Duco. Vacuus. Auditur. Fossa. Auditi sunt. Expugnavit.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Tower. Alarmed. Work. He has seen. They will be heard. They have sent. Surrender. He is preserved. Flight. I say. The nearest. Accomplished. We hasten. They assaulted. Ye have heard. On account of. Breadth. Ditch. Few. He began. Mantlets. I shall prepare. Use. Night. Quickly. Mound.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Cæsar vineas agere cœpit. Quæque usui erant comparavit. Omnis multitudo in oppidum convenit. Vineis ad oppidum actis, turribusque constitutis. Quæ neque viderant antè, neque audierant. Galli legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt. In fines Suessionum exercitum duxit. Ad oppidum contendit. Id oppugnavit. Vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat. Propter latitudinem fossæ, expugnare non potuit.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Alarmed by the greatness of the works. The Gauls send ambassadors to Cæsar. The Rhemi petitioning that they

might be preserved. Few men defending it. They began to move forward the mantlets. They assaulted the town. In the mean time, the SueSSIONES came into the town. The Gauls, alarmed, send ambassadors to CÆsar. Which they had neither seen before, nor had heard of.

SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—PASSIVE VOICE.

"*Ir.*" p. sb. (1) *Present Tense.* *I, &c., may or can be heard.*

SINGULAR.

Terminations.

|                                                                   |                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| p. sb. (1) Audiar [1], I may or can be heard.....                 | iar.           |
| p. sb. (1) Audiaris or audiare [2], thou mayst, &c., be heard.... | iaris or iare: |
| p. sb. (1) Audiatur [3], he may be heard.....                     | iatur.         |

PLURAL.

|                                                       |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| p. sb. (1) Audiamur [pl. 1], we may be heard.....     | iamur.  |
| p. sb. (1) Audiamini [pl. 2], you may be heard.....   | iamini. |
| p. sb. (1) Audiantur [pl. 3], they may be heard ..... | iantur. |

"*Ir.*" p. sb. (2) *Imperfect.* *I, &c., might, could, would or should be heard.*

SINGULAR.

|                                                                 |                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| p. sb. (2) Audirer [1], I might, &c., be heard.....             | irer.            |
| p. sb. (2) Audireris or audirere [2], thou mightst be heard.... | ireris or irere. |
| p. sb. (2) Audiretur [3], he might be heard.....                | iretur.          |

PLURAL.

|                                                          |          |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| p. sb. (2) Audiremur [pl. 1], we might be heard .....    | iremur.  |
| p. sb. (2) Audiremini [pl. 2], you might be heard .....  | iremini. |
| p. sb. (2) Audirentur [pl. 3], they might be heard ..... | irentur. |

"*Ium.*" p. sb. (4) *Perfect Tense.* *I, &c. may have been heard.*

SINGULAR.

|                                                                   |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| p. sb. (4) Auditus sim or fuerim [1], I may have been heard.      |  |
| p. sb. (4) Auditus sis or fueris [2], thou mayst have been heard. |  |
| p. sb. (4) Auditus sit or fuerit [3], he may have been heard.     |  |

PLURAL.

|                                                                       |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| p. sb. (4) Auditi simus or fuerimus [pl. 1], we may have been heard.  |  |
| p. sb. (4) Auditi sitis or fueritis [pl. 2], you may have been heard. |  |
| p. sb. (4) Auditi sint or fuerint [pl. 3], they may have been heard.  |  |

## 214 VERBS—FOURTH CONJUGATION—PASSIVE.

*"Itum."* p. sb. (5) *Pluperfect Tense.* I, &c., might, could, would or should have been heard.

### SINGULAR.

### Terminations.

p. sb. (5) *Auditus essem or fuisset* [1], I might, &c., have been heard.

p. sb. (5) *Auditus esses or fuisses* [2], thou mightst have been heard.

p. sb. (5) *Auditus esset or fuisset* [3], he might have been heard.

### PLURAL.

p. sb. (5) *Auditi essemus or fuissetus* [pl. 1], we might have been heard.

p. sb. (5) *Auditi essetis or fuissetis* [pl. 2], you might have been heard.

p. sb. (5) *Auditi essent or fuissent* [pl. 3], they might have been heard.

## "IR." P. IM. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

p. im. *Audire or auditor* [2], be thou heard..... ire or itor.

p. im. *Auditor* [3], let him be heard..... itor.

### PLURAL.

p. im. *Audimini* [pl. 2], be ye heard..... imini.

p. im. *Audiuntor* [pl. 3], let them be heard ..... iuntor.

## P. IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*"Ir."* p. in. (1) *Present Tense.* To be heard.

p. in. (1) *Audiri*, to be heard..... iri.

*"Itum."* p. in. (4) *Perfect Tense.* To have been heard.

p. in. (4) *Auditus esse or fuisse*, to have been heard.

*"Itum."* p. in. (3) *Future Tense.* To be about to be heard.

p. in. (3) *Auditum iri*, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES [PART.].

*"Itum."* p. (4) *Perfect Tense* [part.]. *Heard.*

p. (4) *Auditus* [part.], heard..... itus.

*"Ir."* p. (3) *Future Tense* [part.]. *About to be heard, or to be heard.*

p. (3) *Audiendus* [part.], about to be heard..... endus.

## "ITUM." P. SUPINE IN [U]. TO BE HEARD.

p. *Auditum* [u], to be heard..... u.

The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive passive, the imperative passive, the present tense of the infinitive passive, and the future participle passive, are formed from the first principal part, *ir*. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive, the perfect and future infinitive passive, the perfect participle, and the supine in *u*, are formed from the third principal part, *itum*; or, rather, the perfect participle, and supine in *u*, are thus formed.

In the present tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *iar* in the first person, into *iaris* or *iare* in the second, and into *iatur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iamur* in the first person, into *iamini* in the second, and into *iantur* in the third person.

In the imperfect tense, in the singular, *ir* is changed into *irer* in the first person, into *ireris* or *irere* in the second, and into *iretur* in the third person; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *iremur* in the first person, into *iremini* in the second, and into *irentur* in the third person.

The perfect and pluperfect tenses, subjunctive passive, have properly no terminations; for the perfect is formed by the perfect participle *auditus*, and *sim* or *fuerim*, either forming the perfect subjunctive. The pluperfect, in like manner, is formed by the perfect participle and *essem* or *fuissem*.

In the imperative mood, *ir*, in the singular, is changed into *ire* or *itor* in the second person, and in the third person into *itor*; in the plural, *ir* is changed into *imini* in the second person, and into *iuntor* in the third person.

In the infinitive mood, in the present tense, *ir* is changed into *iri*. The perfect tense of the infinitive is formed by the perfect participle and *esse* or *fuisse*. The future tense of the same by the supine in *um* and *iri*.

The perfect participle is formed by changing *itum* into *itus*. The future participle passive by changing *ir* into *iendus*.

The supine in *u* is formed by changing *itum* into *itu*.

In the future passive participle of the third and fourth conjugations, *undus* is often used in place of *endus*.

## Lesson 83.

|                                                                        |                                                   |                                    |                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Vero                                                                   | m-pl.4 vincula                                    | et                                 | M-pl.4 ea                             |
| But                                                                    | bonds (and imprisonments)                         | and                                | these                                 |
| m-pl.4 sempiterna                                                      |                                                   |                                    | certe                                 |
| enring-for-ever                                                        | (or for life)                                     | 'have                              | certainly                             |
| in-1   tum.p.(4) inventa sunt [Pl.3] ●●                                | ad in-is.4 singularem                             | 'poenam                            |                                       |
| 'been-invented                                                         | for (the) singular                                | punishment                         |                                       |
| m.2 nefarii                                                            | no-eris.2 sceleris.                               | (2) er-mi-cum.(1) Jabet [3] ●●     |                                       |
| of-nefarious                                                           | crimes.                                           | 'He [Cæsar] 'orders (them)         |                                       |
| in-1 vi or li-1 tum.p.in.(1) dispertiri                                | m-pl.3 municipiis.                                | ta.1 Ista                          |                                       |
| to-be-distributed                                                      | to-the-municipal-towns.                           | This                               |                                       |
| al.1 res                                                               | (4) er-di-cum.p.(1) videtur [3] ●●                | er-mi-1 tum.in.(1) habere          |                                       |
| thing                                                                  | seems                                             | to-have                            |                                       |
| no-eris.4 iniquitatem,                                                 | si (vobis-   velle)-vultis.ab.(1) velis [3] ●●    |                                    |                                       |
| injustice                                                              | (in it), if                                       | you-wish                           |                                       |
| are-avi-atum.in.(1) imperare;                                          | no-eris.4 difficultatem,                          |                                    |                                       |
| to-command (it of the municipalities);                                 | difficulty,                                       |                                    |                                       |
| si                                                                     | ar-avi-atum.in.(1) rogare;                        | tamen                              |                                       |
| if (you wish)                                                          | to-ask-for (it of them);                          | however                            |                                       |
| (cern)-er-crovi-cro-tum.p.ab.(1) decernatur, [3] ●●                    | si   er-mi-1 tum.(1) placet [3] ●●                |                                    |                                       |
| let-it-be-decreed,                                                     | if it-pleases (you).                              |                                    |                                       |
| Enim 'ego (1) ●● (cipio-cipere)   Er-cupi-captum.(3) suscipiam, [1] ●● |                                                   |                                    |                                       |
| For I                                                                  | will-take-it-upon-myself (to see                  |                                    |                                       |
|                                                                        | et, ut   ar-avi-atum.(1) spero, [1] ●●            |                                    |                                       |
| your decree executed),                                                 | and, as                                           | I-hope,                            |                                       |
| in-1 tum.(3) reperiam, [1] ●●                                          |                                                   | ui-pl.1 qui                        |                                       |
| I-will-find                                                            | (those municipalities),                           | that                               |                                       |
| ar-avi-atum.ab.(1) putent [Pl.3] ●●                                    | non (num-esse)   e-ui.in.(1) esse                 |                                    |                                       |
| may-think                                                              | (it) not to-be (the part)                         |                                    |                                       |
| suæ                                                                    | no-eris.2 dignitatis                              | ar-avi-atum.in.(1) recusare        | id.4 id,                              |
| of-their                                                               | dignity                                           | to-refuse (to do)                  | that,                                 |
| od.4 quod                                                              | Er-   ui-atum.ab.(4) statueritis [Pl.3] ●●        | 'causâ.                            |                                       |
| which                                                                  | you-may-have-enacted                              | for-the-sake                       |                                       |
| no-eris.2 salutis (f.) ●●                                              | is-is.pl.2 omnium.                                | (g) er-xi-atum.(1) Adjungit [3] ●● |                                       |
| 'of (the) 'safety                                                      | of-all.                                           | 'He [Cæsar] 'adds                  |                                       |
| is-is.4 gravem 'poenam                                                 | cope-cipia.pl.3 municipibus                       |                                    |                                       |
| (a) heavy punishment                                                   | 'to (the) 'inhabitants-'of (the) 'municipal-towns |                                    |                                       |
| si                                                                     | uis.1 quis                                        | is-pl.2 eorum                      | (rup)Er-   pl-ptum.(2) ruperit [3] ●● |
| if                                                                     | any-one                                           | of-them                            | shall-have-broken                     |

|                                       |                       |                                                      |                                     |                               |                           |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| m-pl.4                                | vincula;              |                                                      |                                     |                               |                           |
|                                       | (the) bonds           | [if any one of the conspirators shall have escaped]; |                                     |                               |                           |
| (d)ar-(de)di-(d)atum.(1)              | circumdat             | (3) ●●                                               | is-is.pl.4                          | horribiles                    |                           |
|                                       | he-places-round       | (them)                                               |                                     | dreadful                      |                           |
| pl.4                                  | custodias             | et                                                   | ir-iri or ii or xi-illum or tum.(1) | sancit                        | (3) ●●                    |
|                                       | guards                | and (irrevocably)                                    |                                     | ordains                       |                           |
|                                       |                       | m-pl.4 digna                                         | us-eris.6                           | scelere                       | s-pl.3 perditorum         |
|                                       | (whatever things are) | worthy                                               | 'of (the)                           | 'guilt                        | of-abandoned              |
| o-inia.pl.3                           | hominum,              | ne                                                   | uis.1                               | quis                          | (sum-esse)   o-ui.sub.(1) |
|                                       | men,                  | lest                                                 | any-one                             | may                           | possit (3) ●●             |
| ar-avi-atum.in.(1)                    | levare                | 4                                                    | pœnam,                              | is-pl.3 eorum                 | ui-pl.4 quos              |
|                                       | lighten               | (the)                                                | punishment,                         | of-those                      | whom                      |
| ar-avi-atum.(1)                       | condemnat,            | (3) ●●                                               | aut                                 | per                           | 4                         |
|                                       | he-condemns,          |                                                      | either                              | through                       | (the) senatū, aut         |
| per                                   | 4                     | populum.                                             | Etiam                               | (ipio-ipere).ir-iplu-erum.(1) | iripit (3) ●●             |
| through                               | (the) people.         | Also                                                 |                                     | he-takes-away                 |                           |
| ci.m                                  | spem,                 | uis.1                                                | quæ                                 | 1                             | sola                      |
|                                       | hope,                 | which                                                | alone                               | is-accustomed                 |                           |
| o-inia.4                              | hominem               | in                                                   | pl.6 miseriis.                      |                               | Præterea                  |
|                                       | (a) man               | in                                                   | misery.                             |                               | Moreover                  |
| (b)ir-ai-um.(1)                       | jubet                 | (3) ●●                                               | m-pl.4 bona                         | ar-avi-atum.p.in.(1)          | publicari;                |
|                                       | he-orders             | (their)                                              | goods                               | to-be-confiscated;            |                           |
| (linquo-linguere).ir-liqui-lictum.(1) | relinquit             | (3) ●●                                               | 4                                   | vitam                         | 4                         |
|                                       | he-leaves             |                                                      | life                                | alone                         |                           |
| s-pl.3                                | nefariis              | o-inia.1                                             | hominibus.                          |                               |                           |
| 1                                     | to (these)            | 1                                                    | nefarious                           | men.                          |                           |

### Lesson 84.

Vincula vero, et ea sempiterna, certe ad singularem pœnam nefarii sceleris inventa sunt. Municipiis dispertiri jubet. Habere videtur ista res iniquitatem, si imperare velis; difficultatem, si rogare; discernatur tamen, si placet. Ego enim suscipiam, et, ut spero, reperiam, qui id, quod salutis omnium causâ statueritis, non putent esse suæ dignitatis recusare. Adjungit gravem pœnam municipibus, si quis eorum vincula ruperit: horribiles custodias circumdat, et digna scelere hominum perditorum sancit, ne quis eorum pœnam, quos condemnat, aut per senatū, aut per populum levare



possit. Eripit etiam spem, quæ sola hominem in miseriis consolari solet. Bona præterea publicari jubet; vitam solam relinquit nefariis hominibus.

EXERCISES ON LESSONS 83 AND 84.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Adjunxit. Municeps. Poena. Vinculum. Custodiæ. Circumdedit. Scelus. Perditus. Levare. Eripio. Spes. Consolabo. Jubetis. Vita. Reliquit. Sempiterna. Disperit. Imperabis. Volo. Rogavisti. Decernatur. Suscipiet. Sperabam. Reperiam. Salus. Causâ. Puto. Recusavit.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

You condemn. To take away. He has consoled. Misery. They have ordered. They will be confiscated. He left. You have enacted. Safety. He will add. Punishment. Shall have broken. You place around. Guards. Guilt. Worthy. They order. Municipal towns. You have commanded. We ask for. It pleases. He will take it upon himself. He hopes. I have found. He may think. They have refused. Have been invented.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Eripit spem. Quæ hominem consolari solet. Bona publicari jubent. Vitam solam relinquit hominibus. Adjungunt gravem poenam municipibus. Si quis vincula ruperit. Ne quis poenam levare possit. Municipiis jubet. Habere videtur ista res difficultatem. Si placet. Ut spero, reperiam. Non putet esse suæ dignitatis recusare.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Whom you condemn. He takes away hope. He consoles the man in misery. He leaves life alone to the men. For the sake of the safety of all. If any one of them shall have

escaped. He placed guards round them. To lighten the punishment. He orders them to be distributed to the municipal towns. If it pleases you. They will take it upon themselves. They think it not a part of their dignity.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are those which not only depart from the formation of the principal parts, but also are irregular in the formation of the tenses and persons formed from these principal parts, especially in the first part. They are *sum*—*I am*, which, with its compounds, has already been treated of; *volo*—*I am willing*, *fero*—*I bear or carry*, *facio*—*I am made or become*, *edo*—*I eat*, *eo*—*I go*, *queo*—*I can or am able*. The compounds of all these being also irregular.

*Volo*—*I am willing, or I wish*.

Some of the parts of *volo*, and of its compounds, are wanting.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Present Indicative.   | Present Infinitive.    | Perfect Indicative.          |
|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Volo</i> ,         | <i>Velle</i> ,         | <i>Volui</i> ,               |
| <i>I-am-willing</i> . | <i>to-be-willing</i> . | <i>I-have-been-willing</i> . |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"E." (1) *Present Tense*. *I, &c., am willing, or I wish*.

| SINGULAR.                                         | Terminations. |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| (1) <i>Volo</i> [1], <i>I am willing</i> .....    | olo.          |
| (1) <i>Vis</i> [2], <i>thou art willing</i> ..... | is.           |
| (1) <i>Vult</i> [3], <i>he is willing</i> .....   | ult.          |

PLURAL.

|                                                          |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| (1) <i>Volumus</i> [pl. 1], <i>we are willing</i> .....  | olumus. |
| (1) <i>Vultis</i> [pl. 2], <i>you are willing</i> .....  | ultis.  |
| (1) <i>Volunt</i> [pl. 3], <i>they are willing</i> ..... | olunt.  |

Imperfect tense, *volebam*—*I was willing*, is conjugated regularly after the third conjugation; so is also the future,

*volam*—*I will be willing*; also the present participle, *volens*—*being willing*.

All the tenses formed from the second principal part, *ui*, are conjugated regularly after the third conjugation: as, perfect, *volui*—*I have been willing*; pluperfect, *volueram*—*I had been willing*; perfect future, *voluero*—*I shall have been willing*. Also, the subjunctive perfect, *voluerim*—*I may have been willing*, is regular, as, likewise, the pluperfect subjunctive, *voluissem*—*I might have been willing*, and the infinitive perfect, *voluisse*—*to have been willing*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

"E." sb. (1) *Present Tense*. *I, &c., may be willing*.

| SINGULAR.                                                    | Terminations. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| sb. (1) <i>Velim</i> [1], <i>I may be willing</i> .....      | elim.         |
| sb. (1) <i>Velis</i> [2], <i>thou mayst be willing</i> ..... | elis.         |
| sb. (1) <i>Velit</i> [3], <i>he may be willing</i> .....     | elit.         |

| PLURAL.                                                         |           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| sb. (1) <i>Velimus</i> [pl. 1], <i>we may be willing</i> .....  | elimus.   |
| sb. (1) <i>Velitis</i> [pl. 2], <i>you may be willing</i> ..... | elititis. |
| sb. (1) <i>Velint</i> [pl. 3], <i>they may be willing</i> ..... | elint.    |

"E." sb. (2) *Imperfect Tense*. *I, &c., might, could, &c., be willing*.

| SINGULAR.                                                       |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| sb. (2) <i>Vellem</i> [1], <i>I might be willing</i> .....      | ellem. |
| sb. (2) <i>Velles</i> [2], <i>thou mightst be willing</i> ..... | elles. |
| sb. (2) <i>Vellet</i> [3], <i>he might be willing</i> .....     | ellet. |

| PLURAL.                                                            |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| sb. (2) <i>Vellemus</i> [pl. 1], <i>we might be willing</i> .....  | ellemus.   |
| sb. (2) <i>Velletis</i> [pl. 2], <i>you might be willing</i> ..... | elletitis. |
| sb. (2) <i>Vellent</i> [pl. 3], <i>they might be willing</i> ..... | ellent.    |

"E." in. (1) *Infinitive. Present Tense*.

|                                                   |       |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------|
| in. (1) <i>Velle</i> , <i>to be willing</i> ..... | elle. |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------|

The irregularity of *volo* is in the indicative present tense, in the subjunctive present and imperfect tenses, and in the

infinitive present, all as above given. *V* is placed before all the above terminations, in these irregular parts, to form the moods and tenses.

*Volt* and *voltis*, for *vult* and *vultis*, sometimes occur.

The compounds of *volo* are *nolo*—*I am unwilling*, compounded from *non*—*not*, and *volo*—*I am willing*; *malo*—*I am more willing*, compounded of *magis*—*more* and *volo*.

*Nolo*—*I am unwilling*, is formed by dropping the final *n* of *non*, and by omitting the commencing *v* in *volo*, making *noolo*; but the two vowels, *oo*, are contracted into *o*, thus forming *nolo*, and this takes place in all the moods, tenses, numbers and persons of *nolo*, except the second and third persons singular indicative, and the second person plural of the same, in which the *n* of *non*, and the *v* of *volo*, are not dropped: as, singular, *nolo*<sup>[1]</sup>, *nonvis*<sup>[2]</sup>, *nonvult*<sup>[3]</sup>; plural, *nolumus*<sup>[pl.1]</sup>, *nonvultis*<sup>[pl.2]</sup>, *nonlunt*<sup>[pl.3]</sup>; so that *nolo*, formed by contracting *non* and *volo*, as above described, is exactly conjugated like *volo*, with the exceptions here above indicated.

*Nolo* has also the imperative: as, singular, *noli* or *nolito*<sup>[2]</sup>, *be ye not willing*; plural, *nolite* or *nolitote*<sup>[pl.2]</sup>, *let them not be willing*.

*Nevis* and *nevult* sometimes occur for *nonvis* and *nonvult*.

*Malo*—*I am more willing*, is formed by dropping the final syllable, *gis*, of *magis*, and by omitting the commencing *v* of *volo*, making *maolo*; but *ao* is contracted into *a*, thus forming *malo*: and this takes place in all the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of *volo*, except the second and third persons singular indicative, and the second person plural of the same, in which the *v* of *volo* is not dropped, though the *gis* of *magis* is: as, singular, *malo*,<sup>[1]</sup> *mavis*,<sup>[2]</sup> *navult*; <sup>[3]</sup> plural, *malumus*,<sup>[pl.1]</sup> *navultis*,<sup>[pl.2]</sup> *malunt*; <sup>[pl.3]</sup> so that *malo*, formed by contracting *magis* and *volo*, as above described, is exactly conjugated like *volo*, with the exceptions here indicated.

## Lesson 85.

|                                   |                 |                    |                                 |                                    |                    |                 |                        |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| Tam                               |                 | (quor-qui)ēr-      | cutum.d.(4)                     | assecutus sum                      | [1] ● ●            | odd             | quod                   |
| I-' have-already                  |                 |                    |                                 | 'attained                          |                    |                 | what                   |
| ar-                               | avi-atum.(4)    | expectavi,         | [1] ● ●                         | ut                                 | pl.1 vos (3) ●     | is-in.1         | omnes                  |
| I-expected,                       |                 |                    |                                 | that                               |                    |                 | all                    |
| (d)ēr-di-um-ab.3                  |                 | videretis,         | [pl.3] ● ●                      |                                    | is-omn.4           |                 | conjuratiōnem (f.) ● ● |
| might-see,                        |                 |                    |                                 | (that)                             |                    |                 | (a) conspiracy         |
| (cio-cere)ēr-                     | fact-           | ctum.p.in.4        | factum esse                     | apertè                             |                    |                 | contra                 |
|                                   |                 |                    | has-been-made                   | openly                             |                    |                 | against                |
| si.4 and 4                        | republicam.     |                    | Nisi vero si                    | (sum-esse)   o-ul.(1)              | est                | [3] ● ●         |                        |
| (the) republic.                   |                 |                    | Unless indeed there             |                                    | (may)              |                 | be                     |
| ul.1                              | quis,           | ul.1               | qui,                            | ar-avi-atum.ab.(1)                 | putet              | [3] ● ●         |                        |
| any-one,                          |                 |                    | who,                            |                                    | thinks             |                 | (that those who are)   |
| is-in.pl.1                        | similes         | 2                  | Catilinæ                        | non                                | (1)tr-ul-um.in.(1) | sentire         | cum                    |
| (the) likes                       |                 |                    | of-Catiline                     | 'do not                            |                    | 'feel           | with                   |
| 2                                 |                 | Catilinæ.          |                                 | (sum-esse)   o-ul.(1)              | Est                | [3] ● ●         | non jam                |
| Catiline.                         |                 | There              |                                 | is                                 |                    | not             | now                    |
| se-atia.3                         | lenitati;       | ul.1               | res                             | ul.1                               | ipsa               | ar-avi-atum.(1) | flagitat               |
| for-mildness;                     |                 |                    | (the) thing                     |                                    | itself             |                 | demand                 |
| se-atia.4                         | severitatem.    |                    |                                 |                                    |                    |                 |                        |
| severity.                         |                 |                    | I-' may                         |                                    | even               |                 | nunc                   |
|                                   |                 |                    |                                 |                                    |                    |                 | now                    |
| (con)ēr-                          | conci-um-ab.(1) | concedam           | [1] ● ●                         |                                    |                    | m.4             | unum :                 |
|                                   |                 | 'concede           |                                 |                                    |                    |                 | one-thing :            |
| (eo-ire)   is-ivi or ii-um-ab.(1) | exant           | [pl.3] ● ●         |                                 | (fiscor-fici)   ēr-fectus.d.ab.(1) |                    |                 | profi-                 |
|                                   |                 | let-them-go-forth. |                                 |                                    |                    |                 | let-                   |
| ciscantur; [pl.3] ● ●             |                 | ne                 | (ior-i)   ēr-passus-um.d.ab.(1) | patiantur                          | [pl.3] ● ●         |                 |                        |
| them-depart;                      |                 | let-' them not     |                                 | 'suffer                            |                    |                 |                        |
| si.4                              | miserum         | 4                  | Catilinam                       | (boc)ēr-bul.in (1)                 | tabescere          | m.6             | desiderio              |
| (the) wretched                    |                 |                    | Catiline                        |                                    | to-pine-away       |                 | for (the) want         |
| 2                                 | gui; (3) ● ●    |                    | ar-avi-atum.(3)                 | demonstrabo                        | [1] ● ●            | er-ineri.4      | iter.                  |
| of-them;                          |                 |                    |                                 | I-will-point-out                   |                    |                 | (the) road.            |
| (fiscor-fici)ēr-                  | fectum.d.(4)    | Profectus est      | [3] ● ●                         | 6                                  | Aureliā            | 6               | viā: si                |
|                                   |                 | He-has-departed    |                                 | 'by (the)                          | 'Aurelian          |                 | way: if                |
| (uolo-uolle)   o-ul.ab.(3)        | volent          | [pl.3] ● ●         |                                 | ar-avi-atum.in.(1)                 | accelerare         |                 |                        |
|                                   |                 | they-will-desire   |                                 |                                    | to-hasten          |                 |                        |
| (inquer-sequi)   ēr-ctus-um.d.(3) | consequentur    |                    |                                 | ad                                 | 6                  | vesperam.       |                        |
|                                   |                 | they-will-overtake | (him)                           | at                                 |                    | evening.        |                        |
| O,                                | 4               | fortunatam         | si.4 and 4                      | republicam,                        | si                 |                 | quidem                 |
| O,                                |                 | fortunate          |                                 | republic,                          | if                 |                 | indeed                 |

|                                      |                       |                                             |                                                      |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| (jicio-jicare)ſr-   jeci-jectum.ab.4 | ejecerit [3] ●●       | mc.4 hanc                                   | 4sentinam                                            |
|                                      | she-may-have-cast-out | this                                        | sink                                                 |
| mc.2 hujus                           | be-bis.2 urbis!       | ca-in.6 Mehercule,                          | 6 Catilinā                                           |
| of-this                              | city!                 | By-Hercules,                                | Catilina                                             |
| (r)ir-at-   stum.p.(4).3             | exhausto, [part.] ●●  | si.1 and 1                                  | respublica                                           |
|                                      | being-drawn-off,      |                                             | (the) republic                                       |
| (d)ſc-di-stum.p.(1)                  | videtur [3] ●●        | 3 mihi (1) ●●                               | ar-avi-   atum.p.(4).1 rele-                         |
|                                      | seems                 | to-me                                       | re-                                                  |
| vata [part.] ●●                      | et                    | ar-avi-   atum.p.(4).1 recreata. [part.] ●● | Enim                                                 |
| lieved                               | and                   | refreshed.                                  | For                                                  |
| id.1 quid                            | m.2 mali              | aut                                         | us-avis.2 sceleris (sum-um)   e-ui.(1) potest [3] ●● |
| what                                 | evil                  | or                                          | crime                                                |
|                                      |                       |                                             | can                                                  |
| (d)ſr-m-ctum.p.in.(1)                | finġi                 | aut                                         | ar-avi-atum.p.in.(1) excogitari, od.4 quod           |
|                                      | be-formed             | or                                          | devised,                                             |
| la.1 ille                            | non                   | (cipio-cipere)ſr-   cepi-ceptum.ab.(4)      | conceperit. [3] ●●                                   |
| he                                   | 'may not              |                                             | 'have-conceived.                                     |

### Lesson 86.

Quod exspectavi, jam sum assecutus, ut vos omnes, factam esse aperte conjurationem contra rempublicam, videretis. Nisi vero si quis est, qui Catilinæ similes cum Catilinā sentire non putet. Non est jam lenitati locus; severitatem res ipsa flagitat. Unum etiam nunc concedam; exeant, profisciscantur, ne patiantur desiderio sui Catilinam miserum tabescere; demonstrabo iter; Aureliā viā profectus est; si accelerare volent, ad vesperam consequentur. O fortunatam rempublicam, si quidem hanc sentinam hujus urbis ejecerit! Uno mehercule Catilinā exhausto, relevata mihi et recreata respublica videtur. Quid enim mali aut sceleris fingi aut excogitari potest, quod non ille conceperit?

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 85 AND 86.

##### *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Relevatus. Vides. Fingo. Excogitaverunt. Conceperit. Exeo. Profisciscor. Tabescit. Demonstravistis. Via. Profectus erat. Accelerabo. Vespera. Respublica.

Urbs. Ejicio. Expectabam. Apertè. Viderem. Similis.  
Putamus. Lenitas. Flagito. Concedo. Volo. Mavis.  
Vult.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Refreshed. Crime. To devise. To conceive. Fortunate.  
He casts out. Sink. City. I see. To the republic. To  
attain. I will wait for. A conspiracy. I have thought.  
He has felt. Place. Now. Mildness. He demands.  
They have conceded. He may depart. I suffer. Wretched.  
I have pointed it out. I wish. You do not wish. Evening.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Relevata mihi respublica videtur. Quid sceleris excogitari  
potest. Ne patiantur Catilinam miserum tabescere. Iter  
demonstravi. Urbe profectus est. Si accelerare nolent. Si  
hanc sentinam ejecerit. Quod expectavit assecutus est. Ut  
factam esse apertè conjurationem. Vos omnes videretis. Si  
quis est, qui non putet. Unum concedam.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

He has departed by the Aurelian way. If they will desire  
to hasten, they will overtake him. The republic seems to  
me relieved and refreshed. What crime can be devised,  
which he may not have conceived. There is not place for  
mildness. One thing I may concede. Let them not suffer  
Catiline to pine away. I will point out the way. I have  
attained what I expected. That a conspiracy has been  
formed against the republic.

*Fero*—*I, &c., bear or carry.* It has both an active and  
passive form. Excepting in the forms given below, it is  
conjugated regularly, like a verb of the third conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Present Indicative. | Present Infinitive. | Perfect Indicative. | Supine.           |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Fero,</i>        | <i>Ferre,</i>       | <i>Tuli,</i>        | <i>Latum,</i>     |
| <i>I-bear.</i>      | <i>to-bear.</i>     | <i>I-bore.</i>      | <i>a-bearing.</i> |

*Active Voice.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"E." (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., bear.*

| SINGULAR.                              | Terminations. |
|----------------------------------------|---------------|
| (1) <i>Fero</i> [1], I bear.....       | <i>o.</i>     |
| (1) <i>Fers</i> [2], thou bearest..... | <i>s.</i>     |
| (1) <i>Fert</i> [3], he bears.....     | <i>t.</i>     |

PLURAL.

|                                            |              |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------|
| (1) <i>Ferimus</i> [pl. 1], we bear.....   | <i>imus.</i> |
| (1) <i>Fertis</i> [pl. 2], you bear.....   | <i>tis.</i>  |
| (1) <i>Ferunt</i> [pl. 3], they bear ..... | <i>unt.</i>  |

The irregularity is here in the second and third persons singular, and in the second person plural. The irregularity consists in the singular by omitting the *i* before *s* of the second person, and the *i* before *t* of the third person; in the plural, by omitting the *i* before *tis* of the second person. All the other tenses of the indicative active are formed regularly.

In the passive active present, the irregularity occurs in the second person singular, which has *ferris* or *ferre* in place of *fereris* or *ferere*, the *e* before *ris* and *re* being omitted; and in the third person singular, which has *fertur*, the *i* before *tur* being omitted. The second person plural, which has *ferimini*, is regular. All the other tenses and persons of the indicative passive are formed regularly from their principal parts.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

It is only the imperfect tense, subjunctive mood, that is irregular, and this consists in omitting *e* before *rem*, in all its



numbers and persons: as, *ferrem* in place of *fererem*. The same omission of *e* takes place in all the numbers and persons of the passive subjunctive imperfect tense, which has *ferrer* for *fererer*. All the other tenses and persons of the subjunctive, both active and passive, are formed regularly.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The imperative mood has, in the second person active, *fer* for *ferere*, and *ferito* for *ferito*, in the third person, *ferito* for *ferito*; in the plural, in the second person, *ferite* for *ferite*, *fertote* for *feritote*; the third person plural, *ferunto*, is regular. The imperative passive voice, in the singular, in the second person, has *ferre* for *ferere*, and *fertor* for *feritor*, and, in the third person, *fertor* for *feritor*; in the second person plural, *ferimini* is regular, as is also *feruntor*, in the third person.

#### INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has, in the present tense active, *ferre* for *ferere*, and, in the present tense passive, *ferri* for *feri*. All the other tenses, both active and passive, are regular, according to the principal parts they are derived from.

The participles, gerunds, and supine, are all formed regularly, according to the principal parts they are derived from.

The compounds of *fero*, which are of frequent occurrence, are conjugated like *fero*.

*Fio*—to be made or to become, has partly the active form, and partly the passive form; but, in all its forms, it has a passive meaning, being used as the passive of *facio*—*I make*. If the *i* of *fio* be considered as a part of its root, it will then belong to the third conjugation.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Present Indicative. | Present Infinitive. | Perfect Participle. |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Fio,                | Fieri,              | Factus,             |
| I-am-made.          | to-be-made.         | made.               |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*Er.*" p. (1) *Present Tense.*

| SINGULAR.                          | Terminations. |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| p. (1) Fio [1], I am made .....    | o.            |
| p. (1) Fis [2], thou art made..... | s.            |
| p. (1) Fit [3], he is made.....    | t.            |

## PLURAL.

|                                          |      |
|------------------------------------------|------|
| p. (1) Fimus [pl. 1], we are made.....   | mus. |
| p. (1) Fitis [pl. 2], you are made ..... | tis. |
| p. (1) Fiunt [pl. 3], they are made..... | unt. |

The irregularity here consists in the second and third persons singular, and in the first and second persons plural. The *i* of the terminations *is* and *it*, in the singular, being omitted, for the *i* here belongs to the root of the verb. So, also, the *i* of the terminations *imus*, *itis*, is omitted in the plural.

The imperfect and future tenses indicative are regular, as are, also, the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive.

The perfect, pluperfect, and perfect future tenses of the indicative, have the regular passive form, as derived from *factus*: as, *factus sum* or *fui*—*I have been made*. The perfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive have also the same regular passive form, derived from *factus*: as, *factis sim* or *fuero*—*I may have been made*.

The imperative mood has, in the second person singular, *fi* in place of *fie*, and *fito* in place of *fiito*; and, in the third person, *fito* in place of *fiito*; in the plural, in the second person, it has *fite* for *fiite*, and *fitote* for *fiitote*. *Fiunto*, in the third person plural, is regular.

The infinitive has *fieri* in place of *fiere*, in the present

tense; in the perfect it has, regularly, *factus esse* or *fuisse*, and in the future, regularly, *factum iri*.

There is no present participle. The perfect participle, *factus*, and the future, *faciendus*, are both regular.

The supine in *u* is regular, *factu*.

The compounds of *facio* that retain the *a* have *fi* for their passive; but those that change *a* into *i* form their passives regularly. Though the defectives, *confit*—*it is done*; *defit*—*it is wanting*; *infit*—*he begins*, occur.

*Edo*—*I eat*, *edĕre*—*to eat*, *edi*—*I have eaten*, *esum*—*an eating*, is a regular verb of the third conjugation. Its irregularity consists in taking, with the regular forms, some of the forms of *sum*—*I am*, in some of the moods, and in a few of the tenses: as in the indicative present.

"E." SINGULAR.

Terminations.

|                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| (1) Edo [1], I eat.....              | o.         |
| (1) Edis or es [2], thou eatest..... | is or es.  |
| (1) Edit or est [3], he eats.....    | it or est. |

PLURAL.

|                                           |                |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Edimus [pl. 1], we eat.....           | imus.          |
| (1) Editis or estis [pl. 2], you eat..... | itis or estis. |
| (1) Edunt [pl. 3], they eat.....          | unt.           |

"E." sb. (2) In the Subjunctive, imperfect tense.

SINGULAR.

|                                                    |                |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| sb. (2) Ederem or essem [1], I might eat.....      | erem or essem. |
| sb. (2) Ederes or esses [2], thou mightst eat..... | eres or esses. |
| sb. (2) Ederet or esset [3], he might eat.....     | eret or esset. |

PLURAL.

|                                                         |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| sb. (2) Ederemus or essemus [pl. 1], we might eat.....  | eremus or essemus. |
| sb. (2) Ederetis or essetis [pl. 2], you might eat..... | eretis or essetis. |
| sb. (2) Ederent or essent [pl. 3], they might eat.....  | erent or essent.   |

"E." Im. In the Imperative Mood.

SINGULAR.

|                                                 |                       |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| im. Ede or es, edito or esto [2], eat thou..... | e or es, ito or esto. |
| im. Edito or esto [3]. let him eat.....         | ito or esto.          |

PLURAL.

Terminations.

im. *Editare* or *este*, *editote* or *estote* [pl. 2], eat ye...ite or *este*, *itote* or *estote*.  
im. *Edunto* [pl. 3], let them eat..... unto.

in. (1) In the infinitive, in the present tense, *edere* or *esse*.

In the passive voice, *editur* or *estur*, in the third person present indicative, and *ederetur* or *essetur*, in the imperfect subjunctive passive, are used.

In all the other moods and tenses, the parts of *sum* are not used in place of the regular conjugation.

*Eo—I go*, is a verb of the fourth conjugation. It is irregular in all the moods and tenses formed from the first principal part, but regular in those moods and tenses formed from the second and third principal parts.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|                     |                     |                      |                  |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| Present Indicative. | Present Infinitive. | Perfect Indicative.  | Supine.          |
| <i>Eo</i> ,         | <i>Ire</i> ,        | <i>Ivi</i> ,         | <i>Itum</i> ,    |
| <i>I-go</i> .       | <i>to-go</i> .      | <i>I-have-gone</i> . | <i>a-going</i> . |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

"*Ir.*" (1) *Present Tense. I, &c., go.*

SINGULAR.

Terminations.

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| (1) <i>Eo</i> [1], I go.....        | o.  |
| (1) <i>Is</i> [2], thou goest ..... | is. |
| (1) <i>It</i> [3], he goes.....     | it. |

PLURAL.

|                                       |       |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| (1) <i>Imus</i> [pl. 1], we go.....   | imus. |
| (1) <i>Itis</i> [pl. 2], you go.....  | itis. |
| (1) <i>Eunt</i> [pl. 3], they go..... | unt.  |

Here all the numbers and persons are irregular. The second and third persons singular, and the first and second

persons plural, are irregular by omitting the root of the verb *e*, and retaining only the terminations of numbers and persons. The third person plural is irregular by omitting the *i* of the fourth conjugation; it having *eunt* in place of *eiunt*. The first person singular might also be considered as irregular, for it wants the characteristic *i* of the fourth conjugation.

The imperfect tense is also irregular in all its numbers and persons, for it consists only of the terminations of the fourth conjugation, and omits the root of the verb: as, *ibam*, &c., for *eibam*.

The present tense, subjunctive mood, is irregular by omitting the characteristic *i* of the fourth conjugation, it having *eam*, &c., in place of *eiam*.

The imperfect tense, subjunctive mood, is irregular by having only the terminations of the imperfect subjunctive, without the root of the verb: as, *irem*, &c., for *eirem*, &c.

The imperative is irregular by omitting the root of the verb, *e*, and only having the terminations of the imperative, fourth conjugation, in the second and third persons singular, and second person plural: as, *i*, &c., for *ei*, &c. The third person plural is irregular by the omission of the characteristic *i* of the fourth conjugation, having *eunto* in place of *eiunto*.

The infinitive present is irregular by only having the termination of the fourth conjugation, without the root: as, *ire* for *eire*.

The present participle is irregular by having only the terminations of the fourth conjugation in its nominative singular, without the root: as, *iens* for *eiens*. The genitive thereof is *euntis*, irregular.

The gerunds are irregular, they having *eundi*, &c., in place of *eiendi*, &c.

In the passive voice, there is the infinitive, *iri*. The third persons are sometimes used in the passive: as, *iur*.

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated like *eo*.

*Queo—I can*, and *nequeo—I cannot*, are conjugated like *eo*. They want the imperative mood and gerunds.

Four verbs, in the imperative, often reject the final *e*. They are *dic—say*, *duc—lead*, *fac—make* or *do*, *fer—carry*. So, also, do their compounds, except those compounds of *facio* which change *a* into *i*: as, *perfice—accomplish*. Here the *e* is retained.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective verbs are those which are only used in some moods, tenses, numbers, or persons. The following is a list of the principal verbs of this class:

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Odi; I hate.        | 9. Salve; hail.             |
| 2. Cœpi; I have begun. | 10. Apage; begone.          |
| 3. Memini; I remember. | 11. Cedo; tell or give way. |
| 4. Aio; I say.         | 12. Confît; it is done.     |
| 5. Inquam; I say.      | 13. Desit; it is wanting.   |
| 6. Fari; to speak.     | 14. Infît; he begins.       |
| 7. Quæso; I pray.      | 15. Ovat; he rejoices.      |
| 8. Ave; hail.          | 16. Novi; I know.           |

*Odi—I hate*, *memini—I remember*, and *novi—I know*, though in the perfect tense, have the sense of the present; in the pluperfect tense, they have the meaning of the imperfect; in the perfect future, they have the meaning of the simple future.

## Lesson 87.

<sup>a.1</sup> Divitiacus (cio-ñre) | <sup>ñr-faci-ctum.</sup>(1) facit <sup>(3)••</sup> m.pl.4 verba pro  
 Divitiacus | makes words [spoke] for  
<sup>le.pl.5</sup>his (nam post <sup>ñr.4</sup>discessum <sup>pl.2</sup>Belgarum, <sup>pl.6</sup>copiis  
 these (for after (the) departure 'of (the) 'Belgæ, (the) forces  
<sup>a.pl.2</sup>Æduorum (mitt)ñr-mi- | <sup>mi-ñr.p.(4).pl.6</sup>dimissis, [part.]••  
 'of (the) 'Ædui being-dismissed,  
<sup>(1)ñr- | ti-ñm.</sup>(5) reverterat <sup>(3)••</sup> ad <sup>m.4</sup>eum)  
 he-had-turned to him [Cæsar] (that)

|                                    |                    |                   |                      |                          |                      |               |           |            |        |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------|-----------|------------|--------|
| a.pl.4                             | “Bellovacos        | a-in.6            | omni                 | us-oria.6                | tempore              | (num-esse).a- | ui.in.(4) | fuisse     |        |
|                                    | (the) Bellovaci    |                   | at-all               |                          | times                |               |           | have-been  |        |
| in                                 | ei.6               | fide              |                      | atque                    | 6                    | amicitiâ      |           | 2          | Æduæ   |
| in                                 | (the)              | bonds-of-fidelity |                      | and                      |                      | in-friendship | 1         | with (the) | ‘Ædúan |
| as-atia.3                          | civitatis;         | (pell)ër-puli-    | pulsus.(4).          | a.pl.4                   | impulsos             | [part.] ●●    | ab        | a.pl.6     | suis   |
|                                    | state;             |                   |                      |                          | impelled             |               | by        |            | their  |
| ope-ipia.pl.6                      | principibus,       | qui               | (c)ër-xi-ctum.ab.(3) |                          | dicerent             | [pl.3] ●●     |           |            |        |
|                                    | chiefs,            | who               |                      |                          | said                 |               |           | (that)     |        |
| a.pl.4                             | Æduos,             | (ig)ër-agi-       | actum.p.(4).         | a.pl.4                   | redactos             | [part.] ●●    |           | in         |        |
|                                    | (the) Ædúi,        |                   |                      |                          | reduced              |               |           | to         |        |
| us-utia.4                          | servitutem (f.) ●● | h                 |                      | r-ris.6                  | Cæsare,              |               |           |            |        |
|                                    | slavery            | by                |                      |                          | Cæsar,               | (had)         |           |            |        |
| (fero-ferre)   a-tuli-latum.in.(1) | perferre           | is-is.pl.4        | omnes                | as-atia.pl.4             | indignitates         |               |           |            |        |
|                                    | to-endure          |                   | all                  |                          | indignities          |               |           |            |        |
| que.                               | pl.4               | contumelias;      | et                   |                          |                      |               |           |            |        |
| and                                |                    | contumelies,      | and                  | (that)                   | they [the Bellovaci] |               |           |            |        |
| (icio-icere).ër-                   | eci-ectum.in.(4)   | defecisse         | ab                   | a.pl.6                   | Æduis,               | et            |           |            |        |
|                                    |                    | had-fallen-off    | from                 | (the) Ædúi,              | and                  |               |           |            |        |
| (fero-ferre).a-                    | tuli-latum.id.(4)  | intulisse         | m.4                  | bellum                   | a.3                  | Romano        |           |            |        |
|                                    |                    | had-brought-on    | war                  | ‘against (the) ‘Roman    |                      |               |           |            |        |
| a.3                                | populo.            | ui.pl.1           | Qui                  | (num-esse).a-            | fui.ab.(5)           | fuisseint     | [pl.3] ●● |            |        |
|                                    | people.            | (Those)           | who                  |                          |                      | had-been      |           |            |        |
| ope-cipia.pl.1                     | principes          | oc.3              | hujus                | m.2                      | consilii,            | quòd          |           |            |        |
|                                    | (the) leaders      | (in)              | this                 |                          | advice,              | as            |           |            |        |
| (lig)ër-lexi-lectum.ab.(3)         | intelligerent      | [pl.3] ●●         |                      |                          | 4                    | quantam       |           |            |        |
|                                    | they-understood    |                   |                      |                          |                      | how-great     |           |            |        |
| as-atia.4                          | calamitatem        | (fero-ferre).a-   | tuli-latum.ab.(5)    |                          | intulissent          | [pl.3] ●●     |           |            |        |
|                                    | (a) calamity       |                   |                      |                          | they-had-brought-on  |               |           |            |        |
| as-atia.3                          | civitati           | (gio-gère).ër-    | gi-gitum.in.(5)      | profugisse               | in                   | ‘Britanniam.  |           |            |        |
|                                    | (the) state        |                   |                      | fled                     | into                 | Britain.      |           |            |        |
|                                    | Non solùm          | a.pl.4            | Bellovacos           | èr-lvi or ii-utum.in.(1) | petere,              |               |           |            |        |
| (That)                             | not only           | (the) Bellovaci   |                      |                          | entreated,           |               |           |            |        |
| sed                                | etiam              | a.pl.4            | Æduos                | pro                      | ic.pl.6              | his,          | ut        |            |        |
| but                                | (that) also        | (the) Ædúi        | for                  |                          | them,                | that          |           |            |        |
| (or-1).                            | èr-uus.d.ab.(1)    | utatur            | [3] ●●               | 6                        | suâ                  | 6             | clementiâ | ac         |        |
|                                    | he-would-use       |                   |                      | his                      | clemency             | and           |           |            |        |
| do-dinia.6                         | mansuetudine       | in                | is.pl.4              | eos.                     | od.4                 | Quod,         | si        |            |        |
|                                    | mildness           | towards           | them.                |                          | Which,               | if            |           |            |        |
| (facio-facere).ër-                 | feci-factum.(6)    | fecerit           | [3] ●●               | ar-avi-atum.(3).         | m.1                  | amplifica-    |           |            |        |
|                                    | he-do-it           |                   |                      |                          | would-be-            |               |           |            |        |

|                              |                     |                 |                            |                           |                  |
|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| turum [part.] ●●             | as-atis.4           | auctoritatem    | as-pl.3                    | Æduorum                   | apud             |
| enlarging                    |                     | (the) authority |                            | 'of (the) 'Ædui           | among            |
| is-is.pl.4                   | omnes               | pl.4 Belgas;    | m-pl.6                     | auxiliis                  | atque is-pl.pl.6 |
|                              | all                 | (the) Belgæ;    |                            | 'by (the) 'aid            | and resources    |
| ui.pl.3                      | quorum              |                 | (acc)ër-   ovi-ctum.ab.(4) | consueverint [pl.3] ●●    |                  |
|                              | of-whom             |                 |                            | they-have-been-accustomed |                  |
| ar-avi-atum.in.(1)           | sustentare,         |                 | si                         | id.pl.1                   | qua m-pl.1       |
|                              | to-sustain          | (themselves),   | if                         | any                       | bella wars       |
| (cid)ër-   cidi-casum.ab.(4) | inciderint."        |                 |                            |                           | [pl.3] ●●        |
|                              | may-have-happened." |                 |                            |                           |                  |

### Lesson 88.

Pro his Divitiacus (nam post discessum Belgarum, dimissis Æduorum copiis, ad eum reverterat) facit verba; "Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Æduæ fuisse; impulsos à suis principibus, qui dicerent Æduos à Cæsare in servitutem redactos, omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Æduis defecisse, et populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui hujus consilii principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Æduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur: quod si fecerit, Æduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consueverint."

### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 87 AND 88.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Pete. Mansuetudo. Utor. Facio. Amplificaturus. Ops. Incido. Sustentaverunt. Consuesco. Princeps. Intellexit. Civitas. Intulit. Profugio. Quantus. Discessus. Dimissus. Copiæ. Revertor. Fecit. Tempus. Fides. Impello. Dico. Servitus. Redigere. Pertulerunt. Deficio. Infero.



*English words to be translated into Latin.*

He has sustained himself. I am accustomed. Resources. Chiefs. I understand. Calamity. They have fled. Only. I entreat. They use. Mildness. We do or make. Ye have enlarged. Time. State. I have impelled. He may say. He will reduce. Slavery. Ye fall off. He has brought it on. Thou makest. Departure. Forces. I dismiss. He will return.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Qui principes sunt. Calamitatem civitati inferit. Id non intelligo. In Britanniam profugiant. Bellovacos petere, ut suâ clementiâ utatur. Quod si fecerit. Æduorum auctoritatem amplificaturum. Quorum opibus sustentare consueverint. Divitiacus post discessum Belgarum ad eum revertatur. Omni tempore in fide civitatis fuisse. In servitutem redactos omnes contumelias perferre.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

By the resources of whom they have been accustomed to sustain themselves. If any wars may have happened. They understood how great a calamity they had brought on the state. The leaders fled into Britain. The Ædui entreated for them. It would be enlarging the authority of the Ædui among all the Belgæ. Impelled by their chiefs. That the Ædui were reduced to slavery. The Bellovaci had brought on war against the Roman people. He spoke for them. Divitiacus had returned to Cæsar.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

When a participle is compounded with the verb *sum*, to form a tense, such compound tense is often termed a periphrastic one. The participles thus compounded are, the perfect or past passive, *amatus*: as, *amatus sum* — *I have been*

*loved*; the future active participle, *scripturus*: as, *scripturus sum*—*I am about to write*; and the future passive, *amandus*: as, *amandus sum*—*I must be loved*. The perfect or past passive participle is used, as has been stated in the conjugations above, to form the tenses of the passive voice derived from the second and third principal parts. When this past participle is used merely as a part of the compound tense, to indicate time, then either *sum* or *fui*, *eram* or *fueram*, *ero* or *fuero*, may be used; but, generally, *sum*, *eram*, and *ero*, are used, in this case, in the indicative mood, and *sim*, *essem*, in the subjunctive. But, when the perfect passive participle is used in its proper sense of adjective participle, and qualifies the noun, as, *epistola scripta fuit*—*the written letter was*, that is, it once existed, then, in this case, *fuit* alone would be used to denote the past; for *epistola scripta est* would denote the perfect tense passive—*the letter has been written*.

## FUTURE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The future active participle, combined with the tenses of *sum*, denotes intention, or being about or on the point of doing something. When the future periphrastic conjugation is to be particularly designated, *f.* is placed in the parentheses, before the numbers denoting tense: as, <sup>(f. 1)</sup> *amaturus sum*<sup>[1]</sup>—*I am about to love*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

(f. 1) *Present Tense.* *I, &c., am about to love.*

## SINGULAR.

(f. 1) *Amaturus sum* [1], *I am about to love.*

(f. 1) *Amaturus es* [2], *thou art about to love.*

(f. 1) *Amaturus est* [3], *he is about to love.*

## PLURAL.

(f. 1) *Amaturi sumus* [pl. 1], *we are about to love.*

(f. 1) *Amaturi estis* [pl. 2], *you are about to love.*

(f. 1) *Amaturi sunt* [pl. 3], *they are about to love.*

(f. 2) *Imperfect Tense.* *I, &c., was about to love.*

SINGULAR.

(f. 2) *Amaturus eram* [1], *I was about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

(f. 3) *Future Tense.* *I, &c., shall be about to love.*

SINGULAR.

(f. 3) *Amaturus ero* [1], *I shall be about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

(f. 4) *Perfect Tense.* *I, &c., have been about to love.*

SINGULAR.

(f. 4) *Amaturus fui* [1], *I have been about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

(f. 5) *Pluperfect Tense.* *I, &c., had been about to love.*

SINGULAR.

(f. 5) *Amaturus fueram* [1], *I had been about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

(f. 6) *Perfect Future.* *I, &c., shall have been about to love* [but it is very  
*seldom used*].

SINGULAR.

(f. 6) *Amaturus fuero* [1], *I shall have been about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

sb. (f. 1) *Present Tense.* *I, &c., may be about to love.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (f. 1) *Amaturus sim* [1], *I may be about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

sb. (f. 2) *Imperfect Tense.* *I, &c., would be about to love.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (f. 2) *Amaturus essem* [1], *I would be about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

sb. (f. 4) *Perfect Tense.* *I, &c., may have been about to love.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (f. 4) *Amaturus fuerim* [1], *I may have been about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

sb. (f. 5) *Pluperfect Tense.* *I, &c., would have been about to love.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (f. 5) *Amaturus fuissem* [1], *I would have been about to love.*  
*&c., &c.*

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

in. (1) *Present Tense.*

in. (f. 1) *Amaturus esse*, *to be about to love.*

in. (4) *Perfect Tense.*

in. (f. 4) *Amaturus fuisse*, *to have been about to love.*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION OF NECESSITY.

The future passive participle in *dus*, combined with the tenses of *sum*, denotes the necessity or propriety of the action to be done, or the necessity or propriety of doing the action.

When the periphrastic conjugation of necessity is to be particularly designated, *n* is placed in the parentheses before the numbers denoting tense: as, <sup>(n.1)</sup>*amandus*<sup>(1)</sup>, *I must be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

(n. 1) *Present Tense.* *I, &c., must be loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 1) *Amandus sum* [1], *I must be loved.*  
 (n. 1) *Amandus es* [2], *thou must be loved.*  
 (n. 1) *Amandus est* [3], *he must be loved.*

PLURAL.

(n. 1) *Amandi sumus* [pl. 1], *we must be loved.*  
 (n. 1) *Amandi estis* [pl. 2], *you must be loved.*  
 (n. 1) *Amandi sunt* [pl. 3], *they must be loved.*

(n. 2) *Imperfect Tense.* *I, &c., was to be loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 2) *Amandus eram* [1], *I was to be loved.*  
*&c., &c.*

(n. 3) *Future Tense. I, &c., must hereafter be loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 3) *Amandus ero* [1], I must hereafter be loved.  
&c., &c.

(n. 4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., must have been loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 4) *Amandus fui* [1], I must have been loved.  
&c., &c.

(n. 5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., must had been loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 5) *Amandus fueram* [1], I must had been loved.  
&c., &c.

(n. 6) *Perfect Future. I, &c., must hereafter have been loved.*

SINGULAR.

(n. 6) *Amandus fuero* [1], I must hereafter have been loved.  
&c., &c.

#### SB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

sb. (n. 1) *Present Tense. I, &c., may necessarily or properly be loved.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (n. 1) *Amandus sim* [1], I may necessarily or properly be loved.  
&c., &c.

sb. (n. 2) *Imperfect Tense. I, &c., might necessarily or properly be loved.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (n. 2) *Amandus essem* [1], I might necessarily or properly be loved.  
&c., &c.

sb. (n. 4) *Perfect Tense. I, &c., may necessarily have been loved.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (n. 4) *Amandus fuerim* [1], I may necessarily have been loved.  
&c., &c.

sb. (n. 5) *Pluperfect Tense. I, &c., might necessarily have been loved.*

SINGULAR.

sb. (n. 5) *Amandus fuisset* [1], I might necessarily have been loved.  
&c., &c.

IN. INFINITIVE MOOD.

in. (n. 1) *Present Tense.*

in. (n. 1) *Amandus esse, necessary to be loved.*

in. (n. 4) *Perfect Tense.*

in. (n. 4) *Amandus fuisse, necessary to have been loved.*

The above form of necessity may also have another form by putting the participle in the neuter, and the agent, which in English is in the nominative, in the dative: as, *mihi scribendum est*—to me it is necessary to write, that is, *I must or am obliged to write*; *mihi scribendum erat*—I was obliged to write; *mihi scribendum erit*—I shall be obliged to write; and, in like manner, through all the tenses, as above—the verb *sum* being always in the third person.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs, strictly speaking, are those which are only used in the third person singular: as, *deceat*—it becomes, *pluit*—it rains, &c.

Lesson 89.

|                   |                      |                |                             |                                           |                    |
|-------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Nunc,             | Id. 1                | quidquid       | (nunc-esse)   e-ai. (1)     | est [3] ●●                                | quocunque          |
| Now,              |                      | whatever       |                             | it-is (or)                                | whithersoever      |
| er. pl. 1         | vestræ               | ne-ntia. pl. 1 | mentes                      | atque                                     | pl. 1              |
|                   | your                 |                | minds                       | and                                       | sententiæ          |
|                   |                      |                |                             |                                           | opinions           |
| ar-avi-atum. (1)  | inclinant [pl. 2] ●● |                | ēr-i-tum. (n. 1)            | statuendum est [3] ●●                     |                    |
|                   | incline              |                |                             | it-must-be-determined                     |                    |
| 3 vobis [3] ●●    | ante                 | x-clia. 4      | noctem.                     | (4) ēr-di-sum. (1)                        | Videtis [pl. 2] ●● |
| by-you            | before               |                | night.                      |                                           | You-see            |
| m. 1              | quantum              | us-oria. 1     | facinus                     | (fero-ferre). e-tuli-   latum. p. sb. (4) | delatum sit [3] ●● |
|                   | how-great            | (a)            | crime                       |                                           | has-been-brought   |
| ad                | pl. 4                | vos; [3] ●●    |                             |                                           | si                 |
| to                | you                  |                | [has been reported to you]; |                                           | if                 |
| are-avi-atum. (1) | putatis [pl. 2] ●●   | a. pl. 4       | paucos                      | (nunc-esse)   e-ai. in. (1)               | esse               |
|                   | you-think            | (that)         | few                         |                                           | are                |

240. VERBS — IMPERSONAL AND PERIPHRASTIC.

|                                                                       |                                                   |                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| lo-pl.4 affines<br>partakers                                          | lo-pl.3 huic<br>(in) this                         | ar-avi-atum.(1) erratis [pl.3] ●●<br>you-err                             |
| vehementer.<br>greatly.                                               | oc.1 Hoc<br>This                                  | m.1 malum<br>evil                                                        |
| ar-avi-   a-um.p.(4) disseminatum est [3] ●●<br>has-been-disseminated | latius<br>more-widely                             | lo-ionis.6 opinione<br>(than) opinion                                    |
| ar-   avi-atum.(4) manavit [3] ●●<br>[than is supposed]               | non solum<br>it-has-flowed not only               | per<br>through                                                           |
| 4 Italiam,<br>Italy,                                                  | verum<br>but                                      | etiam<br>also                                                            |
|                                                                       |                                                   | (d)er-   di-um.(4) transcendit [3] ●●<br>has-passed-over                 |
| oc-tum.pl.4 Alpes,<br>(the) Alps,                                     | et<br>and                                         | er-ai-tum.(1).no-nia.1 serpens [part.] ●●<br>creeping                    |
|                                                                       |                                                   | obscur<br>obscurely                                                      |
| jam<br>'has already                                                   | ar-   avi-atum.(4) occupavit [3] ●●<br>'occupied  | pl.4 multas<br>many                                                      |
| id.1 Id<br>It                                                         | (sum-est)   o-ai.(1) potest [3] ●●<br>can         | m.6 nullo<br>by-no                                                       |
|                                                                       |                                                   | m.6 pacto<br>means                                                       |
|                                                                       | (im)er-emi-ocum.p.in.(1) opprimi<br>be-suppressed | ar-avi-atum.6 sustentando [ser.] ●●<br>by-enduring                       |
|                                                                       |                                                   | (it) and                                                                 |
| ar-avi-atum.6 prolatando<br>by-putting-off                            | (the time of action)                              | us.6 quæcunque<br>by-whatever                                            |
| lo-ionis.6 ratione<br>means                                           | er-ai-ium.(1) placet [3] ●●<br>it-pleases         | ar-avi-atum.(n.1) vindican-<br>it-must-be                                |
| dum est [3] ●●<br>punished                                            | 3 vobis [3] ●●<br>(by) you                        | celeriter.<br>speedily.                                                  |
|                                                                       |                                                   | (d)er-di-um.(1) video [1] ●●<br>I-perceive                               |
| adhuc<br>(that) as-yet                                                | (sum-esse)   o-ai.in.(1) esse<br>there-are (but)  | pl.4 duas<br>two                                                         |
|                                                                       |                                                   | pl.4 sententias;<br>opinions;                                            |
| 4 unam D.<br>(namely) (the) one of-D.                                 | a.2 Silani,<br>Silani,                            | ui.1 qui<br>who                                                          |
|                                                                       |                                                   | er-ai-um.(1) censet [3] ●●<br>is-of-opinion,                             |
| lo-pl.4 eos,<br>(that) those,                                         | ui.pl.1 qui<br>who                                | (conor-conari).ar-   a-um.d.(4) conati sunt [pl.3] ●●<br>have-endeavored |
| er-avi-atum.in.(1) delere<br>to-destroy                               | oc.pl.4 hæc<br>these (things)                     | ar-avi-atum.(n.1) multandos esse [pl.3] ●●<br>ought-to-be-punished       |
| re-itis.6 morte;<br>with-death;                                       | 4 alteram<br>(the) other                          | C.<br>of-C.                                                              |
|                                                                       |                                                   | r-ris.2 Caesaris,<br>Caesar,                                             |
| (v)er-vi-tum.(1) removet [3] ●●<br>removes                            | 4 poenam<br>(the) penalty                         | re-itis.2 mortis,<br>of-death, (but)                                     |
| actor-occi).er-exum.d.(1) amplectitur [3] ●●<br>embraces              | is-is.pl.4 omnes<br>all                           | as-atis.pl.4 acerbitates<br>(the) bitterness                             |
| m-pl.2 ceterorum<br>of-other                                          | m-pl.2 suppliciorum.<br>punishments.              | er.1 Uterque<br>Each                                                     |

|                   |                     |         |                    |            |             |     |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------|--------------------|------------|-------------|-----|
| ar-avi-atum.d.(1) | versatur [3] ●●     | in      | summâ              | as-atiis.6 | severitate, |     |
|                   | is-occupied         | (with)  | (the) greatest     |            | severity,   |     |
| et                | pro                 | suâ     | as-atiis.6         | dignitate, | et          | pro |
| both              | for                 | his-own |                    | dignity,   | and         | for |
| do-dinis.6        | magnitudine (f:) ●● | ei.pl.2 | rerum.             |            |             |     |
|                   | (the) magnitude     |         | 'of (the) 'affair. |            |             |     |

### Lesson 90.

Nunc, quidquid est, quocunque vestrae mentes inclinant atque sententiae, statuendum vobis ante noctem est. Quantum facinus ad vos delatum sit, videtis; huic si paucos putatis affines esse, vehementer erratis. Latius opinione disseminatum est hoc malum; manavit non solum per Italiam, verum etiam transcendit Alpes, et obscure serpens, multas jam provincias occupavit. Id opprimi sustentando ac prolatando, nullo pacto potest. Quaecunque ratione placet, celeriter vobis vindicandum est. Video duas adhuc esse sententias; unam D. Silani, qui censet, eos, qui hanc delere conati sunt, morte esse multandos; alteram C. Caesaris, qui mortis poenam removet, ceterorum suppliciorum omnes acerbitates amplectitur. Uterque et pro sua dignitate, et pro rerum magnitudine in summa severitate versatur.

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 89 AND 90.

##### *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Videtis. Sententia. Censeo. Delevit. Conor. Mors. Multare. Poena. Removeo. Supplicium. Acerbitas. Versor. Quocunque. Mens. Inclinavit. Nox. Facinus. Delatum est. Videbo. Putavere. Pauci. Erravi. Vehementer. Disseminatum erat. Manavit. Transcendo. Serpens. Prolato. Pactum. Placet. Vindicabo.

##### *English words to be translated into Latin.*

Bitterness. He is occupied. By putting off. It pleases. Speedily. I have perceived. As yet. Opinion. They are of opinion. He had endeavored. Penalty. Embraces. I



have thought. They have erred. Evil. More widely. It flows. They have passed over. Whatever. Obscurely. Already. To be suppressed. Whithersoever. Minds. Night. Crime. How great. They see.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Uterque in summâ severite versatur. Censet eos morte esse multandos. Mortis pœnam removet. Omnes amplectitur. Statuendum vobis ante noctem est. Quocunque mentes inclinant. Quantum facinus ad vos delatum erat. Latius disseminatum est hoc malum. Manavit per Italiam. Transcendit Alpes. Serpens multas provincias occupavit. Id opprimi nullo pacto potest. Quacunque placet.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

It embraces all the bitterness of other punishments. By whatever means it pleases you. It must be punished by you speedily. I perceive that there are two opinions. They have endeavored to destroy these things. They ought to be punished with death. You think that few are partakers in this affair. This evil has been disseminated more widely than is supposed. It has already occupied many provinces. Whithersoever your minds and opinions incline. It must be determined by you before night.

---

## PARTICLES.

THE parts of speech that are not inflected are termed *particles*. They are Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

### ADVERBS.

As adjectives qualify nouns, so do adverbs qualify adjectives and verbs: as, *felix homo*—*a happy man*; *feliciter vivit*—*he lives happily*.

Adverbs are either primitive or derivative. The number of derivative adverbs is very great, formed from the different parts of speech; but especially from adjectives, which last generally end in *e* or *ter*.

Adverbs derived from adjectives or participles admit of the degrees of comparison, the comparative being denoted by *ius*, the neuter of the comparative of adjectives: as, *facile*—*easily*; *facilius*—*more easily*. The superlative of adverbs is formed by changing the terminating syllable, *us*, of the superlative of adjectives, into *e*: as, *doctissimus*—*most learned*; *doctissime*—*most learnedly*.

Should it be required to denote the adverb in the comparative degree, it may be done by placing *ad*. before the (*c*.) in parentheses, after the adverb: as, *facilius* (*ad.c.*). So, in like manner, *ad*. may be placed before *s*., denoting the superlative: as, *doctissime* (*ad.s.*)

## PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions govern either the accusative or ablative case. The following prepositions govern the accusative:—

Ad; to, for, at.  
 Adversum, }  
 Adversus; } against.  
 Ante; before.  
 Apud; with, at, among.  
 Circa, }  
 Circum; } around, about.  
 Circiter; about, near.  
 Cis, }  
 Citra; } on this side.  
 Contra; against, opposite.  
 Erga; towards.  
 Extra; without, beyond.  
 Infra; beneath, under.  
 Inter; among, between.  
 Intra; within.

Juxta; near.  
 Ob; on account of, for.  
 Penes; in the power of.  
 Per; through, by, during.  
 Pone; behind.  
 Post; after, since.  
 Præter; beyond, except.  
 Prope; nigh, beside.  
 Propter; on account of, near.  
 Secundum; according to.  
 Supra; above.  
 Trans; beyond, over.  
 Versus; towards (put after the noun).  
 Ultra; beyond.

The following prepositions govern the ablative : —

|        |                                                                                                    |                                                  |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| A,     | } from, by (à is used before consonants, ab before vowels, and abs before t or q. Absque; without. | Palam; before, with the knowledge of.            |
| Ab,    |                                                                                                    | Præ; before, for, on account of.                 |
| Abs;   |                                                                                                    | Pro; before, for.                                |
| Coram; | in the presence of.                                                                                | Sine; without.                                   |
| Cum;   | with.                                                                                              | Tenus; as far as, up to (is put after the noun). |
| De;    | of, concerning, from.                                                                              |                                                  |
| E,     | } from, of, out of (è is used only before consonants; ex, before either vowels or consonants).     |                                                  |
| Ex;    |                                                                                                    |                                                  |

The following prepositions govern either the accusative or ablative : —

|                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Clam; without the knowledge of.    | Super; above, over, ac; upon, ab. |
| In; in, ab; into, ac.              | Subter; beneath, under.           |
| Sub; near, towards, ac; under, ab. |                                   |

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions connect words and sentences, and are usually classed under various heads.

The conjunctions, *que* — *and*, *ve* — *or*, and *ne* — *whether*, *or*, in the interrogative sense, are always added to the end of the word.

#### INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are mere exclamatory particles, used to express some emotion of the mind.

#### Lesson 91.

|                     |                                                   |                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Itaque              | <sup>4</sup> se (3) ●● ar-vi-   atum. (3). a. 4   | repræsentaturum, [part.] ●●       |
| Therefore (that) he |                                                   | was-about-immediately-performing, |
| quod                | (confero-terre) e-contuli-   collatum. ab. (f. 2) | collaturus esset (3) ●● in        |
| (that) which        |                                                   | he-was-about-to-defer unto        |
| on-orm. 4           | longiorem                                         | si. 4 diem; et                    |
| (a) more-distant    | day;                                              | and on-the-following              |
|                     |                                                   | night at                          |
|                     | 6 quartâ                                          | vigiliâ                           |
| (the) fourth        | watch (he)                                        | would-be-about-moving             |
|                     |                                                   | (the) camp,                       |
| ut                  | (num-esse)   e-ut. ab. (2)                        | posset (3) ●●                     |
| that                |                                                   | he-might-be-able                  |
|                     |                                                   | quamprimùm                        |
|                     |                                                   | as-soon-as-possible               |

|                                                         |                              |                     |                                                     |                                               |                                                 |                    |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------|
| (4g) <i>fr-exi-ectum.in.</i> (1)                        | intelligere,                 | utrum               | <i>or-oris.1</i>                                    | pudor                                         | atque                                           |                    |          |
|                                                         | to-understand,               | whether             |                                                     | shame                                         | and                                             |                    |          |
| m.1                                                     | officium,                    | an                  | <i>or-oris.1</i>                                    | timor                                         | <i>fr-ni.itum.ab.</i> (3) <i>valeret</i> (3) ●● | plūs               |          |
|                                                         | duty,                        | or                  |                                                     | fear                                          | would-prevail                                   | most               |          |
| apud                                                    | <i>in.pl.4</i>               | eos.                | Quòd                                                | si                                            | <i>o.inis.1</i>                                 | nemo               | præterea |
| with                                                    | them.                        | But                 | if                                                  | no-one                                        |                                                 | besides            |          |
| ( <i>quor-qui</i> )   <i>fr-cutuad.ab.</i> (1)          |                              | sequatur, (3) ●●    |                                                     | tamen                                         |                                                 | se                 |          |
|                                                         |                              | should-follow,      |                                                     | yet                                           | (that)                                          | he                 |          |
| ( <i>co-iri</i> ) - <i>ivi</i> -   <i>itum.</i> (3) s.4 |                              | iturum [part.] ●●   |                                                     | cum                                           |                                                 | 'decimâ            |          |
|                                                         |                              | would-be-going      |                                                     | [would depart]                                | with                                            | (the) tenth        |          |
| io-ionis.6                                              | legione (f.) ●●              | 'solâ,              | de                                                  | <i>us</i> quâ                                 |                                                 | non                |          |
|                                                         | legion                       | alone,              | of                                                  | which                                         | he-'did                                         | not                |          |
| <i>ar-avi-atum.ab.</i> (3)                              |                              | dubitaret; (3) ●●   |                                                     | que                                           |                                                 | <i>em.4</i> eam    |          |
|                                                         |                              | 'doubt;             |                                                     | and                                           | (that)                                          | it                 |          |
| ( <i>sum-asse</i> ) - <i>se-ni.</i> (3) s.4             |                              | futuram [part.] ●●  |                                                     | 'prætoriam                                    | <i>re-ritis.4</i>                               | cohortem           |          |
|                                                         |                              | was-about-being     |                                                     | (a) prætorian                                 |                                                 | cohort             |          |
| 'sibi.' (1) ●●                                          | Cæsar                        | præcipuè            | (3) <i>fr-</i>   <i>si-tum.</i> (5)                 | indulserat (3) ●●                             |                                                 |                    |          |
| to-himself."                                            | Cæsar                        | 'had especially     |                                                     | 'indulged                                     |                                                 |                    |          |
| ac.3                                                    | huic                         | io-inis.3           | legioni (f.) ●●                                     | et (id) <i>fr-idi</i> or <i>issu.sum.</i> (3) | confidebat (3) ●●                               |                    |          |
|                                                         | this                         | legion              | and                                                 |                                               | he-did-confide                                  |                    |          |
|                                                         | maximè                       | propter             | <i>us-utis.4</i>                                    | virtutem (f.) ●●                              |                                                 |                    |          |
| (in it)                                                 | chiefly                      | on-account of (its) |                                                     | valor.                                        |                                                 |                    |          |
| m.6                                                     | Hâc                          | io-ionis.6          | oratione (f.) ●●                                    | <i>fr-ni</i> -   <i>itum.</i> (4) s.6         | habita [part.] ●●                               |                    |          |
|                                                         | This                         | speech              |                                                     | being-had [being made]                        |                                                 |                    |          |
| <i>us-utis.pl.1</i>                                     | mentes                       | <i>in-is-pl.2</i>   | omnium                                              | (1) <i>fr-ti-</i>   <i>sum.p.</i> (4)         | conversæ sunt [pl.3] ●●                         |                    |          |
|                                                         | (the) mind                   | of-all              |                                                     | were-changed                                  |                                                 |                    |          |
| in                                                      | '4 mirum                     | '4 modum,           | que                                                 | 'summa.                                       | <i>us-utis.1</i>                                | alacritas          |          |
| in (a)                                                  | wonderful                    | manner,             | and                                                 | (the) greatest                                |                                                 | alacrity           |          |
| et                                                      | <i>us-utis.1</i>             | cupiditas           | m.2                                                 | belli                                         | (7) <i>fr-ni-atum.p.</i> (3) m.3                | gerendi [part.] ●● |          |
| and                                                     | eagerness                    | (for a) war         |                                                     | (that it was) necessary-to-wage               |                                                 |                    |          |
| ( <i>maact-r-nati</i> ) <i>fr-natus-sum.d.</i> (4)      |                              | innata est; (3) ●●  |                                                     | que                                           |                                                 | 'decima            |          |
|                                                         |                              | sprung-up           |                                                     | (in them);                                    |                                                 | and (the) tenth    |          |
| io-ionis.1                                              | legio (f.) ●●                | <i>ceps-cipis.1</i> | princeps.                                           | <i>ago-agere</i> -   <i>egi-actum</i> (4)     | egit (3) ●●                                     |                    |          |
|                                                         | legion                       | first               |                                                     | acted                                         |                                                 |                    |          |
| pl.4                                                    | gratias                      | <i>in.3</i>         | ei                                                  | per                                           | <i>us-pl.4</i>                                  | tribunos           |          |
|                                                         | thanks                       | [returned thanks]   | to-him                                              | through                                       | (the) tribunes                                  |                    |          |
| <i>us-utis.pl.2</i>                                     | militum,                     | quòd                | <i>facio-facere</i> -   <i>fecit-factum.ab.</i> (5) | fecisset (3) ●●                               |                                                 |                    |          |
| 'of (the) soldiers,                                     | because                      |                     |                                                     | he-had-made                                   |                                                 | [had               |          |
| m.4                                                     | optimum ( <i>bonus, s.</i> ) | m.4                 | judicium                                            | de                                            | 'se, (3) ●●                                     |                    |          |
| formed]                                                 | (the) best                   |                     | opinion                                             | of                                            | it,                                             |                    |          |

|                                                             |                              |                                |               |                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|
| que                                                         | ar-   avi-atum. <sup>4</sup> | confirmavit, <sup>[3]</sup> ●● |               | <sup>4</sup> se- <sup>(3)</sup> ●● |
| and                                                         |                              | assured                        | (him), (that) | it                                 |
| (num-ess)   e-ai-ia. <sup>(1)</sup>                         | esse                         | <sup>4</sup> paratissimam      | ad            | m. <sup>4</sup> bellum             |
|                                                             | was                          | most-ready                     | for           | (the) war                          |
| (7) e-ai-atum, p. (3). m. <sup>4</sup> gerendum. [part.] ●● |                              |                                |               |                                    |
| that-ought-to-be-waged.                                     |                              |                                |               |                                    |

## Lesson 92.

Itaque se, quod in longiorem diem collaturus esset, repræsentaturum, et proximâ nocte de quartâ vigiliâ castra moturum, ut quamprimùm intelligere posset, utrùm apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor, plus valeret. Quòd si præterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum solâ decimâ legione iturum, de quâ non dubitaret, sibi que eam prætoriam cohortem futuram." Huic legioni Cæsar et indulserat præcipuè, et propter virtutem, confidebat maximè. Hâc oratione habitâ, mirum in modum conversæ sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est: princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quòd de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 91 AND 92.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Mirum. Conversus est. Alacritas. Gero. Princeps. Gratia. Optimus. Faciunt. Paratus. Itaque. Longior. Confero. Proximus. Nox. Vigilia. Moveo. Intellexit. Pudor. Timor. Præterea. Sequor. Iturus. Dubitabam. Cohors. Indulserat. Propter. Præcipuè.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Minds. Manner. The highest or greatest. Eagerness. Thanks. He has made. Judgment or opinion. Most ready. No one. Besides. I follow. Alone. You doubt.

He had indulged. He did trust. Especially. The nearest. He moves. I had understood. Shame. Whether. Duty. Fear. More. It prevailed.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quod si nemo sequatur. Tamen se iturum. De quâ non dubito. Huic legioni Cæsar confidebat maximè. Hâc oratione habitâ. Conversæ sunt omnium mentes. Summa alacritas innata est. Decima legio ei gratias egit. Se esse paratissimum. Quod in longiorem diem collaturus esset. Se proximâ nocte castra moturum. Ut intelligere posset. Utrûm pudor an timor plus valeret.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

The minds were changed in a wonderful manner. The greatest eagerness sprung up in them. He returned thanks to him. He had formed the best opinion of it. Whether duty or fear would prevail most with them. That he would depart with the tenth legion alone. Chiefly on account of its valor. Having made this speech. That which he was about to defer unto a more distant day. That he might be able as soon as possible to understand.

---

## SYNTAX.

In this introductory course, it will only be necessary to give the essential and leading rules of Syntax.

Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles agree with the noun which they qualify, in number, gender, and case: as, *bonus vir*—*a good man*. When the adjective belongs to two or more nouns it is put in the plural. When the two or more nouns denote persons, and are in different genders,

the adjectives are put in the masculine rather than in the feminine gender. When such two or more nouns in different genders denote things without life, the adjective is generally put in the neuter gender. When one noun denotes an animate, and the other an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, or it sometimes takes the gender of the animate noun. An adjective often agrees in number and gender with the noun placed nearest to it, and may be considered as understood with the rest.

Relatives agree with the nouns to which they relate in gender and number only.

The verb agrees with its nominative in number and person : as, *nos legimus*—*we read*. Two or more nominatives singular have generally a plural verb, though not always. When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last nominative. A nominative singular joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum*—*with*, has sometimes a plural verb. When the nominatives are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person in preference to the second, and with the second person in preference to the third.

A noun, following a neuter or passive verb, is put in the same case as the nominative of the verb, when such noun denotes the same person or thing as the nominative : as, *ego incedo regina*—*I walk a queen*.

### Lesson 93.

| Nunc                 | a.pl.5 conscripti               | cr-rin.pl.5 patres, | ut                                   |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Now                  | O conscript                     | fathers,            | that                                 |
| ar-avi-atum.d.ab.(1) | detester [1] ●●                 | ac                  | ar-avi-atum.d.ab.(1) deprecet [1] ●● |
|                      | I-may-turn-from                 | and                 | may-deprecate                        |
| à                    | 'me (1) ●●                      | un.4 quandam, propè | 'justam 'quærimoniam                 |
| from me              | (a) certain, almost             | just                | complaint                            |
| 2 patriæ;            | (ipio-ipère)   8r-apl-aptum.im. | percipite [pl.2] ●● | diligenter,                          |
| 'of (my) 'country;   |                                 | attend              | diligently,                          |
| 8r-ivi-atum.(1)      | quæso [1] ●●                    |                     | od.pl.4 quæ                          |
| I-pray               | (you to the things)             |                     | which                                |

(c) ēr-xi-ctum.ab.(1) dicam, (1) ●● et | ar-avi-atum.lm. mandate (pl.3) ●●  
I-may-say, and commit

id.pl.4 ea penitus cr.pl.3 vestris a.pl.3 animis que-  
them inwardly to-your minds and

ne-utia.pl.3 mentibus. Etenim si patria, quae est  
understandings. For if (my) country, which is

multo or-oria.1 carior (c.) ●● mihi (1) ●● mea vita, si  
much dearer to-me (than) my life, if

'cuncta Italia, si in-la.1 omnis et.1 and 1 respublica  
all Italy, if all (the) republic

| (quor-quai), ēr-ctus-sum.d.ab.(1) loquatur (3) ●● cum me: (1) ●● M. a.5 Tulli,  
speaks with me: M. Tullius,

id.4 quid | ago-agere-egi-actum.(1) agis? (3) ●● Ne tu: (3) ●●  
what are-you-doing? Whether will you

(patior-pati) | ēr-passus-sum.d.(5) patieris (3) ●● in.4 eum  
suffer him

(eo-ire) | ir-ivi-utum.ln.(1) exire, ui.4 ir- | i-utum.(4) comperisti (2) ●●  
to-depart, whom you-have-discovered

(sum-esse) | e-ui.ln.(1) esse in-la.4 hostem; ui.4 quem | (d) ēr-di-sum.(3) vides (3) ●●  
to-be (an) enemy; whom you-see

(sum-esse), e-ui.(3).4 futurum [part.] ●● x-cia.4 ducem m.2 belli:  
(is) about-being (the) leader 'of (the) war:

ui.4 quem (do-ire) | ir-i-sum.(1) sentis (2) ●● | ar-avi-atum.p.in.(1) expectari  
whom you-perceive to-be-expected

in m.pl.6 castris in-la.pl.2 hostium or-oria.4 imperatorem,  
in (the) camp 'of (the) 'enemy (as) commander, (him)

or-oria.4 auctorem in-oria.2 sceleris ceps-cipia.4 principem  
(the) author 'of (the) 'wickedness (the) chief

in-icinis.2 conjurationis, (f.) ●● or-oria.4 evocatorem  
'of (the) 'conspiracy, (the) summoner (to war)

a.pl.2 servorum et a.pl.2 perditorum in-la.pl.2 civium, ut  
of-slaves and of-abandoned citizens, (so) that

| (d) ar-di-sum.p.ab.(1) videatur (3) ●● non (H) ēr-lai- | insum.p.in.(4) emissus esse  
he-may-seem not to-have-been-sent-out

ex in-la.6 urbe abs te, (3) ●● sed (H) ēr-lai- | insum.(4).a.1 immissus [part.] ●●  
from (the) city by you, but sent-in

in in-la.4 urbem? Nonne | ar-avi-atum.(3) imperabis (3) ●●  
into (the) city? Will-'you not 'command

in.4 hunc | (c) ēr-xi-ctum.ln.(1) duci in m.pl.4 vincula,  
him | to-be-led into bonds [to be imprisoned],



|                              |                            |                                                 |                      |                          |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
|                              | non                        | (pio-pere)   ar-pul- <sup>1</sup> ptum.p.in.(1) | rapi                 | ad                       |
| (will you)                   | not                        | (command him)                                   | to-be-hurried        | to                       |
| m-rtia. <sup>4</sup>         | mortem,                    | non                                             | ar-avi-atum.p.in.(1) | mactari                  |
|                              | death,                     | (will you)                                      | not                  | (command him)            |
|                              |                            |                                                 |                      | to-be-slain              |
| m.s                          | summo                      | m.s                                             | supplicio?           | M. <sup>1</sup> Quid     |
| 'with (the)                  | 'greatest                  |                                                 | punishment?          | What                     |
|                              |                            |                                                 |                      | at-length                |
| in-vi- <sup>1</sup> itum.(1) | impedit <sup>(3)</sup> ● ● | 'te? <sup>(2)</sup> ● ●                         | Ne.                  | s-ria. <sup>1</sup> mos. |
|                              | hinders                    | you?                                            | Whether (is it)      | (the) customs            |
| or-ori.pl.s                  | majorum?                   |                                                 |                      |                          |
|                              | 'of (our)                  | 'ancestors?                                     |                      |                          |

## Lesson 94.

Nunc, ut à me, patres conscripti, quandam propè justam patriæ quærimoniam detester ac deprecet; percipite quæso, diligenter, quæ dicam, et ea penitus animis vestris mentibusque mandate. Etenim, si mecum patria, quæ mihi vitâ meâ multo est carior, si cuncta Italia, si omnis respublica loquatur: M. Tulli quid agis? Tune eum quem esse hostem comperisti; quem ducem belli futurum vides; quem expectari imperatorem in castris hostium sentis, auctorem sceleris, principem conjurationis, evocatorem servorum et civium perditorum, exire patieris, ut abs te non emissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videatur? Nonne hunc in vincula duci, non ad mortem rapi, non summo supplicio mactari imperabis? Quid tandem impedit te? mosne majorum.

## EXERCISES ON LESSONS 93 AND 94.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Impedio. Hostis. Vidisti. Dux. Sentio. Exspectabam. Scelus. Princeps. Evocator. Perditus. Civis. Video. Emitto. Urbs. Imperavit. Vinculum. Quæsivi. Dixit. Mandabo. Animus. Penitus. Mens. Patria. Vita. Loquor. Egit. Detester. Deprecor. Justus. Quærimonia. Percipite.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Ancestors. At length. To be slain. They see. About being. War. They perceived. I expect. Author. Chief. Wickedness. Slave. I may have seen. To be sent in. City. I did command. Leader, or general. They might say. For. Country. Dear. Life. To speak. To do. He suffers. He has departed. I discover. A certain. Almost. I attend.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Quem ducem belli vides. Expectant imperatorem. Auctorem sceleris exire patieris. Abs te emissus est ex urbe. Immissus esse in urbem videatur. Nonne hunc in vincula duci imperabis. Quid impedit te. Percipite diligenter, quæ dicam. Et ea animis vestris mandate. Patria, quæ mihi vitâ est carior. Quid agis.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

What at length hinders you. Whether is it the custom of our ancestors. Whom you see is about being the leader of the war. They expect him in the camp. He is the commander of the enemy, and the author of the wickedness. He is the chief of the conspiracy, and the summoner of abandoned citizens. He was sent out of the city by you. Will you not command him to be imprisoned. Attend diligently to the things which I may say. Commit them to your minds. My country is dearer to me than life. Will you suffer him to depart.

One noun governs another noun, signifying a different thing, in the genitive: as, *pater patriæ* — the father of his country.

Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns and adverbs, that denote a part or portion, have the word denoting the whole

in the genitive: as, *doctissimus Romanorum*—the most learned (man) of the Romans.

An adjective qualifying a noun, either expressed or understood, referring to or limiting another noun, such limited noun is put in the genitive, and in English the relation is expressed by *of*, or *on account of*: as, *homines expertes veritatis*—men destitute of truth. Here *homines* is the noun, qualified by *expertes*, the adjective, and which agrees with it; *veritatis* is the noun limited, or related to, and is in the genitive.

Verbs of valuing govern the genitive of those words that denote the degree of valuing: as, *magni æstimabat pecuniam*—he valued money much.

When the business, office, lot, or property is understood with a word used with *sum*, such word is put in the genitive: as, *hoc est præceptoris*—this is (the business) of the teacher.

*Misereor*—I pity, *miseresco*—I compassionate, with the impersonals, *miseret*—it pities me, *pœnitet*—it repents me, *pudet*—it shames me, *tædet*—it is annoying, tedious or disgusting to me, *piget*—it disgusts or repents me, have the noun, on which the feeling expressed by the verb is exercised, in the genitive: as, *miserescite regis*—pity the king.

*Recordor*—I remember or recall to mind, *memini*—I remember, *reminiscor*—I recollect, and *obliviscor*—I forget, have the word denoting the person or thing remembered or forgotten, either in the genitive or accusative: as, *memini vivorum*—I am mindful of the living; *Cinnam memini*—I remember Cinna.

Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning and acquitting, have the noun denoting the crime in the genitive: as, *arguit me furti*—he accuses me of theft.

Verbs of admonishing have the word denoting that about which the admonition is given in the genitive: as, *militēs temporis monet*—he admonishes the soldiers of the occasion.

*Refert*—it concerns, and *interest*—it concerns or interests,

have the word denoting the person or thing that it concerns or interests in the genitive: as, *interest omnium rectè facere* — *it concerns all to do right*.

The name of a town in which any person or thing exists, or in which any thing is done, is put in the genitive when such name is of the first or second declension and singular number: as, *habitat Mileti* — *he lives at Miletus*. Sometimes, also, names of islands and countries have the genitive, like towns. The genitives *domi* — *at home*, *militiæ* and *belli*, in the sense of abroad, and *humi* — *on the earth or ground*, are used on the same principle as the names of towns.

Adverbs of abundance and want are construed with the genitive: as, *se gloriæ abundè adeptum* — *that he had attained enough of glory*.

A noun denoting the object, purpose or end to which the quality is directed, is put in the dative: as, *jucundus amicis* — *agreeable to friends*.

Adjectives signifying pleasant, friendly, advantageous, like, fit, inclined, ready, equal, easy, clear, as likewise those adjectives of an opposite signification, with those denoting near; likewise many compounded with *con*, together with verbal adjectives in *bilis*, have a dative: as, *patri similis* — *like his father*.

Nouns have sometimes other nouns in the dative, when such other nouns denote end or object: as, *caput Italiæ omni* — *the head to all Italy*.

Words denoting the end or object for which any thing is, or for which it is done, are put in the dative: as, *tibi seris, tibi metis* — *you sow for yourself, you reap for yourself*.

Many verbs denoting to obey, serve, assist, command, resist, threaten, and to be angry, have the dative: as, *mihi minabatur* — *he did threaten me*.

Many verbs signifying to trust, please, favor, with those of a contrary signification, have the dative: as, *mihi placebat* — *he pleased me*.

Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *sub*, and *super*, have the dative: as, *antecellere omnibus* — *to excel all*.

Verbs compounded with *satis*, *benè*, and *malè*, have the dative: as, *legibus satisfecit* — *he satisfied the laws*.

The future passive participle, in *dus*, has the dative of the agent: as, *adhibenda est nobis diligentia* — *we must use diligence*.

*Sum* — *I am*, in the sense of “to have or possess,” has a dative: as, *sunt nobis mitia poma* — *we have mellow apples*. Here *nobis*, the possessor, is in the dative, *poma* being the nominative or subject of the verb.

### Lesson 95.

|                                           |                                                |                                        |                                 |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| e-pl.1                                    | Omnia                                          | (ago-agere)ér-egi-actum.p.(n.2)        | agenda erant [pl.3] ●●          |
|                                           | All (things)                                   |                                        | were-to-be-done                 |
| ar-aria.3                                 | Caesari                                        | m.6 uno                                | us-oria.6 tempore; m.1 vexillum |
|                                           | (by) Cæsar                                     | at-one                                 | time; (the) standard            |
| (n)ér-oui-aitum.p.(3).m.1                 | proponendum, [part.] ●●                        |                                        | od.1 quod                       |
|                                           | to-be-displayed,                               |                                        | which                           |
| (sum-esse)   e-si.(3)                     | erat [3] ●●                                    | e-is.1 insigne,                        | quum   ér-ul.ab.(2) oporteret   |
|                                           | was                                            | (the) sign,                            | when it-behoved                 |
| (curr)ér-cucurri or curri-cursum.p.in.(1) | concurri                                       | ad m-pl.4 arma; m.1 signum             |                                 |
|                                           | to-assemble-together to                        | arms; (the) signal                     |                                 |
| ar-dedi-atum.p.(3).m.1                    | dandum [part.] ●●                              | 6 tubâ; es-itia.pl.1 milites           |                                 |
|                                           | to-be-given                                    | 1 with (the) 1 trumpet; (the) soldiers |                                 |
| ar-avi-atum.p.(3).a-pl.1                  | revocandi [part.] ●●                           | ab us-oria.6 opere: ul-pl.1 qui        |                                 |
|                                           | to-be-recalled                                 | from 1 work: (those) who               |                                 |
| (ad)ér-   emi-essum.(6)                   | processerant [pl.3] ●●                         | paullò longiùs, (ad.c.) ●●             |                                 |
|                                           | had-proceeded                                  | a-little farther,                      |                                 |
| 6 causâ                                   | er-oria.2 aggeris                              | ér-ivi or li-ium.p.(3).a.2             | pe-                             |
| by-reason-of                              | materials-for-a-mound-or-rampart               |                                        | to-                             |
| tendi [part.] ●●                          | ér-ivi-ium.p.(3).a-pl.1 accersendi; [part.] ●● | ei-pl.1 acies                          |                                 |
| be-sought                                 | (were) to-be-recalled;                         | (the) line-of-battle                   |                                 |
| ér-xi-ctum.p.(3).1                        | instruenda; [part.] ●●                         | es-itia.pl.1 milites                   |                                 |
|                                           | to-be-drawn-up;                                | (the) soldiers                         |                                 |
| ar-avi-atum.d.(3).a-pl.1                  | cohortandi; [part.] ●●                         | m.1 signum                             |                                 |
|                                           | to-be-exhorted;                                | (the) signal                           |                                 |

|                                                   |                                        |                                          |                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| [ar-decl-atum.p.(3).m.1.] dandum. [part.] ●●      |                                        | 4 Magnam re-via.4 partem                 |                                  |
| to-be-given.                                      |                                        | (a) Great part                           |                                  |
| nam.pl.3 quarum                                   | ei.pl.3 rerum                          | as-atis.1 brevitatis                     | us-oris.3 temporis,              |
| of-which                                          | things                                 | (the) shortness                          | 'of (the) 'time,                 |
| et                                                | as.1 successus                         | et                                       | as.1 incursus                    |
| and                                               | (the) approach                         | and                                      | charge                           |
| [ir-ivi-ium.(2)] impediēbat. [3] ●●               |                                        | pl.1 Duos                                | ei.pl.1 res                      |
| did-hinder.                                       |                                        | Two                                      | things                           |
| (sum-esse) [e-ai.(2)] erant [pl.3] ●●             | m.3 subsidio                           | ac pl.3 his                              | as-atis.pl.3 diffi-              |
| were                                              | (an) aid (in)                          | these                                    | diffi-                           |
| cultatibus,                                       | 'scientia                              | atque                                    | as.1 usus                        |
| culties,                                          | (the) knowledge                        | and                                      | experience                       |
| quod                                              |                                        | as-itis.pl.2 militum,                    |                                  |
| because                                           | being-experienced                      | superiori-                               |                                  |
| bus (c.) ●●                                       | m.pl.6 proeliis,                       | (sum-esse) [e-ai.(2)] poterant [pl.3] ●● |                                  |
| former                                            | battles,                               | they-were-able                           |                                  |
| as.pl.1 ipsi                                      | [(ib)er-ipli-iptum.in.(1)] præscribere | sibi (3) ●●                              | id.1 quid                        |
| themselves                                        | to-prescribe                           | to-themselves                            | what                             |
| [er-ul-ab.(1)] oporteret [3] ●●                   |                                        | fero- [feri-factus-sum.in.(1)] fieri     | non minùs                        |
| it-might-be-necessary                             |                                        | to-be-done,                              | not less                         |
| commodè,                                          | quàm                                   | [er-ul-tum.p.in.] doceri                 | ab                               |
| properly,                                         | than                                   | to-be-taught                             | by                               |
| quod                                              |                                        | as-ar.a.1 Cæsar                          | as- [ul-ium.(5)] vetuerat [3] ●● |
| because                                           | Cæsar                                  | had-forbid                               | singulos                         |
|                                                   |                                        |                                          | each                             |
| as.pl.4 legatos                                   | [(cod)er-emi-erum.in.(1)] discedere    | ab                                       | us-oris.6 opere que-             |
| lieutenant                                        | to-depart                              | from                                     | (the) work and                   |
| as.pl.6 singulis                                  | io-ionis.pl.6 legionibus, (f.) ●●      | nisi                                     | m.pl.6 castris                   |
| from-each                                         | legion,                                | unless                                   | (the) camp                       |
| [ir-ivi-] [itum.p.(4).m.pl.6] munitis. [part.] ●● |                                        |                                          |                                  |
| having-been-fortified.                            |                                        |                                          |                                  |

## Lesson 96.

Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda; vexillum proponendum; quod erat insigne, quum ad arma concurrere oportet; signum tubæ dandum: ab opere revocandi milites: qui paulò longius, aggeris petendi causâ processerant, accersendi; acies instruenda; milites cohortandi; signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis, brevitatis,

et successus et incursus hostium impediēbat. Iis difficultatibus dū res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quōd superioribus prœliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non min⁹ commodē ipsi sibi prœscribere, quā ab aliis doceri, poterant; et quōd ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Cæsar discedere, nisi munitis castris vetuerat.

EXERCISES ON LESSONS 95 AND 96.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Tempus. Brevitas. Incursus. Impedivit. Subsidium. Exercitatus. Oportet. Præscribo. Doceo. Opus. Discedo. Munitus. Vetat. Egit. Vexillum. Proposuit. Insigne. Concurro. Tuba. Dederunt. Revocabo. Agger. Procedo. Instruo. Cohortavistis.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

I forbid. He has departed. Work. Shortness. The approach. They have hindered. Aid. Experience. Battle. He had prescribed. It is done. He might have been taught. They run or assemble together. They give. You might be recalled. We proceed. Farther. They exhorted. I did give. He has done or performed. The standard.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Iis erant subsidio. Milites superioribus prœliis exercitati. Ipsi sibi prœscribere poterant. Ab opere Cæsar discedere vetuerat. Cæsari omnia erant agenda. Vexillum erat insigne. Ad arma concurrunt. Signum tubæ dat. Milites ab opere revocavit. Qui paullō longi⁹ processerant. Milites cohortavit.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Cæsar had forbid the lieutenants to depart. The camp having been fortified. The approach of the enemy did hinder. They were an aid in these difficulties. The soldiers

being experienced in former battles. They were able to prescribe to themselves. It might be necessary to be done. They are taught by others. They assemble together. He has recalled the soldiers from the work. The line of battle has been drawn up. He exhorted the soldiers. He gives the signal. All things were to be done at one time.

An active verb has its object in the accusative: as, *legatos ad eum mittunt*—*they send ambassadors to him*. An active verb with the accusative, often has either the genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some other additional relation.

The impersonal verbs *piget*—*it vexes me*, or *I am vexed*, *pudet*—*it shames*, or *I am ashamed*, *pœnitet*—*it repents me*, or *I repent*, *tædet*—*it disgusts me*, or *I am disgusted*, and *miseret*—*it pities me*, or *I pity*, have the person exercising such feeling in the accusative; they having, as before remarked, the object on which such feeling is exercised in the genitive: as, *eorum nos miseret*—*we pity them*. Here *nos*, denoting the persons exercising the feeling, is in the accusative, and *eorum*, the object of such feeling, is in the genitive.

*Juvat*—*it pleases*, *delectat*—*it delights*, *fallit*—*it deceives*, *fugit*—*it escapes*, *præterit*—*it passes by*, and *decet*—*it becomes*, with the compounds of *decet*, have the accusative: as, *valde me juvat*—*it pleases me greatly*.

Verbs of naming, calling, choosing, rendering, reckoning, esteeming, constituting, have two accusatives when both denote the same person or thing: as, *me consulem fecistis*—*you have made or constituted me consul*.

Verbs of asking, teaching, demanding, also *celo*—*I conceal*, have two accusatives, the one of the person, the other of the thing: as, *rogo te nummos*—*I ask you for money*.

Some neuter verbs have a noun of like signification with themselves in the accusative: as, *pugnare prœlia*—*to fight battles*; *vitam vivere*—*to live a life*.



Many prepositions have the accusative; for which, see prepositions.

Words denoting the duration of time, or extent of space, are generally put in the accusative: as, *tres annos mecum habitavit*—*he dwelt three years with me*.

The name of a town is put in the accusative, without a preposition, after verbs denoting motion or transfer to such town: as, *Romam proficiscitur*—*he departs for Rome*.

*Domus*—*house*, in both numbers, *rus*—*the country*, in the singular, have the accusative in the same manner as names of towns: as, *domum meam venit*—*he came to my house*.

The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative, as has been already noticed in the explanation of moods and tenses, prefixed to the conjugations.

Many prepositions have the ablative; for which, see prepositions.

Many verbs, compounded with the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, and *super*, have an ablative: as, *absesse urbe*—*to be absent from the city*.

*Opus* and *usus*, when they signify need, have generally the ablative: as, *dux nobis opus est*—*we need a leader*.

*Dignus*—*worthy*, *indignus*—*unworthy*, *contentus*—*content*, *præditus*—*endowed*, and *fretus*—*confiding* or *trusting to* or *in*, have the ablative: as, *dignus laude*—*worthy of praise*.

*Utor*—*I use*, *frutor*—*I enjoy*, *fungor*—*I discharge* or *perform*, *potior*—*I have obtained possession of* or *enjoy*, and *vescor*—*I am nourished* or *live on*, have the ablative: as, *fungitur officio*—*he performs his duty*.

Nouns denoting the cause, manner, means, or instrument, in connection with or modified by adjectives or verbs, have the ablative, without a preposition: as, *silentio auditus est*—*he was heard in silence*.

Adjectives of plenty or want, as also verbs signifying abundance or destitution, have generally the ablative: as,

*inops verbis*—deficient in words; *urbs redundat militibus*—the city is full of soldiers.

The price of a thing is put in the ablative: as, *vendidit auro patriam*—he sold his country for gold.

A noun denoting the time at which, or in the duration of which time any thing is said to be, or exist, or to be done, is put in the ablative, without a preposition: as, *hoc tempore*—at this time.

The name of a town in which any thing is, or is said to be done, is put in the ablative, if such name is of the third declension, or if it is in the plural number of any of the declensions: as, *natus Tibure*—born at Tibur.

The name of a town, as also *domus*—house or home, *humus*—ground, and *rus*—the country, are generally put in the ablative, without a preposition, when motion or departure from is denoted: as, *Brindisio profecti sumus*—we departed from Brindisium.

The comparative degree governs the ablative, when *quàm*—than, is omitted: as, *nemo Romanorum fuit eloquentior Cicerone*—none of the Romans was more eloquent than Cicero.

The ablative is used to denote the degree or measure by which one thing surpasses, or by which one thing is surpassed by another: as, *Hibernia dimidio minor est quam Britannia*—Ireland is a half less than Britain.

When a noun, with a participle, is used as an inserted and independent clause, both are put in the ablative; this is termed the ablative absolute: as, *Pythagoras quum, Tarquinio, Superbo regnante, in Italiam venisset*—when Pythagoras, Turquinius, Superbus reigning, had come to Italy.

As *sum*—I am, has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and adjective, having *sum* understood, as in the present participle, and interposed as above, have no participle: as, *adolescentulo duce*—a youth (being) their leader.

## Lesson 97.

<sup>1</sup> Ego <sup>(1) ●●</sup> | <sup>(d) ēr-di-sum.(3)</sup> respondebo <sup>(1) ●●</sup> <sup>m.pl.4</sup> pauca  
 I will-reply (in a) few (words)  
<sup>m.pl.3</sup> his <sup>pl.3</sup> sanctissimis (s.) ●● <sup>ox-ocis.ol.3</sup> vocibus  
 to-these most-sacred words  
<sup>ei.2 and 2</sup> reipublicæ, <sup>et</sup> <sup>m-ntia.pl.3</sup> mentibus <sup>o-lis pl.2</sup> hominum,  
 of (the) 'republic, and 'to (the) 'minds of-men,  
 qui | <sup>(7) ēr-al-sum.(1)</sup> sentiunt <sup>[pl.3] ●●</sup> <sup>id.4</sup> idem. Si  
 who feel (in the) same (manner). If  
<sup>1</sup> ego <sup>(1) ●●</sup> | <sup>ar-avi-atum.sb.(3)</sup> iudicarem <sup>(1) ●●</sup> <sup>oc.4</sup> hoc  
 I should-judge this  
<sup>a.4</sup> optimum (bonus, c.) ●● <sup>(cio-cere). ēr-fec- | ctum. factu, [u] ●●</sup>  
 best to-be-done,  
<sup>a.pl.5</sup> conscripti <sup>er-tria.pl.5</sup> patres, <sup>4</sup> Catilinam  
 conscript fathers, (that) Catiline  
 | <sup>ar-avi-atum.p.in.(1)</sup> multari <sup>m-rtis.6</sup> morte;  
 be-punished with-death; I-'should not  
<sup>(do-dare). ar- | dedi-datum.sb.(5)</sup> dedissem <sup>(1) ●●</sup> <sup>4</sup> usuram <sup>a-ius.2</sup> unius <sup>2</sup> horæ  
 'have-given (the) use of-one hour  
 ad | <sup>(v) ēr-xi-ctum.4</sup> vivendum <sup>[ger.] ●●</sup> <sup>te.3</sup> isti <sup>or-oris.3</sup> pladiatori.  
 for living to-this gladiator.  
 Etenim si <sup>a.pl.1</sup> summi <sup>r.pl.1</sup> viri, <sup>et</sup> <sup>a.pl.1</sup> clarissimi (s.) ●●  
 For if (the) highest men (in rank), and most-celebrated  
<sup>is-is.pl.1</sup> cives <sup>non modo non</sup> <sup>ar- | avi-atum.(4)</sup> contaminârunt, <sup>[pl.3] ●●</sup>  
 citizens 'have not only not 'contaminated  
 sed etiam <sup>ar- | avi-atum.(4)</sup> honestârunt <sup>[pl.3] ●●</sup>  
 (themselves), but even have-honored  
<sup>pl.4</sup> se <sup>(3) ●●</sup> <sup>is-is.pl.6</sup> sanguine <sup>a.2</sup> Saturnini, <sup>et</sup> <sup>a.pl.2</sup> Gracchorum,  
 themselves 'by (the) 'blood of-Saturninus, and 'of (the) 'Gracchi,  
 et <sup>a.2</sup> Flacci <sup>et</sup> <sup>as-ium.pl.3</sup> complurium <sup>a.pl.2</sup> superiorum;  
 and of-Flaccus and of-many (men) of-superior  
 certe non | <sup>(cor-eri). ēr-itus-sum.d.(n.2)</sup> verendum erat <sup>(3) ●●</sup>  
 (rank); certainly it-'was not 'to-be-feared  
<sup>3</sup> mihi, <sup>(1) ●●</sup> <sup>ne</sup> <sup>id.1</sup> quid <sup>2</sup> invidiæ | <sup>ar-avi-atum.sb.(3)</sup> redundaret <sup>(3) ●●</sup>  
 by-me, lest any (thing) of-odium would-redound  
<sup>3</sup> mihi <sup>(1) ●●</sup> <sup>in</sup> <sup>as-aria.4</sup> posteritatem, <sup>ic.6</sup> hoc <sup>6</sup> parricidâ <sup>is-is.pl.2</sup> civium  
 to-me into posterity, this parricide of-citizens  
<sup>(cio-icēre). ēr-eci- | octum.p.(4). a.6</sup> interfecto. <sup>[part.] ●●</sup> Quodd si <sup>ea.1</sup> ea  
 being-slain. Therefore if | it [this]

|                                                     |                                                 |                                             |                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| [ (d) ēr-di-sum.sh.(3) ]                            |                                                 | impenderet [3] ●●                           | 3 mihi (1) ●●                              |
| odium]                                              |                                                 | might-threaten                              | me                                         |
| maxime, (ad.s.) ●●                                  | tamen (sum-see).s-   ul.(4)                     | fui (1) ●●                                  | semper ic.6 hoc                            |
| very-greatly,                                       | yet                                             | I-have-been                                 | always of-this                             |
| s.6 animo,                                          | ut   ar-avi-atum.sh.(3)                         | putarem (1) ●●                              | 4 invidiam                                 |
| mind,                                               | that                                            | I-thought                                   | odium                                      |
| (pario-parēre).ēr-peperi-paritum or paritum.p.(4).4 |                                                 | partam [part.] ●●                           | us-utia.6 virtute (f.) ●●                  |
|                                                     |                                                 | produced                                    | by-virtue                                  |
| 4 gloriam                                           | non                                             | 4 invidiam.                                 | Quamquam                                   |
| (was) glory                                         | not                                             | odium.                                      | Although                                   |
| (er-m-esse)   s-ui.(1)                              | sunt [pl.3] ●●                                  | a.pl.1 nonnulli in ic.6 hoc o-lia.6 ordine, |                                            |
| there-are                                           |                                                 | some in this                                | order                                      |
| [assembly of the senate],                           |                                                 | ui.1 qui aut                                | non                                        |
|                                                     |                                                 | who either                                  | 'may not                                   |
| (d) ēr-di-sum.sh.(1)                                |                                                 | videant [pl.3] ●●                           | id.pl.4 ea od.pl.4 quæ                     |
| see                                                 |                                                 | those (things)                              | which                                      |
| (ē-ui.(1)) imminent, [pl.3] ●●                      |                                                 | aut or                                      | 1 ar-avi-atum.sh.(1) dissimulant [pl.3] ●● |
| impend,                                             |                                                 |                                             | may-dissemble                              |
| id.pl.4 ea,                                         | od.pl.4 quæ                                     | (d) ēr-di-sum.(1) vident; [pl.3] ●●         | ui.1 qui                                   |
| those (things),                                     | which                                           | they-see;                                   | who                                        |
| ēr-   ui-ium or tum.(4)                             | aluerunt [pl.3] ●●                              | ei.4 spem                                   | 2 Catilinæ                                 |
| have-nourished                                      |                                                 | (the) hope                                  | of-Catiline                                |
| is-in.pl.6 mollibus                                 | pl.6 sentiis,                                   | que- ar-   avi-atum.(4)                     | corrobo-                                   |
| by-mild                                             | opinions,                                       | and                                         | have-                                      |
| boraverunt [pl.3] ●●                                | (nascor-nasci)   ēr-natus-sum.d.(1).ens-entis.4 | nascentem [part.] ●●                        |                                            |
| strengthened                                        | (the) growing                                   |                                             |                                            |
| io-lonia.4 conjurationem (f.) ●●                    | non                                             | 1 ēr-idi-ium.6 credendo. [uzr.] ●●          |                                            |
| conspiracy                                          | 'by not                                         | 'believing                                  | (it).                                      |

## Lesson 98.

His ego sanctissimis reipublicæ vocibus, et eorum hominum, qui idem sentiunt, mentibus, pauca respondebo. Ego si hoc optimum factu judicarem, patres conscripti, Catilinam morte multari; unius usuram horæ gladiatori isti ad vivendum non dedissem. Etenim, si summi viri, et clarissimi cives, Saturnini, et Gracchorum et Flacci, et superiorum complurium sanguine non modo se non contaminârunt, sed etiam honestârunt; certe mihi verendum non erat, ne quid,

hoc parricidâ civium interfecto, invidiæ mihi in posteritatem redundaret. Quodsi ea mihi maxime impenderet: tamen hoc animo semper fui, ut invidiam virtute partam, gloriam, non invidiam putarem. Quamquam nonnulli sunt in hoc ordine, qui aut ea, quæ imminet, non videant; aut ea, quæ vident, dissimulent; qui spem Catilinæ mollibus sententiis aluerunt, conjurationemque nascentem non credendo corroboraverunt.

#### EXERCISES ON LESSONS 97 AND 98.

##### *Latin words to be translated into English.*

Nonnullus. Immineo. Dissimulo. Spes. Mollis. Aluit. Nascitur. Credo. Impendet. Semper. Invidiam. Putavi. Clarissimus. Sanguis. Contamino. Honestavit. Vereor. Interficio. Sanctus. Vox. Sentio. Mens. Respondebam. Judicabo. Multo. Hora. Vixit. Dedi.

##### *English words to be translated into Latin.*

Produced. Although. I have seen. It impends. They dissemble. I see. To nourish. Mild or soft. Opinions. He has strengthened. I believe. He has honored. Blood. Certainly. I fear. Odium. It redounds. He has been slain. Very greatly. Always. I have thought. Republic. I feel. I will judge. He is punished. He lived. He replies.

##### *Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Nonnulli sunt, qui non videant. Qui ea, quæ vident dissimulent. Spem Catilinæ aluerunt, conjurationemque corroboraverunt. Quod si ea mihi impenderet. Hoc animo sum. Summi et clarissimi cives sunt. Sanguine se non contaminarunt. Mihi verendum non erat, ne quid invidiæ mihi redundaret. His pauca respondebo. Unius usuram horæ ad vivendum non dedissem.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

Some in this assembly, who may not see those things, which impend. They dissemble those things, which they see. They nourish the hope of Catiline by their mild opinions. They strengthen the growing conspiracy by not believing it. It was to be feared that odium would redound to me. I have always been of this opinion. Who feel in the same manner. I judge this best to be done. I should not have given the use of one hour. It certainly is not to be feared by me.

The present subjunctive is sometimes used to express a command, request, or permission: as, *ne me attingas*—do not touch me. The perfect subjunctive is likewise occasionally used in this manner, and even the pluperfect subjunctive.

Participles govern the same cases as their verb: as, *faventes rebus*—favoring the affair.

The participle in *dus* denotes necessity or propriety, when it agrees with the subject or nominative of a sentence: as, *delenda est Carthago*—Carthage must be destroyed.

Gerunds govern the same cases as their verbs: as, *parcendo victis*—by sparing the conquered.

The gerund of an active verb, governing an accusative, may be changed into the participle in *dus*; the object or accusative governed by the gerund is then put in the same case as the gerund was, and the participle in *dus* agrees with this object: as, *consilium scribendi epistolam*—the design of writing a letter, may be thus expressed by the participle in *dus*: *consilium scribendæ epistolæ*—the design of a letter to be written.

Supines govern the same case as their verb: as, *non Graiis servitum matribus ibo*—I shall not go a serving Grecian matrons.

## Lesson 99.

|                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                     |                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pl. <sup>6</sup> <b>Necessariis</b><br>(The) necessary                                                                                                                   | ei.pl. <sup>6</sup> <b>rebus</b><br>things                                                          | ar-avi-   atum.p.(4).pl. <sup>6</sup> <b>imperatis</b> , [part.] ●●<br>being-commanded, |
| m-is. <sup>1</sup> <b>Cæsar</b> <b>ad</b><br>Cæsar for (the purpose of)                                                                                                  | ar-avi-atum.(3).s.pl. <sup>4</sup> <b>cohortandos</b> [part.] ●●<br>encouraging                     |                                                                                         |
| es-itis. <sup>4</sup> <b>militēs</b><br>(the) soldiers                                                                                                                   | (curro-currere) rē-   cucurri and curri-cursum.(4) <b>decurrit</b> (3) ●●<br>ran                    |                                                                                         |
| in<br>to (that)                                                                                                                                                          | re-ritin. <sup>4</sup> <b>partem</b> ,<br>part,                                                     | um. <sup>4</sup> <b>quam</b><br>which                                                   |
| (hero-ferre)-   tuli-latum.(4) <b>obtulit</b> , (3) ●●<br>presented,                                                                                                     | et<br>and                                                                                           | re-ritin. <sup>1</sup> <b>sors</b><br>chance                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | ir-   i-um.(4) <b>devenit</b> (3) ●●<br>came                                                        | <b>ad</b><br>to                                                                         |
| <sup>4</sup> <b>decimam</b><br>(the) 'tenth                                                                                                                              | io-ionis. <sup>4</sup> <b>legionem</b> , (f.) ●●<br>legion,                                         | ar-avi-   atum.d.(4) <b>cohor-</b><br>he-                                               |
| <b>tatus est</b> (3) ●●<br>exhorted                                                                                                                                      | es-itis.pl. <sup>4</sup> <b>militēs</b><br>(the) soldiers                                           | non<br>not                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | 'with                                                                                               | on-oris. <sup>6</sup> <b>longiore</b><br>(a) 'longer                                    |
| io-ionis. <sup>6</sup> <b>oratione</b> , (f.) ●●<br>speech,                                                                                                              | <b>quàm</b><br>than                                                                                 | utl   (lin) ēr-tinui-tentum.ab.(2) <b>retine-</b><br>they-should-                       |
| rent [pl.3] ●● <sup>4</sup> <b>memoriam</b> <sup>2</sup> <b>suæ</b> <sup>2</sup> <b>pristinæ</b> <b>virtutis</b> , (f.) ●●<br>retain (the) memory of-their former valor, |                                                                                                     |                                                                                         |
| neu   ar-avi-atum.p.ab.(2) <b>perturbarentur</b> [pl.3] ●●<br>nor should-they-be-disturbed                                                                               | <b>in-mind</b><br>and                                                                               |                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>fortiter</b><br>'should bravely                                                                  | (lin) ēr-tinui-tentum.ab.(2) <b>sustinerent</b> [pl.3] ●●<br>'sustain                   |
| da. <sup>4</sup> <b>impetum</b> <b>hostium</b> ;<br>(the) attack 'of (the) 'enemy ;                                                                                      | <b>quòd</b> <b>hostes</b><br>because (the) enemy 'were                                              |                                                                                         |
| non <b>longius</b><br>not farther                                                                                                                                        | (sum-esse)   e-ul.(2) <b>aberant</b> , [pl.3] ●●<br>'distant,                                       | <b>quàm</b><br>than                                                                     |
| <b>quòd</b><br>whither                                                                                                                                                   | m. <sup>1</sup> <b>telum</b><br>(a) dart                                                            | (sum-esse)   e-ul.ab.(2) <b>posset</b> (3) ●●<br>might                                  |
| (jicio-jicere)   ēr-jeci-jectum.p.in.(1) <b>adjici</b> ,<br>be-cast,                                                                                                     | ar-   dedi-atum.(4) <b>dedit</b> (3) ●●<br>he-gave                                                  |                                                                                         |
| m. <sup>4</sup> <b>signum</b> <b>proelii</b>   (1) ēr-lai-latum.p.(3) <b>committendi</b> [part.] ●●<br>(the) signal   of-battle to-be-engaged [for                       |                                                                                                     |                                                                                         |
| <b>atque</b><br>battle]; and                                                                                                                                             | (sciacor-scisci) ēr-fectus-sum.d.(4).s. <sup>1</sup> <b>profectus</b> [part.] ●●<br>having-departed | <b>item</b><br>likewise                                                                 |
| in <sup>4</sup> <b>alteram</b> <b>partem</b> ,<br>to another part                                                                                                        | (of the army), 'for (the) 'purpose                                                                  | <sup>6</sup> <b>causâ</b>                                                               |
| ar-avi-atum. <sup>2</sup> <b>cohortandi</b> , [ger.] ●●<br>of-exhorting                                                                                                  | (m) ēr-   rri-rum.(4) <b>occurrit</b> (3) ●●<br>he-met                                              | (the                                                                                    |

|                                |                       |                  |                           |                          |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| [ar-avi-atum.(1).us-utis.pl.3] |                       | pugnantibus.     | [part.] ●●                | -                        | Tanta                               |
| soldiers)                      |                       | fighting.        |                           |                          | So-great                            |
| (num-esse).c-                  | ui.(4)                | fruit [3] ●●     | as-atia.1                 | exiguitas                | us-oria.2                           |
|                                |                       | was              | (the)                     | smallness                | of-time                             |
|                                |                       |                  |                           |                          | and                                 |
| tam                            | a.1                   | paratus          | a.1                       | animus                   | is-is.pl.2                          |
| so                             |                       | prepared (was)   | (the)                     | mind                     | 'of (the) 'enemy                    |
|                                |                       |                  |                           |                          | for                                 |
|                                |                       | [ar-avi-atum.4]  | dimicandum, [ger.] ●●     | ut                       | us-oria.1                           |
|                                |                       |                  | fighting,                 | that                     | time                                |
| (num-esse).c-                  | ui.ab.(4)             | defuerit [3] ●●  | non                       | modò                     | ad                                  |
|                                |                       | was-wanting      | not                       | only                     | for                                 |
|                                |                       |                  |                           |                          | (the) ensigns                       |
|                                |                       |                  | [ar-avi-atum.(3).pl.4]    | accommodanda, [part.] ●● | sed etiam                           |
|                                |                       | (of distinction) |                           | to-be-fixed-on,          | but even                            |
| ad                             | pl.4                  | galeas           | [er-i-tum.(3).pl.4]       | induendas, [part.] ●●    | que.                                |
| for                            | (the)                 | helmets          |                           | to-be-put-on,            | and                                 |
| m.pl.4                         |                       | tegmenta         | [h]er-xi-ctum.(3).pl.4    | detrahenda [part.] ●●    |                                     |
|                                | (the)                 | coverings        |                           | to-be-drawn-off          |                                     |
| m.pl.3                         |                       | scutis.          | In                        | um..4                    | quam                                |
|                                | 'from (the) 'shields. | Into             | what                      | partem                   | uia.1                               |
|                                |                       |                  |                           | part                     | every-one                           |
| ta.6                           | casu                  | ir-   i-tum.(1)  | devenit [3] ●●            | ab                       | us-oria.6                           |
|                                | by-chance             |                  | came                      | from (his)               | opere, que.                         |
|                                |                       |                  |                           |                          | work, [and                          |
| cd.pl.4                        | quæ.                  | m.pl.4           | prima                     | m.pl.4                   | signa                               |
|                                | what                  |                  | first                     |                          | standards [and the first standards] |
| (tele-leave)er-                |                       | exi-ctum.(4)     | conspexit [3] ●●          | ar-   iti-atum.(4)       | constitit [3] ●●                    |
|                                |                       |                  | he-beheld                 |                          | he-stood                            |
|                                |                       |                  |                           |                          | at                                  |
| oc.pl.4                        | hæc,                  | ne               | [ (1) er-si-ssum.ab.(2) ] | dimitteret [3] ●●        | us-oria.4                           |
|                                | them,                 | lest             |                           | he-might-let-pass-by     | (the) time                          |
|                                |                       |                  |                           |                          |                                     |
|                                |                       | [ar-avi-atum.2]  | pugnandi [ger.] ●●        | in                       | [er-si-ssum.ab.6]                   |
|                                |                       |                  | of-fighting               |                          | quærendo [ger.] ●●                  |
|                                |                       |                  |                           |                          | in-seeking                          |
| a.pl.4                         |                       | suos.            |                           |                          |                                     |
|                                |                       | his (comrades).  |                           |                          |                                     |

## Lesson 100.

Cæsar necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem sors obtulit decucurrit; et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione est cohortatus, quàm uti suæ pristinæ virtutis memoriam retinerent, ne perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent; et quòd non longiùs hostes aberant, quàm quòd telum adjici posset; prælii committendū signum dedit: atque item



in alteram partem cohortandi causâ profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut, non modò, ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas, scutisque tegmenta detrahenda, tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit, quæque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constitit, ne, in quærendis suis, pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

EXERCISES ON LESSONS 99 AND 100.

*Latin words to be translated into English.*

Exiguitas. Tantus. Paratus. Dimicaverunt. Animus. Accommodabo. Galea. Induo. Scutum. Detraho. Desum. Opus. Casus. Signum. Conspicio. Quæro. Pugnaverunt. Tempus. Necessarius. Imperavit. Sors. Obfero. Decurrunt. Devenio. Cohortor. Pristinus. Retinerem. Perturbo. Sustineo. Adjicio. Commisit. Dant. Pugnabo.

*English words to be translated into Latin.*

Work. Standards. To behold. He sought. Likewise. They had exhorted. They meet or run together. Prepared. They will fight. It was wanting. Even. Coverings. To put on. It was drawn off. Chance. Shields. Speech. He may have retained. Former or ancient. To disturb. Attack. To be distant. Dart. He has cast. He departed. He may have commanded. He encourages. To present.

*Latin sentences to be translated into English.*

Temporis exiguitas. Hostium paratus ad dimicandum animus. Ad galeas induendas tempus defuerit. Scutis tegmenta detraxerunt. Ab opere devenit. Signa conspexit. Ne pugnandi tempus dimitteret. Cæsar ad cohortandos milites decucurrit. Milites oratione est cohortatus. Hostium impetum fortiter sustinerent. Non longiùs, quàm quò

telum adjici posset. Signum dat. In alteram partem projectus est. Pugnantibus occurrit.

*English sentences to be translated into Latin.*

The first standard he beheld. He might let the time of fighting pass by. He seeks his comrades. For the purpose of exhorting. So prepared were the minds of the enemy for fighting. Time was wanting for the ensigns of distinction to be fixed on. They drew off the coverings from the shields. Into whatever part he came. The memory of their ancient valor. They were disturbed in mind. They bravely sustained the attack. He gave the signal for battle. He ran to that part which chance presented.

---

## PROSODY.

To give the rules of Prosody would scarcely be consistent with this first or elementary course; it may be proper, however, to observe that Latin verses are formed on quite different principles from English verses. Latin verse has no rhyme, nor does the structure thereof depend on accented or unaccented syllables; but is altogether dependent on a certain or regular succession of long and short syllables.

The length of time employed in pronouncing a syllable is called the quantity of such syllable. A long syllable is considered as being equal in duration to two short syllables. There are a great many rules for determining the quantity of a syllable. It may only be proper here to state two or three of the most general rules; as, a vowel before another vowel, or before a diphthong, is short: as, *mēus*—*my*; so, also, when *h* is interposed between two vowels, the first vowel is short: as, *nīhil*—*nothing*. Diphthongs are long: as,

*aurum*—gold. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long: as, *bellum*—war.

Two or more syllables constitute a foot, of which there are many and various kinds, and each has its peculiar denomination; as the spondee, consisting of two long syllables: as, *fūdūnt*—they pour out; the dactyl, consisting of one long and two short syllables: as, *cōrpōrā*—bodies. These two feet, the spondee and dactyl, are the feet used in epic or heroic verse.

All verses are composed of a certain number of feet, and the verses thus formed are of various kinds, and have different denominations: as the hexameter, or epic or heroic verse, which consists of six feet, those feet being dactyls and spondees. The fifth foot, reckoning from the commencement of the line, is a dactyl, and the sixth or last a spondee. The first, second, third and fourth foot may be either a dactyl or spondee: as,

Lūdērē | quæ vël lēm cālā | mō pēr | misīt ā | grēstī.  
 Dact. 1      spon. 2      dact. 3      spon. 4      dact. 5      spon. 6.

*“he permits (me) to play what I will on my rural reed.”*

THE END.

SARGENT'S STANDARD SPEAKER.

JUST PUBLISHED,

*In one demi-octavo volume of 558 pages.*

# THE STANDARD SPEAKER,

CONTAINING

*Exercises in Prose and Poetry,*

FOR DECLAMATION IN SCHOOLS, ACADEMIES, LYCEUMS, COLLEGES.

Newly translated or compiled from celebrated Orators, Authors, and popular Debaters, ancient and modern.

A TREATISE ON ORATORY AND ELOCUTION,

WITH NOTES EXPLANATORY AND BIOGRAPHICAL.

BY EPES SARGENT.

This work has been compiled with great care, and contains a majority of new pieces. It is far more comprehensive than any similar work, and is adapted for use not only as a Speaker, but to the general reader, as a collection containing many new, rare, and elegant extracts.

From among a great number of commendatory notices received from essayists, the press, and teachers of elocution, a few are subjoined.

*From E. P. WHIPPLE, Esq., the well-known Essayist and Critic.*

We have no hesitation in saying that this is the best compilation of the kind, in the variety and in the comprehensiveness of its selections, which has been made on either side of the Atlantic. The various pieces are selected with great judgment from a long array of celebrated orators and writers. A good portion of the work is devoted to extracts from late speeches in France, England, and America, which have never before appeared in a collection of the kind; and the works of the great masters of eloquence, Chatham, Burke, Pitt, Fox, Grattan, Emmett, Shiel, and Webster, have been carefully studied for new specimens. The original translations from the French are admirably executed, and add a novel feature to the work. The amount of editorial labor expended on the whole compilation must have been very great — greater, we think, than that of any other Speaker.

The introductory treatise on Oratory and Elocution is a model of condensation, full of matter, clear, sensible, and available in every part. Not only is the volume admirably adapted to serve its primal purpose as a Speaker, but to the general reader it will be found to be a most stimulating and attractive book, better than any work of "elegant extracts" we have seen.

## SARGENT'S STANDARD SPEAKER.

---

*From the Knickerbocker (N. Y.) Magazine.*

While he (the compiler) has retained all the indispensable masterpieces, and restored many that have been omitted from the collections the last twenty years, he has given an amount of fresh, new, and appropriate matter, that will astonish and delight the youthful prize-seeking orators of our academies and schools. He has translated from Mirabeau and Victor Hugo a number of speeches of appropriate length, that will become as familiar as the "Give me liberty or give me death" speech of Patrick Henry.

---

*From E. S. DIXWELL, Esq., late Principal of the Public Latin School, Boston.*

The volume seems to me to be a very valuable one, and to contain more available matter than any book of the kind I ever saw. Beside the old standard pieces, you have given us a great many new ones, and, to my surprise, have put a new vigor into some of the old translations, which makes them quite new and redolent of their originals.

---

*From the Lowell Courier.*

The whole range of ancient and modern oratory, pulpit, forensic, or occasional, as well as of poetry, dramatic, lyrical, or epic, has been explored, and the choicest gems from each brought together into this literary casket. The volume should be on the table of every friend of elegant letters, as a collection of rare and beautiful extracts, to be read and read again.

---

*From the Boston Daily Advertiser.*

The volume deserves to be, what its title claims, a "STANDARD SPEAKER."

---

*From the New York Express.*

The Standard Speaker is one of the most superbly executed works that ever emanated from the American press, and is the best book for the purposes for which it was designed, ever issued in the language. It must become a standard school-book, wherever reading and elocution are taught.

---

*From the New York Home Journal.*

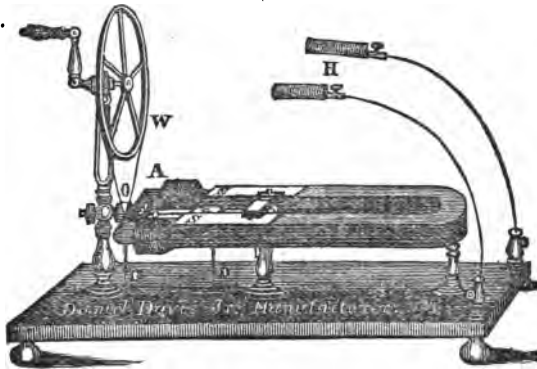
The chimerical "systems," through which a short cut to the attainment of good elocution is promised, are set down at their true value. All the available information on the subject is here summed up. The principal department is the Senatorial; and this is much more full and satisfactory than anything of the kind that has yet appeared in any elocutionary collection.

---

It is adapted to the wants of the whole Union, and not of a section.—*New Orleans Pirayune.*

WORKS ON THE NATURAL SCIENCES.

---



PARTICULAR ATTENTION

IS INVITED TO

Charles Desilver's  
SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS  
UPON THE NATURAL SCIENCES.

AMONG THEM ARE

JOHNSTON'S SERIES.

~~~~~  
JOHNSTON'S TURNER'S CHEMISTRY.
A MANUAL OF CHEMISTRY.

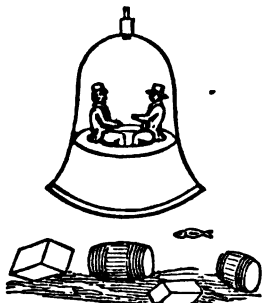
ON THE BASIS OF DR. TURNER'S ELEMENTS OF CHEMISTRY, CONTAINING, IN A
CONDENSED FORM, ALL THE MOST IMPORTANT FACTS AND PRINCIPLES
OF THE SCIENCE. DESIGNED AS A TEXT-BOOK IN COLLEGES
AND OTHER SEMINARIES OF LEARNING.

A NEW EDITION.

BY JOHN JOHNSTON, A. M.,
Professor of Natural Science in Wesleyan University.

~~~~~  
JOHNSTON'S TURNER'S ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY  
FOR THE USE OF COMMON SCHOOLS. One Vol. 18mo.

(25)



## JOHNSTON'S NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

REVISED EDITION.

ENLARGED AND IMPROVED.

*A Manual of Natural Philosophy,*

COMPILED FROM VARIOUS SOURCES, AND DESIGNED AS A TEXT-  
BOOK IN HIGH SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

BY JOHN JOHNSTON, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF NATURAL SCIENCE IN THE WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY.

---

The above valuable series of books were prepared by JOHN JOHNSTON, A.M., Professor of Natural Science in the Wesleyan University, Middletown, Ct. The Chemistry is the standard text-book of many of the leading Colleges and prominent Medical Institutions of the country. The Elementary Chemistry, very recently published, has been adopted in many High Schools and Academies, in all parts of the country.

The present edition of Johnston's Natural Philosophy will be found much enlarged and improved. Exact in its definitions, original in its illustrations, full and familiar in explanation, the publishers are assured it will require only to be examined to be approved. It has been recently recommended by the Board of Education of the State of New Hampshire for the use of the Common Schools of the State; it has also been adopted in the High School of Cambridge, Massachusetts, and in many Academies and Schools in various sections of the country.

A few notices of the series, from among many which have been received, are appended:

## WORKS ON THE NATURAL SCIENCES.

---

*Extract from the Proceedings of the School Commissioners of the State of New Hampshire.*

At a meeting of the Commissioners of Common Schools for the State of New Hampshire, held in Concord, August, 1851, it was, on motion of Mr. Whidden, of Lancaster, Coos county,

*Voted*, To recommend "Johnston's Natural Philosophy" to be used in the Common Schools of the State.

---

*From M. J. WILLIAMS, Professor of Mathematics and Natural Philosophy, South Carolina College, Columbia, S. C.*

I consider Johnston's Manual of Natural Philosophy a good text-book for elementary instruction in schools and academies.

---

*Extract from the Record of the Proceedings of the Board of Visitors of the Natchez Institute, Natchez, Miss.*

At a meeting of the Board of Visitors of the Natchez Institute, Johnston's Natural Philosophy, and Johnston's Elements of Chemistry, were unanimously adopted as text-books for the use of the pupils.

*Signed,*

L. M. PATTERSON, *Secretary.*

---

*From PROF. BOOTH, of the High School, Philadelphia.*

I find, upon a careful examination of Johnson's Manual of Chemistry, that it is extremely well adapted to the objects for which it is designed. As a text-book, I regard it as superior to Turner's Chemistry, on which it is based, being more condensed and practical, and yet sufficiently and equally presenting the late rapid advancement of the science.

---

*Extract from a Letter of F. MERRICK, Professor of Chemistry in the Ohio Wesleyan University and Starling Medical College, Columbus, Ohio.*

Having carefully examined Johnston's Turner's Chemistry, without specifying its particular excellencies, I am free to say that I regard it as an excellent text-book. Indeed to most students in the higher seminaries of learning, I know of no book upon the subject, which I would recommend in preference to it.

---

*From JOHN F. FRASER, Professor of General Chemistry in the Franklin Institute, Philadelphia.*

I find it to be a carefully compiled and well digested Treatise, and, as I believe, well adapted to serve the purpose of a text-book.

This work has been introduced into many Academies and several Colleges, and is held in the highest estimation.



WORKS ON THE NATURAL SCIENCES.

---

**GUY'S ASTRONOMY,  
AND  
KEITH ON THE GLOBES.**

---

**GUY AND KEITH.**

**GUY ON ASTRONOMY, AND KEITH ON THE GLOBES:**

**Guy's Elements of Astronomy, and an Abridgment of Keith's New Treatise on the Globes**

**THIRTEENTH AMERICAN EDITION, WITH ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS,  
AND AN EXPLANATION OF THE ASTRONOMICAL PART OF THE AMERICAN  
ALMANAC.**

**Illustrated with Eighteen Plates,**

**DRAWN AND ENGRAVED ON STEEL, IN THE BEST MANNER.**

---

A volume containing Guy's popular Treatise of Astronomy, and Keith on the Globes, having been submitted to us for examination, and carefully examined, we can without any hesitation recommend it to the notice and patronage of parents and teachers. The work on Astronomy is clear intelligible, and suited to the comprehension of young persons. It comprises a great amount of information and is well illustrated with steel engravings. Keith on the Globes has long been recognised as a standard school book. The present edition, comprised in the same volume with the Astronomy, is improved by the omission of much extraneous matter, and the reduction of size and price. On the whole, we know of no school book which comprises so much in so little space as the new edition of Guy and Keith.

THOMAS EUSTACE,  
JOHN HASLAM,  
W. CURRAN,  
SAMUEL CLENDENIN,

CHARLES MEAD,  
BENJAMIN MAYO,  
HUGH MORROW,  
J. H. BLACK.

The following teachers of Baltimore, concur in the opinion above expressed:

E. BENNETT,  
C. F. BANSEMAR,  
E. R. HARNEY,  
ROBERT O'NEILL,  
N. SPELMAN,

O. W. TREADWELL,  
JAMES SHANLEY,  
DAVID KING,  
ROBERT WALKER,  
D. W. B. McCLELAN.

**MATHEMATICAL WORKS.**

---

**VIRGINIA MILITARY INSTITUTE**

**MATHEMATICAL SERIES,**

**BY COL. FRANCIS H. SMITH,**

**SUPERINTENDENT OF THE VIRGINIA MILITARY INSTITUTE.**

---

**INTRODUCTION TO SMITH AND DUKE'S  
ARITHMETIC.**

**BY FRANCIS H. SMITH, A.M.**

---

**AMERICAN STATISTICAL ARITHMETIC.**

**DESIGNED FOR ACADEMIES AND SCHOOLS.**

**BY FRANCIS H. SMITH, A.M.**

*Superintendent and Professor of Mathematics in the Virginia Military Institute; late  
Professor of Mathematics in Hampden Sydney College, and formerly Assistant  
Professor in the United States Military Academy, West Point;*

**AND R. T. W. DUKE,**

*Assistant Professor of Mathematics in the Virginia Military Institute.*

**THIRD EDITION.**

---

**KEY TO SMITH AND DUKE'S AMERICAN  
STATISTICAL ARITHMETIC.**

**PREPARED BY WILLIAM FORBES,**

*Assistant Professor of Mathematics in the Virginia Military Institute.*

---

**SMITH'S ALGEBRA.**

**AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON ALGEBRA,**

**PREPARED FOR THE USE OF THE CADETS OF THE VIRGINIA MILITARY  
INSTITUTE, AND ADAPTED TO THE PRESENT STATE OF MATHE-  
MATICAL INSTRUCTION IN THE SCHOOLS, ACADEMIES,  
AND COLLEGES OF THE UNITED STATES.**

**BY FRANCIS H. SMITH, A.M.**

This work is designed to present as complete an Elementary course of Algebra, as the time devoted to the study of Mathematics in the Colleges of our country will allow; while it will be equally within the comprehension of the pupil of the High School or Academy.

## MODERN LANGUAGES.

---

### **MANESCA'S FRENCH GRAMMAR;** Or the Serial and Oral Method of Teaching Languages :—Adapted to the French BY L. MANESCA.

---

#### **SERIAL AND ORAL METHOD.**

### **MANESCA'S FRENCH READER.**

Prepared for the use of Students who have gone through the Course of Lessons contained in the method; to which is added,

#### **A TABLE OF THE FRENCH VERBS,**

Arranged and classified on a new plan, calculated to facilitate greatly their acquisition. BY L. MANESCA.

#### **EXTRACTS OF NOTICES OF MANESCA'S FRENCH GRAMMAR.**

*From the New York Daily Tribune.*

This is no doubt one of the most rational and effective manuals for the teaching of languages that has ever been prepared; any person, with an ordinary degree of attention, may, with its aid, be certain of obtaining a sound, practical knowledge of the French in a short time. The Serial and Oral method was discovered by JOHN MANESCA, who devoted a life of profound philosophical investigation to the subject of teaching languages. The result of his labours was the creation of the system in question. Various imitations have been made of his matchless method, and it has become more widely and popularly known under other names than his own. The most successful imitation is that made by OLLENDORFF, of Paris, a German teacher, into whose hands the system fell by accident, a few years since, and who appropriated it as an invention of his own.

*From the New York Evening Post.*

This appears to us a very able work, arranged with great order and method, and admirably adapted to the end it has in view. "I call the method, the Serial," says the author in the preface, "because the elements of our language are distributed and classified in a series, that is, in a naturally progressive and connected order, conformable to the nature of language and to the laws of acquisition of the understanding." The elements are arranged, each in its proper place, forming one great chain of connected and dependent links. With the aid of this Serial arrangement the student is led on by easy steps, from the simpler to the more complex part of the language, and acquires it without the vexatious labour, growing out of the artificial difficulties which false systems create. The term Oral indicates that the method communicates a knowledge of the spoken language.

The oral exercises have been prepared, and are introduced for the purpose of communicating this knowledge. The serial and oral method is the same in principle as that which nature employs in teaching the child its mother tongue, but being adapted to maturer age, the series of which the language is composed, is condensed and greatly abridged, so that an amount of language can, in a few months, be acquired by the student which the child requires years to learn.

# CHARLES DESILVER,

PUBLISHER AND BOOKSELLER,

(Successor to Thomas Desilver, Thomas Desilver, Jr., Desilver, Thomas & Co., and of the late firms of Thomas, Cowperthwait & Co. and Cowperthwait, Desilver & Butler,) having removed from the old stand, 253 Market Street, to No. 714 Chestnut Street, opposite the Masonic Hall, Philadelphia, has constantly on hand a large assortment of

SCHOOL, MEDICAL, SCIENTIFIC, LAW, CLASSIC, AND MISCELLANEOUS BOOKS.

|                                                              |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| PINNOCK'S ENGLAND, half roan .....                           | \$0 84 |
| PINNOCK'S ROME, half roan .....                              | 84     |
| PINNOCK'S GREECE, half roan .....                            | 84     |
| PINNOCK'S FRANCE, half roan .....                            | 84     |
| LORD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, 12mo, half roan ....    | 1 00   |
| LORD'S MODERN HISTORY, 8vo., half roan .....                 | 1 50   |
| FROST'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, 18mo., half roan ..... | 50     |
| FROST'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, 12mo., half roan ..... | 90     |

## INTERLINEAR VIRGIL.

THE WORKS OF

P. VIRGILIUS MARO

With the Original Text reduced to the natural order of construction; and an

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION,

As nearly literal as the idiomatic differences of the Latin and English languages will allow. Adapted to the system of classical instruction; combining the methods of Ascham, Milton, and Locke. By Levi Hart and V. B. Osborn. Price \$1 50.

CÆSAR, INTERLINEAR. By Hamilton and Clark. \$1 50.

HORACE, INTERLINEAR. By Hamilton and Clark. 1 50.

CICERO, INTERLINEAR. By Hamilton and Clark. 1 50.

SALLUST, INTERLINEAR. By Hamilton and Clark. 1 50.

*In Press:*

IVID, INTERLINEAR.

HOMER'S ILLAD, INTERLINEAR.

ZENOPHON, INTERLINEAR, &c.

Wisconsin and Lake Superior, with Maps and Illustrations, 12mo.

Virginia Military Institute Mathematical Series, by Col. Francis H. Smith, Superintendent of the Virginia Military Institute.

Ewell's Medical Companion, or Family Physician, by James Ewell, Physician in Washington, formerly of Savannah ..... \$3 75

The American Farmers' New and Universal Hand-Book ..... 2 00

Mitchell's Universal Atlas ..... 12 00

Mitchell's Large Map of the World ..... 10 00

Mitchell's New Traveller's Guide through the United States and Canada ..... 1 00

Johnston's Philosophy ..... 1 00

Johnston's Turner's Chemistry, (new edition) ..... 1 50

Sargent's Standard Speaker ..... 1 50

Sargent's Intermediate Standard Speaker ..... 1 00

Sargent's Primary Standard Speaker ..... 34

Flowers of Elocution, a Class Book, by Mrs. Caroline Lee Hentz ..... 1 00

Descriptive Catalogues furnished on application, and any Book sent by mail, postage paid, on receipt of advertised price.

# HAMILTON AND LOCKE AND CLARK'S SYSTEM OF CLASSICAL INSTRUCTION.

PUBLISHED BY CHARLES DESILVER,

714 CHESNUT ST., PHILADELPHIA.

We do amuse to spend seven or eight years merely scraping together so much miserable Latin and Greek as might be learned otherwise easily and delightfully in one year. — MURON.

- VIRGIL:** interlinear translation by Hart and Osborne — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CÆSAR:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 volume, royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- HORACE:** interlinear translation by Stirling, Nuttall, and Clark — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CICERO:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 volume, royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- SALLUST:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CLARK'S PRACTICAL AND PROGRESSIVE LATIN GRAMMAR:** adapted to the Interlinear Series of Classics, and to all other systems — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.00

The plan of this Grammar is altogether of a practical nature; for, while the scholar is learning the declensions and conjugations, he has them exemplified in lessons extracted from the Classics. Where this method has been properly applied, a more rapid and thorough knowledge of the elements of Latin has always been the result.

## IN PREPARATION:

**OVID:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.

**XENOPHON'S ANABASIS:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.

**HOMER'S ILIAD:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.

*To be followed by School Editions of the other Classic Writers, on the same plan.*

The plan of these works is not new. It is merely the adaptation of the experience of many of the best and most inquiring minds in educational pursuits — methodising what was vague and loose. When the Latin tongue was the only language of diplomacy and scientific international communication, to acquire a knowledge of it was considered of more importance than now. This method was then recommended by Cardinal Wolsey, John Ascham, Latin Secretary to Queen Elizabeth, and by the best *Latin scholar and writer* of his time, John Milton; and in testimony of it John Locke says: — "When, by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little further. *Nor let the objection that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one.* This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly for, this way of learning a language. The languages are only to be learned by rote; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that." In teaching classes by oral dictation, these works present advantages that no others do.

C. DESILVER, PUBLISHER, PHILADELPHIA.

*From the Bee, New Orleans.*

VIRGIL AND CÆSAR, with interlinear translations. — The merits of these translations are unquestionable.

---

*From the New York Enquirer.*

CÆSAR AND HORACE. — The use of interlinear translations in the study of the Classics, is now considered by many as far preferable to the old system of teaching.

These volumes have been carefully revised and prepared by Mr. Thomas Clark.

---

*From A. W. Cummings, D. D., President Col. Ashville, N. C.*

CÆSAR. — I am anxious to see and introduce the interlinear Cæsar in our Latin course.

I am convinced that such a work, judiciously used, is a great improvement on the common method of instruction.

---

*From the Evening Bulletin.*

SALLUST. — It is pretty well known by this time, that the quickest, most accurate, and most scientific method of studying Latin or Greek is by means of interlinear translations.

As regards the work before us, we commend it to all collegians and school-boys.

It is prepared with the utmost accuracy, and beautifully printed and bound.

---

*From S. Royce, Prof. of Languages, Liberty Seminary, Union Co., Ind.*

I watch with anxiety the progress of your interlinear publications of classical authors. I wish you all success; also, do I labor for it, by using your publications, knowing the superiority of the method.

---

*From Francis A. Carl, Bayou Goula, Louisiana.*

I have received your Interlinear Series: Cæsar, Virgil, Cicero, Horace, and Sallust. If you have published any other Classics on the same plan, please send me copies.

I will remain a constant customer of yours, not alone for myself, but shall most cheerfully recommend you to my colleagues engaged as teachers.

---

*From W. J. Sage, Steubenville, Ohio.*

I am very much pleased with the copies of Horace and Cæsar, which I received from you, published on the interlinear plan.

I am making an effort to have the study of the Classics in my school, pursued by the interlinear method.

C. DESILVER, PUBLISHER, PHILADELPHIA.

*From the Saturday Courier, Philadelphia.*

HORACE AND CÆSAR. — *Cæsar*. First five books by Hamilton, sixth and seventh by Clark. Clark's translation being more on the plan of Locke, which is by many teachers most approved of. The translation is as literal as possible, without being unintelligible. This edition exhibits the plan of both Hamilton and Locke.

*Horace*. This edition is carefully revised and collated by Thomas Clark.

Both books are evidently the result of much care, study, and research; and the getting-up of them reflects the highest credit upon the enterprising publisher.

---

*From the Evening Bulletin, Philadelphia.*

HORACE AND CÆSAR. — We have already expressed ourselves emphatically, as to the advantage to be derived from the use of interlinear translations.

Every school-boy and collegian should use them.

As respects the translations, they are excellent in every respect.

The typographical execution of the works is admirable.

---

*From the Public Ledger, Philadelphia.*

Some of the best minds deem interlinear translations best adapted for learning the Classics.

These two volumes, *Horace* and *Cæsar*, are produced with great care, and in a style which will commend them to every student. They are well got up, and free from typographical errors.

---

*From the Philadelphia Evening Journal.*

There are few to whom such adequate translations do not prove valuable, while to others they are not only valuable, but indispensable.

It would be idle to commend such works, for no one can be ignorant of their worth and importance.

---

*From the New York Sun.*

The names of the most eminent scholars in the world are given, with testimonials in favor of interlinear translations of the Classics.

HORACE INTERLINEAR. — This work is published in the same neat and beautiful style as *Virgil* and *Cæsar*.

The complete collection should be in the hands of every classical student.

C. DESILVER, PUBLISHER, PHILADELPHIA.

*From the Ladies' Journal.*

SALLUST. — We commend this excellent translation to all enlightened teachers, desirous of teaching Latin as a language, and not as a grim discipline.

---

*From the Virginia Advocate.*

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS OF VIRGIL, HORACE, CÆSAR, CICERO, SALLUST, &c. — The students of the University will find great assistance from these works, in their study of the Latin language.

The style in which these works are gotten up does great credit to the publisher.

---

*From F. Craft, Bridgewater, Mass.*

CICERO. — I have received the copy of Interlinear Cicero, and I shall adopt it in class forthwith.

I am very much rejoiced that there is at last one publisher willing to aid our youth in the difficulties of a strange language.

---

*From J. B. Lipps, Taylor's Creek, St. Francis Co., Ark.*

I have examined an interlinear translation of Virgil, of which you are the publisher, and I think it the best thing of the kind that I have ever seen.

I should be glad to obtain some of the other Classics, arranged upon the same plan.

---

*From P. W. Bashaw, Green Hill, Tenn.*

I have become much enamored with your interlinear translations of the Latin authors.

If you have the Greek Classics interlinearly arranged, I would like very much to obtain them.

---

*From M. Lyon, Grenada, Miss.*

I have received Cæsar, Cicero, and Virgil.

Please keep me advised of the progress of your Interlinears. Your editions are beautiful.



C. DESILVER, PUBLISHER, PHILADELPHIA.

## ABSTRACTS

*From Reviews, Notices, and Recommendations of the Interlinear Series of Latin Classics, published by CHAS. DESILVER, No. 714 Chestnut St., Philadelphia.*

---

*From the New York Daily Times.*

The use of interlinear translations of the Classics has the sanction of common sense, and has been warmly recommended by such men as Cardinal Wolsey, Erasmus, Roger Ascham, John Milton, John Locke, and Sidney Smith.

We believe, with Sidney Smith, that this system, "the time being given, will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed."

Charles Desilver, the Philadelphia publisher, has commenced issuing a series of Greek and Latin Classics, with interlinear translations, greatly superior to any we have yet seen.

---

*From Eliza D. Willard, New York, Correspondent of the Boston Atlas.*

Permit me to propose to all amateur students of the Greek and Latin Classics, from Maine to California, a vote of thanks to Mr. Charles Desilver, of Philadelphia, for the interlinear translations, which he is now issuing.

Having myself spent five weary years at Greek and Latin, I think I may pretend to venture an opinion in favour of the new system, that is, to the general class of students, but with teachers, quite old enough.

---

*From the Daily Delta, New Orleans.*

CÆSAR. — A more admirable literal translation of every word in Cæsar's great work, it would be impossible to meet with.

It must serve as the best possible work for the Latin student.

HORACE. — A new edition, carefully revised and collated by Thomas Clark. Too much praise cannot be given for the conscientious manner in which the task has been performed.

---

*From the Bulletin, New Orleans.*

VIRGIL AND HORACE, INTERLINEAR. — These two books should be in the hands of every scholar. They are gotten up in superior style, and would adorn any library.

C. DESILVER, PUBLISHER, PHILADELPHIA.

*From J. S. Strickler, Youngstown, Pa.*

I have been using the interlinear translations of the Classics, published by you, and am so well pleased with them, that I would like to have the translations of all the classic authors you may hereafter publish.

---

*From E. C. Simonds, Greenwood, Abbeville District, S. C.*

I have recently obtained a copy of Virgil Interlinear, published by you. I am very much pleased with it; for, since I am studying the language by myself, it renders me all the assistance to be had from an experienced teacher.

---

*From T. Walter Leach, M. D., Newmarket, N. H.*

I learn that you have published a series of the Greek and Latin Classics, with interlinear translations.

The idea strikes me as being a good one, and calculated to render the study of the Greek and Latin vastly less irksome, by obviating the necessity for continual reference to the lexicon.

I promise to use my influence to bring them into notice here.

---

*From J. B. Howard, Ann Arbor, Mich.*

I am now using the interlinears, that you have already published, and I find them of immense value to me.

---

*From H. R. Perry, Green Mount College, Richmond, Ind.*

We are using your interlinear translations, and would be pleased to know what other Classics you have published.

Please let us know soon.

---

*From D. L. Quin, Williston, S. C.*

I use your interlinear Virgil and Cæsar in my academy, and wish Horace, Sallust, and Cicero, if arranged on the same plan.

---

*From D. C. Ramsaun, Statesville, N. C.*

I recently saw a copy of your interlinear Horace, with which I was extremely pleased.

I find from examination of it, that it will greatly alleviate my labors as an instructor, and I am therefore anxious to procure it, as well as all other Latin and Greek works on the same plan.

HISTORICAL SERIES.

---



HISTORICAL SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS

OF

CHARLES DESILVER.

---

LORD'S HISTORY.

*A Modern History,*

FROM THE TIME OF LUTHER TO THE FALL OF NAPOLEON.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY JOHN LORD, A.M.,

LECTURER ON HISTORY.

---

Of the fitness of Mr. Lord to prepare such a history, some opinion may be formed from a perusal of the English and American testimonials of his Historical Lectures, a few of which are appended.

## HISTORICAL SERIES.

---

*Copy of a Letter from PROF. WEST, Principal of Rutgers Institute,  
New York.*

Mr. Lord's work on Modern History is one of the most valuable contributions to school literature that has been made in many years. It is not composed of shreds and patches, as are most of the treatises in this department of knowledge, but elaborated from a mind imbued with the spirit of history. It is a living book, and presents the great events of an age in an attractive manner. Its style is beautifully simple and graphic. It is remarkable for its condensation and clearness, and is eminently free from narrow and sectarian views.

I know of no book of the kind so well fitted for the purpose of education as this. It has been used in this Institution the past year, and so great has been the interest taken in it by my pupils, that I feel warranted in recommending it to the attention of teachers generally.

CHAS. E. WEST.

*Rutgers Institute, New York,*

---

The best recommendation which can be given to Lord's History is that it recognizes a God in History, and assigns Him His proper agency in the government of this world.—*Christian Secretary, Hartford, Ct.*

---

It is rather late in the day to produce a "Modern History" which can lay claim to much of originality or research, but Mr. Lord's aim is not to compete on these grounds with his predecessors on the same field, but to simplify and concentrate, according to his own system of arrangement, the facts and data which go to make up the sum and substance of the many histories already before the world. The work is intended for the use of schools and instructors, and in accordance with this plan its method has been adopted.—*New York Literary World.*

---

This is a volume of very attractive appearance, prepared by a well-read and warm-hearted man, full of his subject, full of matter, and full of scholar-like enthusiasm. It goes over the ages from the time of Luther to the fall of Napoleon. Though professedly written "for the use of schools and colleges," it is admirably fitted for the instruction of that best of all schools—the domestic circle.—*Boston Puritan and Recorder.*

---

Lord's History contains a vast amount of valuable information on subjects of which no one should be ignorant. It betrays no spirit of political prejudice or religious bigotry; and for the most part derives its materials from unexceptionable sources. Its general correctness cannot be impeached.—*Southern Christian Advocate, Charleston, S. C.*

HISTORICAL SERIES.

---



## PINNOCK'S HISTORICAL SERIES

---

### PINNOCK'S ENGLAND.

REVISED EDITION.

PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

FROM THE INVASION OF JULIUS CÆSAR

**TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE THE II.**

WITH A CONTINUATION TO THE YEAR 1845:

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION,

BESIDES A VARIETY OF VALUABLE INFORMATION ADDED THROUGHOUT THE WORK,

Consisting of Tables of Contemporary Sovereigns and eminent Persons, copious Explanatory Notes, Remarks on the Politics, Manners and Literature of the Age, and an Outline of the Constitution.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS

ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTH AMERICAN. CORRECTED AND REVISED FROM THE THIRTY-FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION.

By W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D., OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN,

Author of a Manual of Ancient and Modern History, &c. &c.

(9)

HISTORICAL SERIES.

---

## PINNOCK'S FRANCE,

HISTORY OF FRANCE AND NORMANDY, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO  
THE REVOLUTION OF 1848,

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION

By W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D., OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN,  
Author of a Manual of Ancient and Modern History, &c. &c., and Editor of Pinnock's  
Improved editions of Goldsmith's Greece, Rome, and England.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS.

TWENTY-FIFTH AMERICAN FROM THE THIRD ENGLISH EDITION.

---

## PINNOCK'S ROME,

REVISED EDITION,

PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF ROME,

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF ROMAN HISTORY,

AND A GREAT VARIETY OF INFORMATION THROUGHOUT THE WORK,

ON THE MANNERS, INSTITUTIONS, AND ANTIQUITIES OF THE ROMANS;

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION.

SIXTY-FIFTH AMERICAN, FROM THE NINETEENTH LONDON EDITION, IMPROVED

BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D.,

WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS BY ATHERTON AND OTHERS.

---

## PINNOCK'S GREECE,

REVISED EDITION,

PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF GREECE,

REVISED, CORRECTED, AND VERY CONSIDERABLY ENLARGED,

BY THE ADDITION OF SEVERAL NEW CHAPTERS, AND NUMEROUS  
USEFUL NOTES.

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION.

FORTY-FIFTH AMERICAN, FROM THE NINETEENTH LONDON EDITION, IMPROVED

BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D.,

WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS, BY ATHERTON AND OTHERS.

(10)

HISTORICAL SERIES.

---

LORD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

A New History of the United States of America,

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY JOHN LORD, A.M.,

AUTHOR OF A MODERN HISTORY FROM THE TIME OF LUTHER TO THE  
FALL OF NAPOLEON.

---

This work is written in the attractive style for which the author is so noted, and is admirably calculated to produce in the minds of pupils who shall use it a love for the study.

It is beautifully illustrated with numerous fine Engravings, and contains an excellent coloured Map of the United States, and several additional maps showing the position of various battle-fields and noted places in our history.

NOTICES.

*From the Philadelphia American Courier.*

This may very safely be pronounced a much needed and at the same time a most admirably executed volume for the schools of the country, and for which we unhesitatingly predict great popularity and an immense demand. The great leading facts in our national history are presented in plain, well expressed terms, without verboseness or ambiguity, by one who has proved himself to be an able scholar, a just historian, and a patriot of enlarged, liberal views. It is just the work to give the youthful mind right and lasting impressions of the history of the country.

*From the New York Evening Mirror.*

It is not only an excellent School History, but an excellent general history, that may be perused with profit by readers of all ages and acquirements.

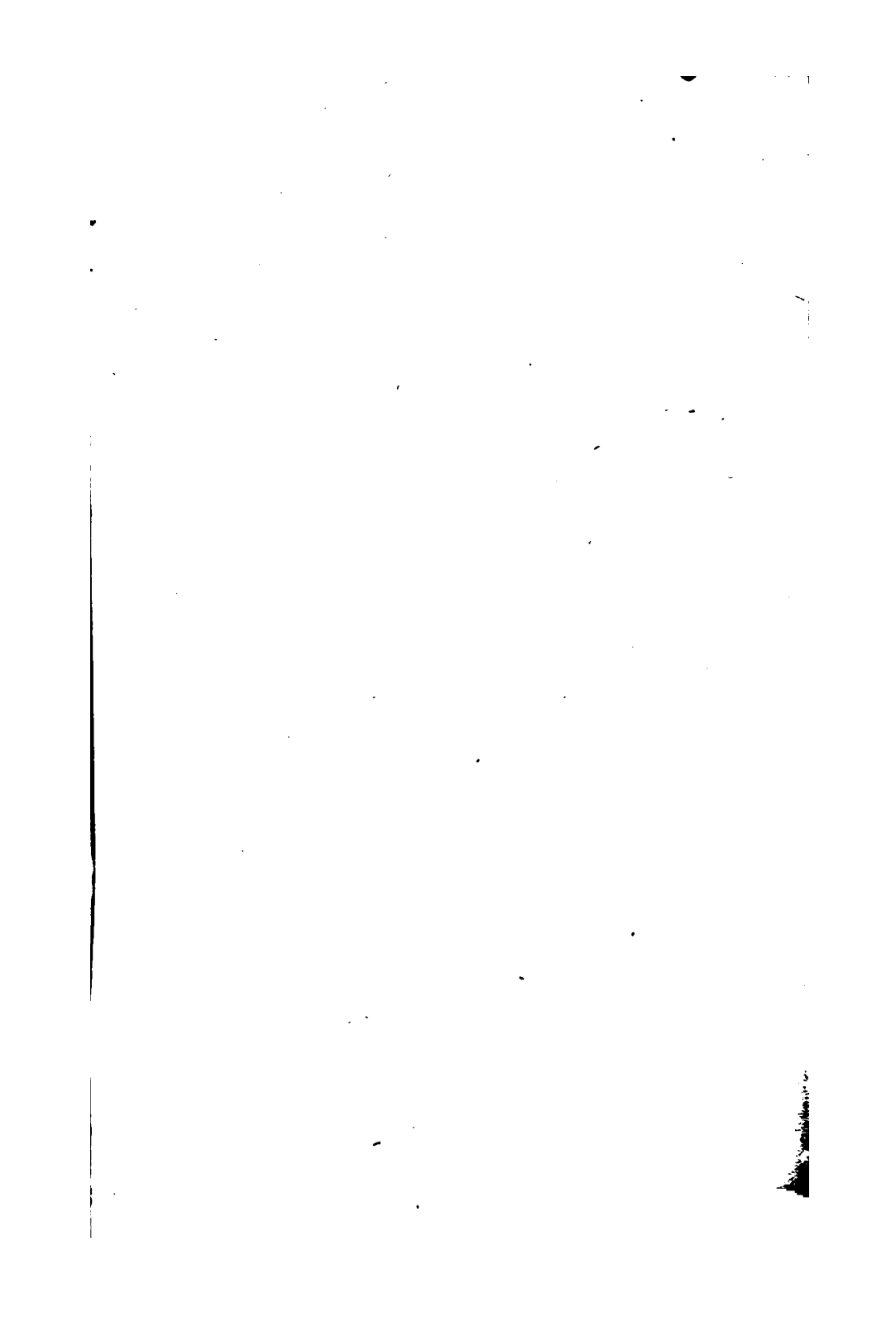
*From the Philadelphia City Item.*

This book will supply a deficiency long acknowledged in school literature. We doubt if any other man in the country is so well calculated to write this history. Mr. Lord is a great favourite of ours. His style is eminently lucid, vigorous, and comprehensive. We think we can, without fear of contradiction, pronounce him a master of the English tongue. With a wealth of language known to but few, he is singularly simple in his choice of words. His sentences are direct and to the point, and his matter is always the gist of the story. These are rare qualifications, and almost indispensable in a historian. We shall be mistaken if this work is not at once hailed with acclamation as by far the best school history in the United States yet published. It should at once be introduced into our Public Schools.











**Gift of The People of the United States  
Through the Victory Book Campaign  
(A. L. A. — A. R. C. — U. S. O.)  
To the Armed Forces and Merchant Marine**

